



GREEK LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS



MORRISON AND GOODELL

From the personal
library of
Dr. Lewis Foster

G M Elliott Library
Cincinnati Christian University
2700 Glenway
F C Box 1020
Cincinnati, OH 45204-3200

RC Foster

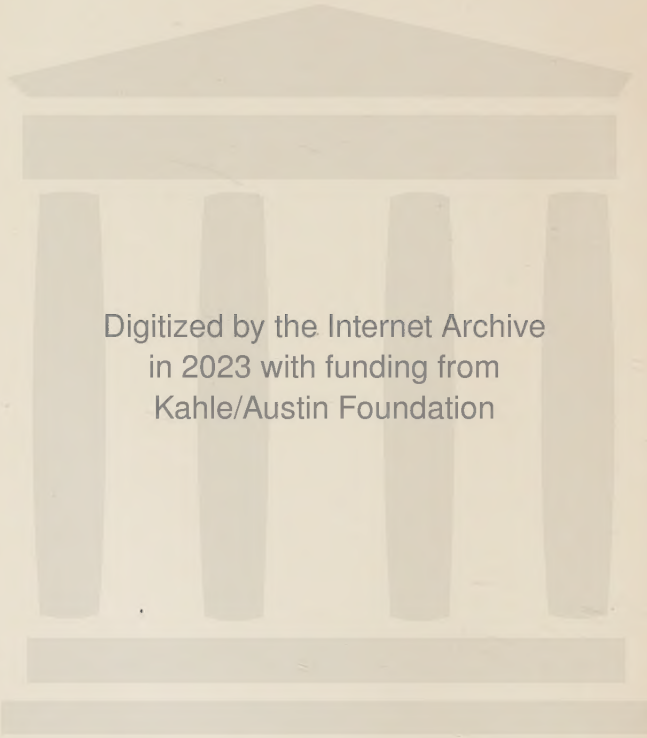


TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT,	HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN,	YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST,	PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation



The Parthenon as it appears to-day.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

GREEK LESSONS

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

FREDERICK STILLMAN MORRISON

TEACHER OF GREEK IN THE HARTFORD PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL

AND

THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN YALE UNIVERSITY

*G.M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
Cincinnati Christian University*



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1903

485
M878g

COPYRIGHT, 1903
By D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

P R E F A C E

No apology is needed for the appearance of a new *Greek Lessons*. The demand for a book that requires the use of a grammar from the beginning has in recent years been steadily growing. At present many go to college with very little acquaintance with any Greek grammar. The usual lesson books cover the whole ground lightly, and most students rely upon what they get from these, adding to that knowledge from what they acquire by continued repetition of forms and constructions during the succeeding years. The fruits of this experience are of course valuable, but there is no system or orderly framework on which to build. By properly using a grammar, however, from the beginning, the pupil can without any added difficulty, but with even greater ease, construct a framework that will readily receive all the valuable additions of the later years in their proper places. It is believed that by this method one will gain an adequate amount of grammatical knowledge with a minimum of effort, as nothing of the first year's work will have to be undone or done over.

This book has been prepared for use with Goodell's *School Grammar of Attic Greek* and is an attempt to guide beginners to a knowledge of Greek through the Grammar, with as few difficulties as other books present without it, and with as much rapidity as is consistent with accuracy and thoroughness. The introductory matter is more extensive than is usually given. It is strongly recommended that this be not neglected. Let the progress in the early stages be slow and sure, and many of the difficulties of beginners will not appear. The divisions marked by Roman numerals are not intended to indicate daily lessons; these must be adapted to the class with a view to the time allowed. But time will

be saved and success more readily attained by avoiding hurry in the first few weeks.

The principles of accentuation are so introduced that they are viewed one at a time; thus the usual sources of confusion are removed, as each point can be mastered before the next is taken up. In section 90 the principles are collected for a final review.

Attention is invited to the sections on transliteration 7-10; the early introduction of interrogative and ὅτι clauses; the coupling of the infinitive with the indicative; the introduction of the thematic with the sigmatic aorist; the gradual but early development of the principal parts of verbs; the use of the perfect middle before the other middle forms, in order to show the middle endings in their simplest form; the gradual development of tense synopses by means of partial synopses; the reserving of mute-perfects till near the end; and the manner in which the inflection of μι-verbs is based on principles already learnt. It is hoped that the notes on the opening chapters of the *Anabasis* will be found well adapted to the needs of beginners, and that the usual gap between the selections and a continuous text has been safely bridged over. Xenophon's deviations from normal Attic usage have been carefully noted.

The following sections present some special features: 61-65; 95, 96; 100, 101; 103; 129, 130; 179; 193, 195; 219; 226-228; 237; 248, 249; 255; 275; 285; 293-296. Tables for reference: 185, 203, 204, 262, 308.

The Greek exercises are longer than those usually given in beginners' books. It is by no means necessary that all classes should work out all the sentences. But the vocabularies do not contain a large number of words, and they are so arranged that what has been already used will help in the mastery of what is in hand. These words should be thoroughly learnt; and the pupil will be continually meeting them in subsequent exercises, even if he omits some of the sentences in which they first appear.

There are several reasons for giving so many sentences. In large classes frequently one wishes to send each pupil to the board with a separate sentence, without repeating. Again, it is hoped that as often as possible the advance lesson will end with a vocabulary. It is a good plan in assigning the next lesson to go over with the class all the sentences that are to be taken for the lesson, letting the class do at sight what they can, showing them how to attack a sentence and the best form for translation. The sentences must then be studied in preparation for the recitation, and can be studied intelligently. Again and again pupils spend most of their study time in trying to puzzle out the meaning of the sentences, form bad habits of attack which they never get rid of, meet discouraging difficulties, and neglect the learning of forms and words. The study of words and forms should occupy a large part of the study period. It is firmly believed that for many weeks the pupil should not be asked to approach any of the sentences for the first time out of class. The proper point for beginning that will vary with each class. When in recitation the class has finished the sentences assigned for the day, the others can be taken at sight; or if there is too little time for that, the instructor can read aloud, having the class repeat, and then translate and comment on the sentence. The old and new words will be found to be constantly recurring in varying relations; and the few minutes devoted to this exercise will do more to fix the meaning of words than much conning of dry word-lists. Pupils are always alert in such an exercise, knowing how much depends upon close attention and consequent clear understanding. It is advised too that much of the translation of review and advance be done from hearing. When the sentence has been previously run over, this is a very helpful exercise; when the pupil has by himself puzzled out the sentence, and wrongly too, it is uselessly discouraging. Again, some may prefer to omit sentences, so as to have fresh material for the term review. But for many classes the

amount of translation will not be too much to take entire, spending as much time as may be necessary to accomplish this. If this book is made to cover the first year's work, the later progress will be rapid enough to more than make up for the time spent. At any rate go slow.

It will be noticed that relatives and indefinite relatives are introduced early and that several sets of correlatives are given with translations, §§ 103, 219, 220 and *a*, 285. Most pupils regard the correlatives with a kind of awe, as something beyond their comprehension, and reach the end of their preparatory course with no clear conception of these common connectives, in use so closely allied to their everyday speech. It is hoped that constant repetition of these here will accomplish the result desired, without giving the false idea that there is anything strange in their use. With these connectives early fixed in mind, the development of clauses by the introductory word is found a simple matter; for example see § 112.

The English exercises are brief. In the earlier stages most of the work in writing Greek should be done at first by copying on the board the Greek sentences, with some retroversion, and later by as much retroversion as the time allows. More rapid progress can be made in this way than by requiring a class to invent new Greek without an adequate basis of experience. The few sentences that are given are closely allied with the Greek text and should be carefully written by each member of the class.

In making the exercises the question arose whether early to introduce dialogues, anecdotes, and extracts from various sources to arouse and hold interest or to go straight for the object in view, the ability rapidly and accurately to read the Greek of Xenophon. An experience of more than twenty years with beginners, sometimes with divisions aggregating more than fifty, leads to the belief that there need be no lack of interest without these diversions. Those who begin the study of Greek do so with a set purpose, and any attempt

to make it unduly easy or to put off the day of close application by whatever means simply deceives. The use of much outside matter before the *Anabasis* distracts the attention from what is positively essential, is misleading, and is really of the nature of an anticlimax.

Therefore this book leads direct to the *Anabasis* and this purpose has been constantly in mind in choosing the vocabulary. With the exception of a very few words, common in other prose authors, the words used are of frequent occurrence in the *Anabasis*; but care has been taken to introduce but few that are not frequently met in other literature. In pages 1–206 besides the numerals and correlatives and besides proper names there are: nouns 183, adjectives 87, simple verbs 128, compound verbs 27, adverbs 87, pronouns 19, prepositions 18, conjunctions and particles 25; in all 574. Besides these there are 10 verbals and 140 compound verbs of simples already studied, making 724 words. These compounds have been carefully developed and greatly enrich the vocabulary, while requiring but little added effort. When one has learnt the simple meaning of the prepositions, words like ἀπ-ῆλθον, εἰς-ῆλθον, ἐξ-ῆλθον, παρ-ῆλθον, συν-ῆλθον, συν-εἰς-ῆλθον, συν-εξ-ῆλθον, and the like present no difficulty.

When the pupil who has used this book begins the *Anabasis*, page 207, he will find an average of only ten new words per Teubner page in the first four chapters. In the three chapters here given there are 136 new words, making the total in both parts, with the exceptions above noted, 860; but of these at least 180 are compounds, leaving but 680 for the stock vocabulary. In this estimate such words as **λοχᾱγός** and **στρατηγός** are treated as simples. The care with which the vocabulary has been worked over may be indicated by the long selection, pages 197–201, in which appear but two new words.

In the general vocabulary some additional words are given to aid in studying word formation. The use of the list of

derivatives, *Appendix II*, should be begun soon after beginning the *Anabasis* selections. Attention is called to this matter of derivation as treated in this vocabulary by means of references to the Grammar. Pupils should be encouraged to make use of the assistance thus supplied; and the work can readily be systematized by using the lists in *Appendix II*.

The case constructions are introduced through the notes on the exercises by means of references to the Grammar. Classifying clauses by the introductory word naturally and easily brings in the subjunctive early. Then it will be noticed that subjunctive, infinitive, and participle uses are reviewed, tabulated, and further reviewed in nine lessons before the optative is introduced. The treatment of the optative then becomes in many details merely a review and extension of uses already familiar.

Any experienced teacher that has year after year watched pupils stumbling over proper names will appreciate the reasons for placing the proper names in a list by themselves. One can, if he wishes, here give as much drill on their transliteration and pronunciation as his stock of patience will allow.

Despite the large type and open printing, with the numerous paradigms, lists, summations, reference tables, and the copious exercises, the part introductory to the *Anabasis* has been kept within the compass of 206 pages.

As editor of the series Professor Wright has read nearly all the proofs and has offered helpful suggestions. Mr. Alvord of the Hartford Public High School has kindly read the proof of pages 1-239.

As the material in just this form has not had the advantage of being used with a class, though most of it has been thus used in one way or another, doubtless some slips will be found. Any criticism or suggestions will be gratefully received.

July, 1903.

F. S. M.
T. D. G.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1
Syllables	1
Accent'	2
Pronunciation	2
Transliteration	6
EXERCISE ON ENCLITICS, PROCLITICS, AND PUNCTUATION . . .	8
READING EXERCISE	10
I THE O-DECLENSION. Nouns and Adjectives. Form and Accent	11
II THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS. The Present Indicative and Infinitive Active. Nouns and Adjectives . . .	14
III THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS. The Future Indicative and Infinitive Active. Nouns and Adjectives . . .	17
IV Ω-VERBS. The Imperfect Indicative Active	21
V Ω-VERBS. The Sigmatic Aorist and the Thematic Aorist, Indicative and Infinitive Active	24
Time of the Infinitive	26
VI THE A-DECLENSION. Nouns in -ᾱ and -α and Adjectives of the Vowel Declension	30
VII THE A-DECLENSION. Nouns and Adjectives in -η. The Relative Pronouns "Ὅς, ὅλος, ὅσος, ὅστις . . .	33
VIII THE A-DECLENSION. Masculine Nouns in -ᾱς and -ης. The Possessive Pronouns	35
Comparison of Interrogative and Relative Words . . .	36
IX REVIEW	38
The Attributive and the Predicate Position	40
X Αὐτός AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	40
Review of Some Pronouns and Adverbs	43
XI Ω-VERBS. The Present, Sigmatic Aorist, and Thematic Aorist Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive Uses . . .	46

	PAGE
XII Ω-VERBS. The Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle Active . . .	49
Review of Some Prepositions	52
XIII Ω-VERBS. The Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle Middle and Passive. Subjunctive Uses	53
"Ews Clauses	55
XIV Ω-VERBS. The Θη-, the Η-, and the Future Passive . .	57
Principal Parts of Verbs	58
XV Ω-VERBS. Principal Parts of -άω, -έω, and -όω Verbs and of Mute Verbs	60
XVI Ω-VERBS. The Middle Forms of the Present, Future, and Sigmatic and Thematic Aorist Systems, Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle . . .	65
XVII Ω-VERBS. The Liquid Future and Aorist, and the Root-Aorist, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive . . .	69
XVIII COMPOUND VERBS. Review of Prepositions and Verbs .	72
Meaning of Prepositions in Composition	73
List of Compound Verbs in I-XVIII	73
XIX Ω-VERBS. Deponents. Review	77
List of Passive Deponents	78
Exercise : ΠΟΡΕΙΑ ΑΠΡΑΚΤΟΣ	80
XX Ω-VERBS. Ω-forms and Μι-forms. Review of Subjunctive and Infinitive Forms and Constructions . .	81
Table of Subjunctive Constructions	86
Table of Infinitive Constructions	87
XXI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Guttural Stems in -κ and -γ. The Dental Stem νυκτ-	88
XXII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Guttural Stems in -κ, -γ, -χ. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Adverbs in -ως, -θεν, -τε, and -οι	91
Exercise on Correlative Adverbs	94
XXIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Labial Stems in -π, -β. Dental Stems in -τ, -δ, -θ. Possessive Forms . . .	95
Examples of Possessives	97
XXIV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Adjective Stems in -οντ. Πᾶς, Ἀπᾶς, Σύνπᾶς, Οἶδα	98
XXV Ω-VERBS. Participles, Formation and Uses	102
Comparison of Participle Idioms	107

	PAGE
XXVI PARTICIPLES. The Genitive Absolute. Ὡς with the Participle. Numerals	108
Examples of the Genitive Absolute	111
XXVII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Liquid Stems. Numerals	112
Exercise : A LITTLE DIVERSION	113
Table of Participle Constructions	115
XXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Stems in -ερ. Reflexive and other Pronouns. Correlative Adverbs	116
Reflexive Pronouns	118
XXIX Ω-VERBS. The Optative Mode, Formation, and some Uses	119
XXX THE OPTATIVE MODE. Review of Correlative Pro- nouns and Adverbs. Forms of Εἰμι and Οἶδα	125
Exercise on Correlatives	126
XXXI THE OPTATIVE MODE. Quoted Clauses with "Οτι. Quoted Questions. "Ἴνα Clauses with the Optative	130
The Subjunctive with ἄν in Quotations	131
The Optative with ἄν in Quotations	131
The Position of ἄν with the Optative	132
XXXII Εἰ CLAUSES. Review of Φημι and Εἰμι	135
Table of Optative Constructions.	137
XXXIII Ω-VERBS. Contract Presents in -έω. Review of Liquid Futures	139
XXXIV Ω-VERBS. Contract Presents in -άω and -όω	142
XXXV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Stems in -ι and -ευ. Ordinals	146
Exercise : THE SATRAP'S PLOT	147
XXXVI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Noun and Adjective Stems in -ες. Adverbs. Numerals	149
XXXVII Ω-VERBS. Review	151
Exercise : ΑΞΙΑΛΕΤΣ ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΑΧΑΙΩΝ	153
XXXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Μέγας, Πολύς, Ταχύς, Βελτίων, Μέλᾱς	155
XXXIX COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Several Forms and Idioms	157
XL ADVERBS AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	160
XLI Ω-VERBS. The Imperative Mode. Imperative Sen- tences	163
Complete Synopsis of παύω	164
Miscellaneous Synopses by Tense-Systems	166

	PAGE
XLII Ω-VERBS. Verbs assuming σ. Liquid and Mute Perfects	170
XLIII VERBAL ADJECTIVES	174
XLIV Μι-VERBS. Δείκνυμι and the Root-Aorist of Δύω . . .	176
XLV Μι-VERBS. Ἰστημι and its Compounds. The Root-Aorist of Διδράσκω	179
XLVI Μι-VERBS. Δίδωμι	183
Exercise: ΠΡΟΔΟΤΗΣ	185
XLVII Μι-VERBS. Τίθημι and Κεῖμαι	187
XLVIII Μι-VERBS. ἵημι	190
Exercise: ΜΕΜΝΗΣΟ ΤΩΝ ΑΘΗΝΑΙΩΝ	192

SELECTIONS :

A Slave from the Makrōnes	194
The Ruins of Calah and Nineveh	195
When Greek meets Greek	197
Mention of the Anabasis and the Ten Thousand in the Hellenika . . .	201
Xenophon, the Author of the Anabasis	204
THE ANABASIS I. I-III	207
APPENDIX I: EXERCISE ON CONSONANTS	241
APPENDIX II: DERIVATIVES	243
APPENDIX III: INDEX OF PROPER NAMES	246
GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	255
ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY	294
ENGLISH INDEX	301
GREEK INDEX	303

ABBREVIATIONS

Most of the abbreviations will be self-explanatory. Compare *Grammar* page 298 end. A = used with the accusative. D = used with the dative. G = used with the genitive. V = for the principal parts consult the Verb-list in the *Grammar* page 299.

Black-face numerals, 428 e, refer to sections of the *Grammar*. Gothic numerals, 428 e, refer to sections of the *Lessons*.

GREEK LESSONS ·

INTRODUCTION

SOUNDS AND WRITING

/ **Alphabet.** 1-7. Study first the small letters. Observe in pronouncing the name of the letter that *the initial sound of the name is the sound represented by the letter.*¹ Compare carefully the forms of η and μ , of ν and υ , and of ζ and ξ . Compare also ξ and χ in sound and form with their English equivalents **x** and **ch**. Remember that η and ϵ correspond to the Latin \bar{e} and e , and that ω and o correspond to the Latin \bar{o} and o . Avoid confusing η with the English **n**.

The first two columns in 7 will be of use in studying the letters. Observe those that are as high as capitals and those that come below the line. The capitals will be learnt gradually as words containing them occur. Note those that are like the English. The Latin alphabet was borrowed from an early form of the Greek. Additional practice on the consonants, for those that need it, can be had in the table *Appendix I*.

2 **Syllables.** 8. The consonants that may begin a Greek word are best learnt by observation. The instructor and lexicon will help.

¹ The sound of β is not $\beta\eta$ or $b\bar{e}$ but β or **b**, without the vowel. So with the other consonants.

- 3 **Accent.** 9-11 and a. That is we find Greek words accented with the acute, some on the antepenult, some on the penult, some on the ultima; with the circumflex, some on the penult, some on the ultima.

In the classic period the accented syllable was left unmarked, as now in English; about 200 B. C. accent marks were invented at Alexandria to guide foreigners to a correct accentuation of Greek words. In English the accent must be learnt by experience and from the dictionary. In Greek the accent is always printed with the word. Pronounce aloud each new Greek word while learning it, putting a slight stress on the accented syllable.

- 4 **Pronunciation.** Use the words in 7 for practice on the letters, in syllabication, and in pronunciation. Copy the Greek words and pronounce the syllables as you write. Then read the words aloud.

Take more time for pronouncing the long vowels and the diphthongs than for the short vowels. Compare *cōn-sti-tit* — — —, *Αἷ-ο-λος* — — —, *Βα-βυ-λών* — — —, *ἐ-νί-κη-σα* — — —. Try to keep distinct final *ā* and *a*, and *ης* and *es*. Pronounce both consonants in combinations like *ἄλ-λος*, *ἵπ-πος*, *μνή-μη*.

a For the difference between two consonants and single consonants compare *soul-less* and *holy*; also such words as *hop-pole* (π π), *sack-cloth* (κ κ), *cat-tail* (τ τ), *mis-step* (σ σ), *ear-ring* (ρ ρ), *un-nerve* (ν ν), *room-mate* (μ μ). Pronounce *μάλ-λον*, *ἵπ-πεύς*, *ἐκ-κλη-σί-α*, *τάτ-τω*, *ἀλ-λάσ-σω*, *ἔρ-ρῖ-πτον*, *ἐν-νο-έ-ω*, *γάμ-μα*, *κο-λά-ζω*.

- 5 Cover the first column in 7 and write the words in the second column with Greek letters and the proper breathings and separate the syllables. Compare your work with the first column, correct any errors and copy in the accents.

The quantities are marked in the English to help in writing the Greek.

6 The following table 7 is to be used in learning the letters ; for practice in pronunciation and in placing the stress on the accented syllable ; for dividing words into syllables ; for showing the form and relative position of the accents and breathings ; and for learning how to write Greek proper names in English. Before pronouncing the English equivalents read the first paragraph in /O, and accent in accordance with that.

7	GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
	'Α-θη-νᾶ	Athēnā	<i>Athēna</i>
	'Α-γα-μέ-μνων	Agamemnōn	<i>Agamemnon</i>
	'Α-ρι-στο-φά-νης	Aristophanēs	<i>Aristophanes</i>
	"Α-ρι-στον		
	᾿Α-γῆς	Āgis	<i>Agis</i>
	Βο-ρέ-ās	Boreās	<i>Boreas</i>
	Γορ-γί-ās	Gorgiās	<i>Gorgias</i>
	Δη-μο-σθέ-νης	Dēmostenēs	<i>Demosthenes</i>
	'Ε-ρα-το-σθέ-νης	Eratostenēs	<i>Eratosthenes</i>
	Ζέ-φυ-ρος	Zephyros	<i>Zephyrus, Zephyr</i>
	'Η-ρα-κλῆς	Hēraklēs	<i>Heracles, Hercules</i>
	Θη-ρα-μέ-νης	Thēramenēs	<i>Theramenes</i>
	'Ι-ω-νί-ᾶ	Iōniā	<i>Ionia</i>
	"Ι-η-μι		
	᾿Ι-ρις	Īris	<i>Iris</i>
	Κλε-ᾶ-νωρ	Kleānōr	<i>Cleānor</i>
	Κύδ-νος	Kydnos	<i>Cydnus</i>
	Λῦ-δί-ᾶ	Lȳdiā	<i>Lydia</i>
	Μα-ρα-θών	Marathōn	<i>Marathon</i>
	Μη-δί-ᾶ	Mēdiā	<i>Media</i>

GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
Νά-ξος	Naxos	<i>Naxos</i>
Ξέρ-ξης	Xerxēs	<i>Xerxes</i>
Ὀ-ρόν-τᾱς	Orontās	<i>Orontas</i>
Πε-ρι-κλῆς	Periklēs	<i>Pericles</i>
Ῥα-δά-μαν-θυσ	Rhadamanthys	<i>Rhadamanthys</i>
Σω-κρά-της	Sōkratēs	<i>Socrates</i>
Σο-φο-κλῆς	Sophoklēs	<i>Sophocles</i>
Τολ-μί-δης	Tolmidēs	<i>Tolmides</i>
Ῥ-ά-κιν-θος	Hyakinthos	<i>Hyacinthus,</i> <i>Hyacinth</i>
Φι-λο-κτῆ-της	Philoktētēs	<i>Philoctetes</i>
Χαλ-κίς	Chalkis	<i>Chalcis</i>
Ψῦ-χῆ	Psychē	<i>Psyche</i>
Ὀ-πις	Opis	<i>Opis</i>
Αἴ-ᾱς ¹	Aiās	<i>Aias, Ajax</i>
Μαί-αν-δρος	Maiandros	<i>Meander</i>
Ἀ-τρέϊ-δαι	Atreidai	<i>Atrīdæ</i>
Ἀ-ρι-αῖ-ος	Ariaios	<i>Ariaeus</i>
Χει-ρί-σο-φος	Cheirisophos	<i>Chirisophus</i>
Δᾱ-ρεῖ-ος	Dāreios	<i>Darīus</i>
Ζέ-λει-α	Zeleia	<i>Zelēa</i>
Μή-δει-α	Mēdeia	<i>Medēa</i>
Οἰ-δί-πους	Oidipous	<i>Oedipus</i>

¹ It may help some to use the following for an approximate pronunciation of the diphthongs in Greek words :

αι	<i>aisle</i>	ευ	<i>euphony, or feud</i>	υι	<i>we</i>
ει	<i>eight</i>	ηυ	<i>ā + ōō</i>	ῥ	<i>as ā</i>
οι	<i>oil</i>	ου	<i>group</i>	η	<i>as η</i>
αυ	<i>out</i>	ωυ	<i>ō + ōō</i>	ψ	<i>as ω</i>

GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
Οἰ-ταῖ-οι	Oitaioi	<i>Oetaei, Oetaeans</i>
Βοι-ω-τί-ᾱ	Boiōtiā	<i>Boeotia</i>
Δελ-φοί	Delphoi	<i>Delphi</i>
νῑ-ός		
Αὔ-λῑς	Aulis	<i>Aulis</i>
Εὐ-φρά-της	Euphrātēs	<i>Euphrātes</i>
Εὐ-ρος	Euros	<i>Eurus</i>
Εὐ-η-νός	Euēnos	<i>Euēnus, Evēnus</i>
Εὐ-αν-δρος	Euandros	<i>Evandrus, Evander</i>
Ὀ-τρεύς	Otreus	<i>Otreus</i>
ἡῦ-ρη-κα	. . . . .	<i>Eurēka</i>
Θου-κυ-δί-δης	Thoukydidēs	<i>Thucydides</i>
Γλοῦς	Glous	<i>Glus</i>
Ἀλ-κί-νο-ος	Alkinoös	<i>Alcinoüs</i>
Πάν-θο-ος	Panthoös	<i>Panthus</i>
Ἅ-ιδης, ᾗ-δης	Hādēs	<i>Hades</i>
τῆ		
ὠ-δή	. . . . .	<i>ode</i>
ἄ-γγε-λος	. . . . .	<i>angelus</i>
ἄ-κου-στι-κός	. . . . .	<i>acoustic</i>
ἐγ-κέ-φα-λον	. . . . .	<i>encephalon</i>
εὐ-αγ-γε-λι-κός	. . . . .	<i>evangelical</i>
κω-μω-δί-ᾱ	. . . . .	<i>comedy</i>
οἰ-κο-νο-μί-ᾱ	. . . . .	<i>economy</i>
σύγ-χρο-νος	. . . . .	<i>synchronous</i>

8 Words that have become English words may better be retained as such. Opinions will differ as to what words have become anglicized. κ will probably show the most variation. We give a few.

9	GREEK	ENGLISH	ENGLISH
	Ἀ-θῆ-ναι	. . . . .	<i>Athens</i>
	Αἰ-νεί-ās	Aineiās	but <i>Aenēas</i> , of the Aeneid
	Αἷ-σω-πος	Aisōpos	but <i>Aesop</i> , the fabulist
	Ἀ-ρι-στο-τέ-λης.	. . . . .	<i>Aristotle</i>
	Ἀ-χιλ-λεύς	. . . . .	<i>Achilles</i>
	Ἑ-λέ-νη	. . . . .	<i>Helen, Helena</i>
	Ἑλ-λη-νες	Hellēnes, a tribe	<i>Greeks</i> , the race
	Εὐ-κλεί-δης	Eukleidēs	but <i>Euclid</i> , the mathe- matician
	Ἑ-σί-ο-δος	. . . . .	<i>Hesiod</i>
	Θῆ-βαι	. . . . .	<i>Thebes</i>
	Θετ-τα-λί-ā	. . . . .	<i>Thessaly</i>
	Ἴ-θά-κη	. . . . .	<i>Ithaca</i>
	Κῦ-ρος	. . . . .	<i>Cyrus</i>
	Μῆ-δοι	. . . . .	<i>Medes</i>
	Μοῦ-σα	. . . . .	<i>Muse</i>
	Ὅ-μη-ρος	. . . . .	<i>Homer</i>
	Πει-ραι-εύς	. . . . .	<i>Piræus</i>
	Πέρ-σαι	. . . . .	<i>Persians</i>
	Πλά-των	. . . . .	<i>Plato</i>
	Τροί-ā	. . . . .	<i>Troy</i>

10 **Transliteration.** Respelling the Greek words with our own letters is called transliterating them. For a long time Greek was studied through Latin, and Greek words have commonly appeared in English in their Latin form, as shown in the last column in 7. In the second column is given a simpler method of transliteration frequently used. In pronouncing by either method give the English sound to the letters

and the Latin accent to the word. That is *accent the penult in words of two syllables*; in words of more than two syllables *accent the penult if it is a long syllable, otherwise the antepenult*. The marks over the vowels in the second column indicate the quantity of the corresponding Greek letters, not the quality of the English sound. Compare 5 *end*. The macron (-) over the vowel of the penult in words in either column is a guide to the accent.

In the method shown in the second column notice that **ι** subscript disappears and that **ου** becomes *u* in words taken through the Latin, *ou* in words taken directly from the Greek.

In the words in the third column it may be well to notice that

a Iota-subscript disappears.

b Gamma *nasal* appears as *n*. Consult 3.

c **Z**, *dz*, is represented by *z*.

d **K** in Latin and in English derivatives is usually represented by *c*, sometimes by *k* in words more recently transferred.

e The vowel **υ**, not in a diphthong, is represented by *y*. The Romans, not having a letter to represent the sound of Greek **υ**, borrowed the Greek letter in its form **Υ**; this has become our *Y*, *y*.

f Final **η** of the **α**-declension appears in Latin as *a*, sometimes as *ē*.

g In Latin and in English derivatives the diphthong **αι** appears as *ai* or *ae*; final **αι** in declension becomes *ae* of the Latin *a*-declension, which had practically the same sound.

h The diphthong **ει** becomes *ī*, sometimes *ē*.

i The diphthong **οι** becomes *oe*, which in Latin had about the same sound. This is sometimes changed in Eng-

lish derivatives to *e*. Final **oi** in declension becomes *ī* of the Latin *o*-declension.

j The diphthong **ou** becomes *ū* in Latin words, *u* in English words that have come through the Latin, and *ou* in English words taken directly from the Greek.

k Final **eus** appears as *eus*, sometimes as *e-us*.

l Final **os** of the *o*-declension is retained as *os* in some Latin words and their English equivalents, but usually appears as *us* of the Latin *o*-declension. Final **oos** sometimes becomes *ūs*. Final **δpos** becomes *der*.

Both methods show inconsistencies that have grown from varying usage. The pronunciation of the Latin forms by the English method requires careful study. It is explained in the Appendix to Webster's Dictionary. The pronunciation in the second column is indicated sufficiently by the table.

// The following exercise /2 further illustrates **15–22, 32, 33 a, b, 34, 41, 42**. It should be examined in class and explained. The various changes in accent, form, and punctuation should be noted and the meaning of the words and the translation should be studied. The mastery of the various principles will come gradually as they are needed. The paragraphs indicated above should not all be assigned to be learnt at one time, but after explanation should be taken up as they are needed. Reference to this exercise should be frequently made as occasion may require.

12 ENCLITICS, PROCLITICS, AND PUNCTUATION

1 Οἱ πιστοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ ἔχουσι πολλοὺς φίλους.

The trusty captains have many friends.

2 τίς ἔχει τὰ ὅπλα; τί λέγει ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος;

Who has the arms? What says my friend?

3 λοχαγός ἐστι(ν). ῥάδιόν ἐστι(ν) αὐτῷ.

He is a captain ; it is easy for him.

4 ὁ οἶκός ἐστι(ν) μόνος καὶ ἔρημος.

The house is lonely and deserted.

5 ἄλλοι εἰσί(ν). εἰ δέ τις φησι(ν). εἶχε(ν).

There are others. But if anyone speaks. He had.

6 οὐ δῆλόν ἐστι(ν). οὐκ ἔστι(ν). οὐχ ὑπὸ αὐτοῦ.

It is not evident. It is not. Not by him.

7 ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντων· κακοὶ γάρ εἰσι(ν).

But let them go, for they are cowards.

8 ἦλθον, εἶδον, ἐνίκησα. ἐν χρόνῳ.

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. In time.

9 ἐφ' ἵππου for ἐπὶ ἵππου. ὑφ' ἡμῶν. ταῦτ' ἔχει.

On horseback. By us. He has these.

13 **Nouns and Adjectives.** Read 57–60, 542, 543. In 61 and a learn the singular and plural,¹ masculine and neuter. Notice that ὁ and οἱ have no accent 16, 17 a, and that the genitive and dative forms have the circumflex. The ι in the dative singular is subscript.

14 **Syntax.** Read 450–453, 454 a, b, 455 a, 459. Treat the cases as in Latin until new uses appear. Compare 12.

15 **Punctuation.** Learn 22 and compare 12.

16 In the following exercise 17 study the words and note the changes in form for case and number. The article will indicate both. Where there is no article, comparison of the form with the forms of the article in 61 will help locate it. Read the exercise aloud several times. Notice the grave accents. See 15.

¹ In general the dual may well be omitted, at least until final review.

READING EXERCISE

- 17 I ὁ μικρὸς ἵππος. οἱ μικροὶ ἵπποι.
The small horse. The small horses.
- 2 ἔχω, ἔχει, ἔχουσι, ἔχομεν.
I-have, he-has, they-have, we-have.
- 3 ἔχει ἵππον. ἔχουσι ἵππους.
He-has a horse. They-have horses.
- 4 πεδίον, ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.
A plain, from the plain, in the plain.
- 5 ὁ οἶκος, ἔξω τοῦ οἴκου, παρὰ τῷ οἴκῳ,
The house, outside of-the house, beside the house,
 εἰς τὸν οἶκον, εἰς τοὺς οἴκους.
into the house, into the houses.
- 6 οἱ λόχοι ἦσαν πιστοὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς.
The companies were faithful to-the captains.
- 7 πιστεύω αὐτοῖς. πιστεύουσιν αὐτῷ.
I-trust them. They-trust him.
- 8 ἔχομεν τοὺς ἵππους τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.
We-have the horses of-the general.
- 9 πιστεύομεν τῷ ἀγαθῷ στρατηγῷ.
We-trust the brave general.
- 10 τὸ πλοῖον. εἶδομεν πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῷ
The boat. We-saw many boats in the
 ποταμῷ. οἱ μακροὶ ποταμοί.
river. The long rivers.
- 11 ἦν αἷτιος. ὁ ἄνθρωπος λέγει ὅτι
He-was responsible. The man says that
 οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν αἷτιοι.
the others were responsible.

- 12 πείθoμεν τὸν ἄνθρωπον πέμπειν πολλοὺς
We-persuade the man to-send many
 λόχους τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τοῦ ἱππικοῦ.
companies to-the generals of-the cavalry.
- 13 κελεύω αὐτὸν ἀθροίζειν τοὺς ἄλλους.
I-direct him to-collect the others.
- 14 πιστεύουσι τοῖς θεοῖς, οὐκ ἀνθρώποις.
They-trust the gods, not men.
- 15 κελεύουσιν αὐτοὺς ἄγειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐπὶ
They-direct them to-bring the horses on
 τῶν πλοίων κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν.
the boats down the river.

I THE O-DECLENSION

FORM AND ACCENT

18 Nouns and Adjectives

STEM . .	(ὁ) πιστο- φίλο-	(τὸ) πεδιο-
MEANING	the trusty friend	the plain
S N	ὁ πιστὸς φίλος	τὸ πεδίον
G	τοῦ πιστοῦ φίλου	τοῦ πεδίου
D	τῷ πιστῷ φίλῳ	τῷ πεδίῳ
A	τὸν πιστὸν φίλον	τὸ πεδίον
V	ῶ πιστὲ φίλε	ῶ πεδίον
P N V	οἱ πιστοὶ φίλοι	τὰ πεδία
G	τῶν πιστῶν φίλων	τῶν πεδίων
D	τοῖς πιστοῖς φίλοις	τοῖς πεδίοις
A	τοὺς πιστοὺς φίλους	τὰ πεδία

19 **Form.** The case ending appears in the singular nominative and accusative, and neuter vocative. The *ι* of the dative singular is subscript. The neuter plural nominative, accusative, and vocative has *α* as in Latin. The neuter of an adjective is declined like a neuter noun.

Examine and learn *βίος* and *όδός* in 62. Omit the dual, simply reading the forms. In the singular of nouns always write the vocative; in the plural include it with the nominative, as it is always the same as that.

20 **Accent.** In nouns and adjectives the accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular if possible, 63 a.

The forms in which this is impossible will appear later 35, 71. Learn 15 and a, and compare 12. Remember that in nouns and adjectives, when an accent is used on a long ultima in the genitive and dative, it is circumflex, 63 c.

VOCABULARY¹ AND EXERCISES

2/ <i>θεός</i> god. theo-logy	<i>φίλος</i> friendly, dear; friend. philo-
<i>ἵππος</i> horse. hippo-drome	sopher, Phil-ip <i>ἵπ-πος</i>
<i>λοχ-ᾱγός</i> company leader, captain	<i>πιστός</i> trusty, faithful
<i>λόχος</i> company	<i>πολλοί</i> many; <i>οἱ πολλοί</i> the many,
<i>ὄπλον</i> tool; pl. arms, armor; <i>ἐν</i>	<i>most men</i>
<i>τοῖς ὅπλοις</i> under arms. pan-oply	<i>ἐστί(ν), εἰσι(ν)</i> he is, they are
<i>πεδῖον</i> plain	<i>ἦν, ἦσαν</i> he was, they were
<i>στρατ-ηγός</i> army leader, general.	<i>ἔχει, ἔχουσι(ν)</i> he has, they have
strategy	<i>λέγει, λέγουσι(ν)</i> he says, they say

¹ Most of the words in this vocabulary have been given and translated in 17. The genitive will be indicated in vocabularies when necessary. The gender, when doubt may arise, will be marked by the proper form of the article. All proper names are to be found in the **List of Proper Names**, Appendix III.

ποῦ interrog. adv. *where* ?

ἐν prep. D *in*; equivalent to Latin

τί interrog. adv. *why* ?

in with ablative

ἄλλος, neut. ἄλλο, *other, another*;

καί conj. *and*

οἱ ἄλλοι *the rest*. Latin *alius*

ὅτι conj. *that*

τίς τί interrog. pron. *who* ? *what* ?

22 Ποῦ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός ; ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός.
 2 τίς ἔχει τὰ ὅπλα τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ; Σιλᾶνὸς ἔχει τὰ
 ὅπλα.¹ 3 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ εἰσὶν ἵπποι πολλοί.¹ 4 πολ-
 λούς καὶ πιστούς φίλους ἔχει ὁ λοχᾶγός. 5 ὁ στρα-
 τηγὸς λέγει ὅτι οἱ λόχοι πιστοὶ εἰσι τῷ λοχᾶγῳ.¹
 6 τί ἔχουσιν οἱ φίλοι Σιλᾶνοῦ ; πολλὰ ὅπλα ἔχουσιν.
 7 οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν Κλονίος καὶ Χρομῖος. 8 ἐν Δελ-
 φοῖς ὁ θεὸς λέγει². πολλὰ τοῖς πιστοῖς. 9 λέγουσιν
 ὅτι ὁ λοχᾶγὸς τῶν λόχων ἦν Κλονίος. 10 ὁ λοχᾶγὸς
 ἔχει φίλον πιστόν. 11 τῷ λοχᾶγῳ³ ἦν πιστὸς λόχος.
 12 ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ⁴ ἵππος ἦν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 13 οἱ τῶν
 στρατηγῶν⁴ φίλοι πολλοὶ ἦσαν. 14 λέγει ὁ στρα-
 τηγὸς ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ ἵππος.¹ 15 καὶ Σιλᾶνὸς ἔχει
 φίλους ἄλλους. 16 ποῦ ἦσαν οἱ ἄλλοι φίλοι οἱ τῶν
 στρατηγῶν ,

23 The captain says that there were many horses in the plain.
 2 What is the general saying to the companies ? 3 Where
 was the captain's⁴ faithful friend ? 4 The companies

24 ¹ For the accent of τίς and the changes in accent resulting from ἐστὶ and εἰσι refer to 12 and see 15 a, 19 d, 20 d, 21 a. The constructions are all familiar.

² λέγει tells.

³ λοχᾶγῳ: the dative denotes the possessor, *the captain had* 524 a.

⁴ λοχᾶγοῦ, στρατηγῶν: we may

write the Greek for *the captain's horse* ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ ἵππος, ὁ ἵππος ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ, and sometimes ὁ ἵππος τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ. In English the article seems to do duty twice, with *captain's* and with *horse*, that is *the horse of the captain*. In Greek both ὁ and τοῦ must be expressed. Consult 552 a, b,

were faithful to their⁵ captains. 5 The other company has arms and horses.

⁵ Use the article for the possessive.

II THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

25 Nouns and Adjectives

(τὸ) ¹ <i>the</i>	μακρο- <i>long</i>	πλοιο- <i>boat</i>	(ὁ) <i>the</i>	μικρο- <i>small</i>	οικο- <i>house</i>
τὸ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	ὁ	μικρὸς	οἶκος
τοῦ	μακροῦ	πλοίου	τοῦ	μικροῦ	οἴκου
τῷ	μακρῷ	πλοίῳ	τῷ	μικρῷ	οἴκῳ
τὸ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	τὸν	μικρὸν	οἶκον
ῶ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	ῶ	μικρὲ	οἶκε
τὰ	μακρά	πλοῖα	οἱ	μικροὶ	οἶκοι
τῶν	μακρῶν	πλοίων	τῶν	μικρῶν	οἴκων
τοῖς	μακροῖς	πλοίοις	τοῖς	μικροῖς	οἴκοις
τὰ	μακρά	πλοῖα	τοὺς	μικροὺς	οἴκους

26 Examine and learn δῶρον in 62. Review and learn 63 a, b, c. There is nothing new but the accent. Learn 13 and 14 and observe and fix firmly in mind that in words like δῶρον and οἶκος, 12 requires a change in the *form* of the accent in the cases that have a long ultima.

27 Verbs. Read 242, 243, 246, 248 and a, 251, 255, 256, 257. Notice carefully the terms *verb-stem* and *tense-stem*. Learn

¹ As the order of declension will always be the same, the signs for the stem, case, and number from now on will be omitted. So also with verbs, number and person, after this lesson.

the present indicative and infinitive active of **παύω** in **252**. Omit the dual in all words, simply reading the forms. In writing out the inflections for practice always write the *tense-stem* at the top of your work.

28	TENSE-STEM		ἐχ ο : ε -	κελευ ο : ε -	ἀγο ο : ε -	λεγ ο : ε -
	MEANING . .		have	urge	drive	say
INDICATIVE	S.	1	ἔχω	κελεύω	ἄγω	λέγω
		2	ἔχεις	κελεύεις	ἄγεις	λέγεις
		3	ἔχει	κελεύει	ἄγει	λέγει
	P.	1	ἔχο-μεν	κελεύο-μεν	ἄγο-μεν	λέγο-μεν
		2	ἔχε-τε	κελεύε-τε	ἄγε-τε	λέγε-τε
		3	ἔχουσι	κελεύουσι	ἄγουσι	λέγουσι
INFINITIVE		ἔχειν	κελεύειν	ἄγειν	λέγειν	

29 Endings. Examine the active primary personal endings in **263** and observe in **263 a** how the formative vowel **ο:ε** combines with them in inflection. The infinitive has **-ειν** for **-ε-εν** by **274**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 30 βίος** *life*. bio-graphy
δῶρον *gift*. Theo-dore θεός **2/**
οἶκος *house, home, dwelling*. Latin
vīcus; eco-nomy
πλοῖον *boat, transport*
φόβος *fear, fright*. hydro-phobia
χωρίον *spot, place; stronghold*;
χώρᾱ 72
δῆλος *clear, evident*
ἵππ-ικός *belonging to a horse; τὸ*
ἵππικόν the cavalry
μακρός *long*. macron
- ἄγω** *drive, lead, bring, carry*;
λοχᾶγός 2/. Latin *ago*; ped-
agogue 232
βουλεύω *plan*
ἔχω *have, hold, keep, get*
κελεύω, A and inf. clause, *urge,*
direct, bid, command, order
λέγω, ὅτι clause, *say, tell, relate*
παύω *bring to an end, stop*. pause
μή adv. negative willed or imag-
ined, not 7
οὐ adv. negative of fact, *not*

ποιός interrog. pron. *of what sort?*
what kind of?
εἰς prep. *A into; equivalent to*
Latin in with accusative

ἐξ before vowels, **ἐκ** before consonants, prep. *G out of. Latin ex with ablative; ex-odus δόξ* 62

31 Οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ ἄγουσι τοὺς λόχους ἐκ¹ τοῦ χωρίου. 2 τί οὐχ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἄγουσι τὸ ἵππικόν;² 3 τίς ἄγει τοὺς ἵππους εἰς τὸ χωρίον; 4 Ἀριαῖος κελεύει τὸν πιστὸν λοχᾶγὸν μὴ λέγειν³ τοῖς λόχοις ὅτι τὰ ὄπλα ἐστὶν⁴ ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. 5 ἔχουσι δῶρα πολλὰ ἄγειν εἰς τοὺς οἴκους. 6 οὐ βουλεύομεν ἄγειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 7 τί ἄγετε λόχους πολλοὺς ἐκ τῶν χωρίων; 8 οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ λέγουσι ὅτι ἄλλοι εἰσὶν ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις. 9 ποῦ κελεύεις Σιλᾶνὸν ἔχειν τὰ ὄπλα: ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ Ἀριαίου τὰ ὄπλα ἔχειν Σιλᾶνὸν κελεύω. 10 οἱ στρατηγοὶ βουλεύουσι μὴ ἔχειν τοὺς τῶν λοχᾶγῶν φίλους ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. 11 πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἵπποι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ; οὐ πολλοὶ ἦσαν. 12 ὁ τοῦ ἵππου βίος οὐκ ἔστι μακρός. 13 ὁ τῶν ἵππων φόβος δῆλός ἐστιν. 14 ἐν ποίοις πλοίοις βουλεύουσιν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἄγειν τὸ ἵππικόν; ἐν μακροῖς πλοίοις. 15 ποῖον δῶρον βουλεύετε ἄγειν τοῖς⁵ φίλοις: ἵππικὰ ὄπλα ἄγειν βουλεύομεν τοῖς⁵ φίλοις. 16 δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι οἱ ἵπποι οὐκ ἔχουσι φόβον τῶν πλοίων. 17 οἱ στρατηγοὶ κελεύουσιν τοὺς λοχᾶγοὺς παύειν τὸν τῶν ἵππων φόβον.

32 We are telling⁶ the general not⁷ to bring the cavalry into the fort. 2 We are not afraid⁸ of the horses. 3 What sort of boats are you planning to bring? 4 We have many implements in the house. 5 The companies were in the fort in the plain,

33 ¹ For accents of the enclitics and the use of the proclitics in this exercise constantly compare with /2 and see 17 a, b, e, 19 d, 20 d, e, 21 b.

² ἵππικόν: adjective without noun, *cavalry force* 543.

³ λέγειν *to tell*. Attack the constructions fearlessly. They are all familiar.

⁴ ἔστιν 495, 496.

⁵ The first τοῖς is *for your*, the second *for our* 551 d.

⁶ Use the proper form of κελεύω.

⁷ Notice that the negative with the *infinitives* in 3/ is μή. Use it so until you have some reason given for using οὐ. Read 486, 564.

⁸ Compare 3/, 16.

III THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

34 **Nouns and Adjectives.** Study and review 62 a, b, c, 63 a, b, c, and 11-14.

There is nothing new except the vocative of θεός and the moving of the accent from antepenult to penult and back. The rule that the accent of nouns and adjectives remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular if possible, holds. But by 12 the long ultima draws the accent forward to the penult. When the ultima again becomes short the accent goes back to its original syllable. This tendency of the accent to go back gives it the name *recessive accent*.

a Note that in Greek the quantity of the *ultima* may affect the position and the form of the accent, though it does not *determine* its position in the first form of the noun, the nominative; while in Latin the *penult determines* the position of the accent. *Sérmo* becomes *sermónis* as the penult is long, but *sermónibus* as the penult is short. *ἄνθρωπος* becomes *ἀνθρώπων* as the ultima is long, but *ἄνθρωπον* when the ultima becomes short again. *δῶρον* becomes *δώρον* as the

ultima is long, but δῶρα when the ultima becomes short again. In φίλος, φίλον the quantity of the ultima affects neither the position nor the form of the accent.

35	(ὁ) <i>the</i>	φιλι-ο- <i>friendly</i>	βαρβαρο- <i>foreigner</i>	(τὸ) <i>the</i>	ἄλλο- <i>other</i>	δωρο- <i>gift</i>
	ὁ	φίλιος	βάρβαρος	τὸ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
	τοῦ	φιλίου	βαρβάρου	τοῦ	ἄλλου	δώρου
	τῷ	φιλίῳ	βαρβάρῳ	τῷ	ἄλλῳ	δώρῳ
	τὸν	φίλιον	βάρβαρον	τὸ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
	ῶ	φίλιε	βάρβαρε	ῶ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
	οἱ	φίλιοι	βάρβαροι	τὰ	ἄλλα	δῶρα
	τῶν	φιλίων	βαρβάρων	τῶν	ἄλλων	δώρων
	τοῖς	φιλίοις	βαρβάροις	τοῖς	ἄλλοις	δώροις
	τοὺς	φιλίους	βαρβάρους	τὰ	ἄλλα	δῶρα

36 **Verbs.** Learn the future indicative and infinitive active of παύω in 252. For the inflection and *tense-stem* παυσοιε- see 277, 278.

$$37 \text{ A } \left. \begin{array}{c} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \pi\text{-mute} + \sigma = \psi, \text{ a } \left. \begin{array}{c} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \kappa\text{-mute} + \sigma = \xi,$$

$$\cdot \text{ a } \left. \begin{array}{c} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \tau\text{-mute} + \sigma = \sigma. \quad \text{Consult 38 b, 45 a, b.}$$

Compare in Latin the perfects *scripsī* for **scrib-sī** *write*, *dixī* for **dīc-sī** *say*, *rīsī* for **rīd-sī** *laugh*, *sēnsī* for **sent-sī** *feel*.

So in adding the *tense-suffix* -σοιε to the verb-stems we get the *tense-stems* πεμψοιε = πεμψοιε, ἀγσοιε = ἄξοιε, πειθοιε = πεισοιε.

38

INDICATIVE	ἀκούσo:ε-	πέμψo:ε-	ἄξo:ε-	πείσo:ε-
	<i>hear</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>drive</i>	<i>persuade</i>
	ἀκούσω	πέμψω	ἄξω	πείσω
	ἀκούσεις	πέμψεις	ἄξεις	πείσεις
	ἀκούσει	πέμψει	ἄξει	πείσει
	ἀκούσο-μεν	πέμψο-μεν	ἄξο-μεν	πείσο-μεν
	ἀκούσε-τε	πέμψε-τε	ἄξε-τε	πείσε-τε
INF.	ἀκούσουσι	πέμψουσι	ἄξουσι	πείσουσι
	ἀκούσειν	πέμψειν	ἄξειν	πείσειν

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

39 ἄνθρωπος *man*; equivalent to Latin *homo*. phil-anthropy φίλος 2/

βάρβαρος *not Greek, foreign, barbarian*

πολέμιος *hostile, the enemy's*; equivalent to Latin *hostilis*; οἱ πολέμοι *the enemy*; equivalent to Latin *hostēs*; πόλεμος 50

φίλιος *friendly*; φίλος 2/

ἀθροῖζω *collect*

ἀκούω, ὅτι clause or inf. clause, *hear*. acoustic

εἰμι, inf. εἶναι, *am, be*

πείθω, A or A and inf. clause, *win over, persuade*

πέμπω, A and A with prep. or A with D of person, *send*. pomp

πιστεύω D *trust*; πιστός 2/

ἀπό prep. G *off, away from, from*; Latin *ab* with ablative. apo-stle

πρός prep. *face to face, confronting, opposite*

G *from, by, in the sight of, before*; πρὸς θεῶν *before the gods*

D *facing, near, beside, besides*; πρὸς τούτοις *besides these*

A *before, against, to, regarding*; πρὸς ταῦτα *in reference to this*

40 Ἀκούσομεν ὅτι πολλοὶ βάρβαροί εἰσιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.

2 ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμψει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου.¹

3 πείσουσι² πολλοὺς εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις.

4 πείσω² τὸν λοχαγὸν μὴ πέμπειν δῶρα τοῖς βαρβά-

ροῖς.³ 5 πείσομεν τὸν στρατηγὸν ἄγειν τὸν πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς Κλέαρχον. 6 τί οὐ πιστεύσει ὁ Κλέαρχος τοῖς φίλοις βαρβάροις; 7 ἀθροίσομεν πιστοὺς ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐκ τῶν οἴκων. 8 τί ἄλλο χωρίον βουλεύετε ἔχειν; 9 ἀκούω ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμψει ἀνθρώπους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 10 ἀκούω τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμψειν ἀνθρώπους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 11 οὐκ ἄξουσι⁴ τὰ ὄπλα ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 12 τί κελεύεις² Κλέαρχον μὴ ἀθροίζειν τοὺς ἵππους: 13 ποῖον δῶρον ἔχετε πέμπειν εἰς Δελφοὺς τῷ θεῷ.⁵ 14 βουλεύσομεν πολλὰ τοῖς φίλοις.⁶ 15 οὐ πιστεύσεις τῷ λοχαγῷ ἀθροίζειν τὸ ἱππικόν:

- 4/ We shall persuade the captain⁷ to trust the faithful man.⁸
 2 We hear that⁹ they are bringing the cavalry. 3 The oracle¹⁰ of Phoibos¹¹ was at¹² Delphoi. 4 They will tell the men not to send horses. 5 We shall send the companies away from the house.

42 ¹ οἴκου: examples in 17 and 3/ show that the genitive in addition to its use like the Latin genitive has also ablative uses, as a *from* case 505.

² πείσουσι: notice that πείθω like κελεύω takes the accusative not the dative.

³ βαρβάροις: with most verbs of motion the accusative and a preposition is the regular construction, but πέμπω frequently has the dative.

⁴ ἄξουσι: what shows that ἄξουσι is future?

⁵ τῷ θεῷ for *the god*. The cele-

brated oracle of Apollo was at Delphoi, in Phokis. The temple precinct was situated on a rocky shelf on the slope of Mt. Parnassos.

⁶ φίλοις *many things for our friends*: a *for* dative as θεῷ above. Consult 523.

⁷ Use the accusative.

⁸ Use the dative.

⁹ Write this clause in two ways; compare numbers 9 and 10.

¹⁰ τὸ μαντεῖον *the oracle*.

¹¹ Φοῖβος *gleaming* was a common designation of Apollo.

¹² ἐν with the dative.

IV Ω - VERBS

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

- 43 **Endings.** Learn the imperfect indicative active of **παύω** in **252** and the active *secondary* endings in **263**.
- 44 **Augment.** Learn **264**, **265 a, b**, **268** and **a**. Study the examples. Though beginning with a vowel **ἔχω** takes the *syllabic* augment : **ἔ-εχον = εἶχον** **267**.
- 45 **Meaning.** Learn **459**. The present stem denotes *action going on* at any time. The imperfect belongs to the present system and uses the *tense-stem* of that system. The *time* of the imperfect is generally past.

46	ἀγο:ε- <i>drive</i>	ἀγο:ε- <i>lead</i>	πεμπο:ε- <i>send</i>	ἐχο:ε- <i>have</i>
	ἦγο-ν ἦγε-ς ἦγε	ἄπ-ἦγο-ν ἄπ-ἦγε-ς ἄπ-ἦγε	ἄπ-έ-πεμπο-ν ἄπ-έ-πεμπε-ς ἄπ-έ-πεμπε	εἶχο-ν εἶχε-ς εἶχε
	ἦγο-μεν ἦγε-τε ἦγο-ν	ἄπ-ἦγο-μεν ἄπ-ἦγε-τε ἄπ-ἦγο-ν	ἄπ-ε-πέμπο-μεν ἄπ-ε-πέμπε-τε ἄπ-έ-πεμπο-ν	εἶχο-μεν εἶχε-τε εἶχο-ν

- 47 **Accent.** The accent of verbs is recessive **249, 34**; it goes back to the antepenult, if there is one, unless that is forbidden by **12**.

Observe that when the accent was on the antepenult an additional syllable at the end draws the accent forward one syllable; so also the lengthening of a short ultima, as in nouns. This drawing of the accent from the antepenult to the new antepenult is justified by **11**. The circumflex in

εἶχον and ἀπ-ῆγον is justified by 13; the acute in ἤγομεν by 11; the place of the accent in ἀπ-ῆγον by 268 a.

48 A *ν* movable is allowed in ἔπαυε(ν), ἦγε(ν), and like forms, as also in ἔστι(ν), by 41. For ἀπ-ῆγον, ἀπ-έπεμπον see *Elision* 32, 33.

49 Words that cannot begin a clause are called *postpositive*. In this book postpositive words are marked with an asterisk as * γάρ. See 672 c.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 50 πόλεμος *war*; πολέμιος 39. *polemic*
 ποταμός *river*. hippo-potamus ἵππος
 2/
 αἴτιος G *causing, to blame for, responsible*
 ῥάδιος *easy*
 ἀπ-άγω *lead off or back, carry away*
 συν-άγω *bring together, collect*
 ἐπι-βουλεύω D *plan against, plot against*
 ἀπο-πέμπω *send off or back, remit*
 ἔξω *adv. outside; G outside of, without. exotic*
 ποῖ *interrog. adv. whither? where (to)? where?*
 αὐτόν αὐτό *pron. him, it; pl. them*
 ἐπί *prep. on. epi-thet, epi-gram, epi-stle*
 G *on; ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου on the throne*
 D *on, at, near; ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ at the river*
 A *to, on, against; ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθῆνας to or against Athens*
 * γάρ *conj. for, because*
 καὶ . . . καὶ *conj. both . . . and*

5/ Οἱ Ἀριαῖοι φίλοι τὸν πόλεμον ἔπαυον. 2 ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἦν¹ ὅπλα πολλὰ αὐτοῦ. 3 οἱ θεοὶ πέμπουσι τοῖς² ἀνθρώποις πολλὰ δῶρα. 4 συν-ῆγον τοὺς πιστοὺς φίλους εἰς τὸν οἶκον. 5 τῶν φιλίων ἀνθρώπων³ ἠκούομεν πολλά.⁴ 6 ποῦ ἤκουες τὰ πλοῖα εἶναι;⁵ ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ἔστιν. 7 δῆλον ἦν ὅτι τὸ μακρὸν πλοῖον ἦν αἴτιον φόβου τοῖς ἵπποις. 8 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ἄγειν πιστοὺς ἀνθρώπους· οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι ἦσαν πολλοί. 9 συν-άγουσι τοὺς

φίλους εἰς τὸ χωρίον· ἀκούουσι γὰρ ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι πολέμοι εἰσιν. ἀκούουσι γὰρ τοὺς βαρβάρους πολεμίους εἶναι. **10** τί ἔπεμπες αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν λοχᾶγόν; ἐπ-εβούλευε⁶ γὰρ τοῖς ἄλλοις. **11** ποῖ ἐπέμπετε τοὺς ἵππους; τῷ στρατηγῷ εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἐπέμπομεν αὐτούς. **12** ἔπεμπον τὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς Κλέαρχον εἶναι φίλον πιστὸν αὐτῷ. **13** Κλέαρχος ἔχει πολλοὺς ἄλλους φίλους πιστοὺς αὐτῷ. **14** ἠκούομεν ὅτι οἱ πολέμοι συν-άγουσι⁷ πολλοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἵππους. **15** ποῦ ἐπ-εβούλευον οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ Ἀριαίου τοῦ βαρβάρου πολλοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ ἐπ-εβούλευον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς. **16** οὐ ῥᾷδίον ἐστι συν-άγειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἔξω τοῦ οἴκου. **17** οὐκ ἐβουλεύομεν ἀπο-πέμπειν τοὺς βαρβάρους· καὶ γὰρ⁸ οὐκ αἵτιοι ἦσαν τοῦ πολέμου. **18** οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ Κλέαρχος καὶ Χειρίσοφος, φίλιοι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἦσαν καὶ ἦγον τοὺς λόχους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. **19** ἐφ' ἵππου⁹ Κλέαρχος ἀπ-ῆγε τὸ ἱππικὸν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. **20** ἦγον τοὺς ἵππους ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου εἰς τὸ πεδίον.

52 They were bringing into the fort the cavalry that-was-outside.¹⁰ 2 The captains of the barbarians were mounted.¹¹

53 ¹ ἦν *were*. Learn 496.

² τοῖς ἀνθρώποις *to men, to man-kind*. English omits the article.

³ ἀνθρώπων: *a from genitive*.

⁴ πολλά *many things*, a common rendering of the neuter plural.

⁵ εἶναι *were*. Do not say *to be*.

⁶ ἐπ-: for ἐπί by elision.

⁷ συν-άγουσι *were collecting or are collecting*, according to the

point of view. The time is present to ἠκούομεν.

⁸ καὶ γάρ *for in fact or simply for*.

⁹ ἐφ' ἵππου: elision gives ἐπ' ἵππου, then π becomes φ, 42 and a. Pronounce *ep-hîp*.

¹⁰ Use the article with ἔξω.

¹¹ For more than one use the plural ἐφ' ἵππων.

- 3 It was not easy to hear what the general was saying.
 4 They were not to blame for the panic.¹² 5 Why were you sending him to the captain ?

¹² φόβος in the genitive.

V Ω - VERBS

σα

THE SIGMATIC AORIST AND THE THEMATIC AORIST,
 INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

- 54 Learn the aorist indicative and infinitive active in 252 and 348. Review augment 44.

a For the tense-stems and inflection see for παυσα- 279, 280, 281, 285 ; for λιπο:ε- 347, 349.

- 55 Review 37 and apply it to the tense-suffix -σα.

56	PRESENT	FUTURE	AORIST	MEANING
	ἀκούω	ἀκούσω	ἤκουσα	hear
	ἐπι-βουλεύω	ἐπι-βουλεύσω	ἐπ-εβούλευσα	plot against
	πέμπω	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	send
	ἀπο-πέμπω	ἀπο-πέμψω	ἀπ-έπεμψα	send off
	λείπω	λείψω	ἔλιπο-ν	leave
	ἄρχω	ἄρξω	ἤρξα	begin
	ἔχω	ἔξω	ἔσχο-ν	have, get
	πείθω	πείσω	ἔπεισα	persuade
	ἀθροίζω	ἀθροίσω	ἤθροισα	collect

a Pronounce these words aloud again and again, reading across the page. ἔξω and ἔσχο-ν are peculiar but the inflection is regular. The aorist infinitive is σχεῖν.

57

INDICATIVE	σα-AORIST		ο:ε-AORIST	IMPERFECT
	ἀρξ α - <i>begin</i>	πεμψ α - <i>send (away)</i>	λιπ ο : ε - <i>leave</i>	λειπ ο : ε - <i>leave</i>
	ἦρξ α	ἄπ-έ-πεμψ α	ἔ-λιπ ο -ν	ἔ-λειπ ο -ν
	ἦρξ α -ς	ἄπ-έ-πεμψ α -ς	ἔ-λιπ ε -ς	ἔ-λειπ ε -ς
	ἦρξ ε	ἄπ-έ-πεμψ ε	ἔ-λιπ ε	ἔ-λειπ ε
INF.	ἦρξ α -μεν	ἄπ-ε-πέμψ α -μεν	ἔ-λίπ ο -μεν	ἔ-λείπ ο -μεν
	ἦρξ α -τε	ἄπ-ε-πέμψ α -τε	ἔ-λίπ ε -τε	ἔ-λείπ ε -τε
	ἦρξ α -ν	ἄπ-έ-πεμψ α -ν	ἔ-λιπ ο -ν	ἔ-λειπ ο -ν
	ἄρξ α ι	ἄπο-πέμψ α ι	λιπ ε ῖ ν	λείπ ε ι ν

58 **Accent.** a Observe that the accent is recessive and that by 11 ἦρξα with the addition of -μεν to the *tense-stem* becomes ἦρξαμεν, and ἔπεμψα and ἔλιπον with the same addition to the *tense-stem* become ἐπέμψαμεν and ἐλίπομεν. Compare 47.

b The σα-aorist infinitive always accents the penult: πέμψαι, ἀκοῦσαι, ἀθροῖσαι.

c The ο:ε-aorist infinitive always accents the ultima with the circumflex: λιπέιν, λαβεῖν, ἐλθεῖν.

59 **Inflection.** a The σα-aorist is similar to the imperfect, but omits the personal ending -ν in the first singular and changes the α of -σα to ε in the third singular.

b The thematic aorist is like the imperfect.

60 **Meaning.** The aorist stems denote the mere act at any time. The time of the aorist indicative, the

only aorist form that takes the augment,¹ is past.
See 462, 463.

TIME OF THE INFINITIVE

6/ As in Latin, after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, 577 a, b, each tense of the infinitive represents the *same* tense of a finite mode. The negative οὐ is usually unchanged :

{	Κλέαρχος	{	οὐ	πέμπει	{	τὰ πλοῖα
			οὐκ	ἔπεμπε		
{	Klearchos	{		πέμψει	{	the boats.
				ἔπεμψε		
				is not sending		
				was not sending		
				will not send		
				did not send		

{	ἀκούομεν	{	Κλέαρχον οὐ	{	πέμπειν	{	τὰ	
					ἡκούσαμεν			πέμψειν
{	οὐκ ἔφασαν	{	Κλέαρχον	{	πέμψαι	{	πλοῖα	
{	We hear	{	that Klearchos	{	is not sending	{	the	
								was not sending
								will not send
								did not send

{	We heard	{	that Klearchos	{	was not sending	{	the
{	They said	{		{	did not send	{	boats.

a Notice that the present infinitive πέμπειν represents both present and imperfect indicative.

¹ Be ever on guard against using the augment in any except indicative forms. **Augment** is the sign of past time and is used in the **indicative only**, imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect.

- 62 When the **subject** of the infinitive is the same as that of the leading verb, it is regularly omitted and a modifier of the subject agrees with the subject of the leading verb 571 :

ἄξω τοὺς ἵππους αἰτιός εἰμι τούτου ἤκουσα ὅτι Ἅγισ ἄξει	Κλέαρχος ἔφη	ἄξειν τοὺς ἵππους αἰτιός εἶναι τούτου ἀκοῦσαι ὅτι Ἅγισ ἄξει
--	-----------------	--

<i>I will bring the horses.</i>	Klearchos said that	<i>he would bring the horses.</i>
<i>I am to blame for this.</i>		<i>he was to blame for that.</i>
<i>I heard that Agis would lead.</i>		<i>he (had) heard that Agis would lead.</i>

a But in Latin we must say *Negavit sē itūrum esse*
he said that he would not go.

- 63 Other common uses of the infinitive are similar to our English use, though we frequently indicate no difference in tense. The negative is μή 563, 564.

The present infinitive denotes continuance or repetition at *any* time.

The aorist infinitive denotes occurrence or attainment at *any* time.

κελεύουσι κελεύσουσι ἐκέλευσαν	Κλέαρχον μὴ	πέμπειν πέμψαι	τὰ πλοῖα
<i>They urge They will urge They urged</i>	Klearchos not	<i>to send to keep sending to send</i>	<i>the boats.</i>

βουλεύω	ἐλθεῖν	I am planning	to go.
ἐβούλευον		I was planning	
βουλεύσω		I shall plan	
ἐβούλευσα		I planned	

a Ἐβούλευε φίλιος εἶναι *he was planning to be friendly*
 543 a (1). Compare 62.

64 Notice too in ἄξει 62 that in a ὅτι clause the tense of the verb is the same as in the original thought, as also in the following:

ἔλεξαν ὅτι Κλέαρχος αἰτιός ἐστιν *they said that Klearchos was to blame.*

ἤκουσαν Κλεάρχου ὅτι ἄξει τοὺς ἵππους *they heard from Klearchos that he would bring the horses.*

65 So also in question-clauses:

τί ἔχεις;	ἠρώτησαν Κλεάρχον	τί ἔχει
ποῦ ἄξεις;		ποῦ ἄξει
What have you?	They asked Klearchos	what he had.
Where shall you lead?		where he should lead.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 66 ἀνδράποδον *enslaved captive, slave* ἔφη ἔφασαν, inf. clause, *he said, they said*
 πρό-βατον, in plural, *sheep*
 στρατό-πέδον *camp*: στρατ-ηγός 21 ἔφυγον φυγεῖν, aorist of φεύγω, *flee, run away. Latin fugiō*
 ἀγαθός *good, brave. Agatha* ἦλθον ἔλθειν, aorist, *come, go*
 δύο *two* λείπω *leave. ec-lipse ἐκ-λείπω. ἐξ*
 ἄρχω, inf. clause or G, *am first, begin; rule, lead, command. archon,* 30
archoia, aroh-angel πότε interrog. adv. *when?*
 ἔλαβον λαβεῖν, aorist of λαμβάνω. διά prep. *through. dia-meter μέ-*
take, get *τρον measure*

G <i>through, during</i> ; equivalent to Latin <i>per</i> ; διὰ βίου <i>through life</i>	παρά prep. <i>beside. par-allel, para-graph, para-digm</i>
A <i>through, on account of</i> ; equivalent to Latin <i>propter</i> ; διὰ πολλά <i>for many reasons</i>	G <i>from beside, from</i> ; τὰ παρὰ Φοίβου ἀγαθὰ <i>blessings from Phoebos</i>
μετά prep. <i>among. meth-od</i> μεθ' 32, 42, ὁδός <i>way</i>	D <i>beside, with</i> ; παρὰ τῷ φίλῳ <i>at my friend's house</i>
G <i>with, in company with</i> ; μετ' αὐτοῦ <i>with him</i>	A <i>to the side of, to, along by</i> ; παρὰ τοὺς φίλους <i>to (join) our friends</i>
A <i>after, next to, place or time</i> ; μετὰ δεῖπνον <i>after dinner</i>	ἀλλά conj. <i>but, yet; well; ἀλλὰ γάρ but really, but then</i>

67 Τί ἐλάβετε τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου; 2 οἱ πολέμιοι ἔφυγον διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ¹ τὸν ποταμόν. 3 ἤθροισαν τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 4 ἐπέισαμεν αὐτὸν μὴ ἰσπεῦσαι τῷ ἀνδραπόδῳ. 5 ἄξουσιν τοὺς ἵππους παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἔξουσιν αὐτούς. 6 ἔπεμψε δύο λόχους λαβεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον τῶν πολεμίων. 7 ἦλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦγεν. 8 μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον οἱ πολέμιοι ἐβούλευσαν ἄλλα.² 9 ἠκούσαμεν πρόβατα εἶναι³ πολλὰ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 10 κελεύσομεν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς καὶ πιστοὺς λοχαγούς ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον· πιστεύομεν γὰρ αὐτοῖς. 11 ποῖ ἐπέμψατε τοὺς ἵππους τοὺς Κλεάρχου; οὐκ ἐπέμψαμεν αὐτούς· ἀλλὰ ἔφυγον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἦλθον. 12 πότε ἔσχε⁴ τὰ δῶρα; ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ πιστὸς ἦν φίλος Προξένῳ καὶ Πρόξενος ἔπεμψεν αὐτά. 13 δύο λόχοι βαρβάρων ἦλθον παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν καὶ ἔλαβον τὸ χωρίον παρὰ τοῦ λοχαγοῦ. 14 οἱ λοχαγοὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν⁵ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπιβουλευσαι τοῖς στρατη-

γοῖς. 15 οἱ βάρβαροι ἤρξαν λιπεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ φυγεῖν διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν.

- 68 When did the cavalry begin to go out of the camp?
 2 They went through the camp and fled along the river.
 3 They directed the men to get two companies of-cavalry.
 4 He said⁶ that the man would⁷ not send⁷ the arms.
 5 They said that the barbarians had-plotted⁸ against the friendly generals.

69 ¹ παρά along by.

² ἄλλα other things, made other plans.

³ εἶναι that there were.

⁴ πότε ἔσχε when did he get?

⁵ οὐκ ἔφασαν . . . ἐπι-βουλεύσαι said that the others did not plot against. For the meaning of οὐκ ἔφασαν compare Latin *negāvērunt* and see 62 a. When ἔφη and ἔφασαν introduce a negative clause,

the negative precedes the verb of saying. Here the original thought was οὐκ ἐπ-εβούλευσαν *they did not plot*. Compare οὐκ ἔφασαν and the infinitives in 6/. In what tense is ἐπι-βουλεύσαι?

⁶ Use the proper form of λέγω with ὅτι.

⁷ Use the future of πέμπω.

⁸ Use the aorist of ἐπι-βουλεύω, and ἔφασαν for *they said*.

VI THE A-DECLENSION

NOUNS IN -ā AND -a AND ADJECTIVES OF THE VOWEL DECLENSION

- 70 Complete 61 by learning the feminine. Take ὁδός in 62. Learn 65, 66, 67 a, b, c, 68 a, 73; ἄπορος like ἥσυχος in 74, 75; δίκαιος in 76, 77 a, b.

Use the same rules for **accent** as before in 20 and 34, but remember that the genitive plural of *nouns* of the **a**-declension always has -ῶν, while that of feminine *adjectives* of the vowel declension is like the masculine.

71

(ή) ἄπορο - γεφύρα -
the impassable bridge

ή	ἄπορος	γέφυρα	αί	ἄποροι	γέφυραι
τῆς	ἀπόρου	γεφύρας	τῶν	ἀπόρων	γεφύρων
τῇ	ἀπόρῳ	γεφύρᾳ	ταῖς	ἀπόροις	γεφύραις
τῇν	ἀπορον	γεφύραν	τὰς	ἀπόρους	γεφύρας

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 72 ἀκρᾱ *summit, high.* acro stic
 γέφυρα *bridge*
 ἡμέρᾱ *day.* eph-*emeral* ἐπί, ἐφ' 50
 ὁδός -οῦ¹ ἡ *way, road.* ex-*odus* ἐξ
 30, meth-*od* μετά 66
 οἰκίᾱ *house, building;* οἶκος 30
 στρατιᾱ́ *army;* στρατ-ηγός 21
 χώρᾱ *place; land, country;* χωρίον
 30
- ἀ-*poros* *without resources; im-*
passable; a- negative and πόρος
a way. See 75, 12
 δίκαιος *right, proper;* δίκη *justice*
 ἱκανός *enough, in plenty*
 ὑστεραίῳς *later, following; next*
 πόσος *interrog. pron. how large?*
 how much? plural *how many?*

- 73 Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ¹ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦρξαν συν-άγειν
 τὴν στρατιάν. 2 λέγουσιν ὅτι οὐχ ἱκανὰ πλοῖα ἔσχον.²
 3 Κλονίος ἔφη ἀκούσαι³ Κλεάρχου⁴ ὅτι Πρόξενος
 ἄρξει⁵ τοῦ λόχου.⁶ 4 ποῦ ἦν ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ οἰκίᾱ;
 παρὰ τῇ ὁδῷ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον⁷ ἦν ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
 οἰκίᾱ. 5 ἠκούσαμεν γέφυραν μακρὰν εἶναι⁸ ἐπὶ τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ. 6 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦγον τὴν στρατιάν πολλὰς
 ἡμέρας.⁹ 7 ἀκούομεν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν πλοῖα ἐν τῷ
 ποταμῷ ἱκανὰ ἄγειν τὴν στρατιάν. 8 ἦλθον παρὰ
 Κλεάρχου καὶ πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἦσαν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ
 αὐτοῦ. 9 πόσους καὶ ποίους ἀνθρώπους ἠκούσατε
 τοὺς ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων χώρᾳ⁷ εἶναι;¹⁰ 10 οἱ βάρ-

¹ The genitive is denoted by -οῦ, the gender by ἡ.

βαροι ἄποροι ἦσαν ἀθροῖσαι στρατιὰν καὶ πέμψαι αὐτὴν εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν. 11 ἡ ὁδὸς ἣ ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν⁷ οὐκ ἄπορός ἐστιν. 12 οὐ ῥᾷδίον ἐστι λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκρᾱν· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἐπ' αὐτῇ εἰσι βάρβαροι. 13 οὐ δίκαιόν ἐστι ἐπι-βουλεύσαι τοῖς φίλοις Κλεάρχου. 14 πόσα ἀνδράποδα ἔπεμψε τὰ ὅπλα λαβεῖν ἐκ τῆς οἰκίᾳς; 15 οὐκ αἷτιος ἦν ὁ Κλονίος τοῦ τοὺς ἵππους φυγεῖν.¹¹

- 74 In war the captains lead their companies against the enemy.
 2 The road into the camp is impassable.¹² 3 It is not right to send men against the friendly foreigners. 4 It is evident that the general will not send back the slaves.

75 ¹ ἡμέρᾳ 527 c: dative time when.

² ἱκανὰ . . . ἔσχον did not get enough; the imperfect would mean did not have enough.

³ ἀκοῦσαι that he had heard. The subject is the same as that of ἔφη; see 571. He said ἤκουσα I heard; consult 62.

⁴ Κλεάρχου: a from genitive. '

⁵ ὅτι Πρόξενος ἄρξει that Proxenos would lead. The ὅτι clause retains the verb in the original tense, just as in the infinitive clause ἀκοῦσαι. Consult 64.

⁶ τοῦ λόχου: ἄρχω takes its object in the genitive.

⁷ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον: any adverbial expression after the article belongs to the noun to which the article belongs and becomes adjectival. So here the road into the plain; and below those who are in the country of the barbarians; and the road to the river.

⁸ εἶναι that there was.

⁹ ἡμέρᾱς: accusative time how long.

¹⁰ εἶναι were.

¹¹ τοῦ τοὺς ἵππους φυγεῖν of the horses' running away. φυγεῖν is an infinitive with ἵππους for its subject accusative. This infinitive is like the English infinitive in -ing, a verbal noun. The article τοῦ belongs to this noun φυγεῖν and shows that it is genitive. The genitive depends on αἷτιος. The English uses a possessive instead of a subject accusative, the cause of their running away instead of them running away.

¹² ἀ-πορος: ἀ- or ἀν-, an inseparable called a- negative, is prefix to many forms giving a negative force as in in Latin and un in English: in-ers, in-active, im-possible, un-likely.

5 We shall tell the men not to take the horses from the camp.

VII THE A-DECLENSION

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -η. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS Ὅς, Οἷος, Ὅσος, Ὅστις

76 Review 65-68, 77 a, b. Learn 70, σοφός in 76; 213, 214, 215; 612, 613 a two lines, 614 one line.

77

(ἡ) μῖκρ ᾱ - σκην ᾱ -
the small tent

ἡ	μῖκρ ᾱ	σκην ἡ	α ἰ	μῖκρ α ἰ	σκην α ἰ
τ ῆ ς	μῖκρ ᾱ ς	σκην ῆ ς	τ ὠ ν	μῖκρ ὠ ν	σκην ὠ ν
τ ῆ	μῖκρ ᾱ	σκην ῆ	τ α ἰ ς	μῖκρ α ἰ ς	σκην α ἰ ς
τ ἡ ν	μῖκρ ᾱ ν	σκην ἡ ν	τ ᾱ ς	μῖκρ ᾱ ς	σκην ᾱ ς

78 The conjunctive¹ pronoun ὅστις, neuter ὅ τι or ὅ τι, a general relative, means *any one who, anything which, whoever, whatever*. The masculine and neuter singular forms are

N.	ὅστις	ὅ τι	D.	ὅτῳ	ὅτῳ
G.	οὔτου	οὔτου	A.	ὄντινα	ὅ τι

VOCABULARY² AND EXERCISES

- 79 ἀγορά -ᾱς *assembly; market place, market* θύρᾱ -ᾱς *door, commonly plural. DOOR*
- ἑμ-αξα -ης *wagon: ἑμα 173, ἄγ- in* κάμη -ης *village*
- ἄγω 30. AXLE πέλτη -ης *shield, crescent-formed*

¹ The term conjunctive includes the term relative.

² From now on the genitive of substantives and the full forms of adjectives will be indicated. Any one in doubt regarding these particulars in words already given should consult the general vocabulary.

πηγή -ης *spring, source, commonly*
plural

σκηνή -ης *tent; pl. quarters. scene*

τρά-πεζα -ης *table with four legs.*
trapezium

φυλακή -ης *guard, garrison*

μικρός -ᾱ- ὄν *small. micro-scope*

σοφός -ή -όν *skilled, wise, clever.*
sopho-more, philo-sopher φίλος 2/

οἷος -ᾱ -ον conj. pron. *such as,*
who

ὅς ἢ ὅν conj. pron. *who, which,*
that

ὅσος -η -ον conj. pron. *as much*
as, pl. as many as, who

ὅστις ἤτις ὁ τι conj. pron. *who-*
ever, whatever

* δέ conj. *but, and, yet*

80 Ποῖα ὄπλα εἶχον ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ: πέλτας καὶ ἄλλα ὄπλα ἐπὶ τῶν τραπεζῶν εἶχον οἷα¹ λοχαγοὶ ἔχουσιν. 2 πόσαι σκηναὶ εἰσιν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ: πολλαὶ εἰσι σκηναί. 3 ἐν ποίᾳ χώρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀγορά: μικρὰ ἀλλ'² ἀγαθὴ ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα. 4 ἔπεμψαν τὰς ἀμάξας εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 5 αἱ θύραι αἱ τῶν οἰκιῶν μικραὶ εἰσιν. 6 ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὃς εἶχε τοὺς ἵππους οὐκ αἵτιος ἦν· ὅστις δ'³ ἔπεμψεν αὐτοὺς αἵτιός ἐστιν. 7 ἡ ὁδὸς ἧ⁴ ἐβούλεον ἐλθεῖν ἄπορος ἦν. 8 οἱ βάρβαροι ὅσοι⁵ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀκρῶν ἔφυγον εἰς τὴν κώμην ἐν ᾗ ἦν ἡ στρατιά. 9 ὅσοι⁵ ἦσαν βάρβαροι ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον. 10 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ⁶ ἦλθον πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς ποταμοῦ ἐφ' αἷς⁷ ἦν κώμη μικρά. 11 τὰς φυλακὰς οἷας⁸ ἔχομεν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις βουλευόμεν πέμψαι παρὰ τοὺς⁹ φίλους. 12 ἡ κώμη εἰς ἣν ἦλθον μικρὰ ἦν. εἰς ἣν ἦλθον κώμην¹⁰ μικρὰ ἦν. 13 βουλευόμεν ἐλθεῖν μετὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὧν¹¹ Κλέαρχος πέμψει. 14 ὅστις βουλεύει⁹ ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου οὐ σοφός ἐστιν. 15 ὁ τι ἤκουον ἐν τῇ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ σκηνῇ οὐκ ἔλεγον αὐτοῖς. 16 πολλοὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν καὶ ἔλεγον¹² αὐτῷ ὅσα ἤκουσαν.

8/ He led the army along by the river and took the enemy's¹³ camp, from which¹⁴ the barbarians had fled. **2** They said that they did not take the arms that were in the tents. **3** He told them not to leave the horses, for the road was long.¹⁵ **4** On the next day they sent back the slaves into camp. **5** What else¹⁶ shall I plan to send him?

82 ¹ οἷα *such as*.

² ἀλλ': by elision for ἀλλά.

³ δ': by elision for δέ.

⁴ ἣ by which: a by dative.

⁵ ὅσοι *as many as, all the barbarians that*. The Greek indicates quality (οἶος) and quantity or number (ὅσος) by relatives far more frequently than we do. Our sense for proper English must determine whether to say *such as, as much as, as many as, or simply who, that, which, or what*. ὅσοι with its antecedent is frequently translated *all the . . . that*. In number 9 the antecedent is in the relative clause; the translation is the same as in number 8. Consult 613 d.

⁶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ *on the next day: dative time when*. In such expressions ἡμέρᾳ is frequently omitted. Compare 73, 1, and consult 555 b.

⁷ ἐφ' αἷς *at which: by elision for ἐπὶ αἷς*. Compare 53, 6.

⁸ οἷᾱς *such garrisons as, the garrisons which*. See note 5.

⁹ τοῖς *our*.

¹⁰ κώμην: antecedent in the relative clause.

¹¹ ὧν: for οὓς: relative attracted to the case of its antecedent 613 b.

¹² ἔλεγον *told*. The imperfect marks the scene in the tent more vividly than would the aorist, which could properly have been used. The English does not make this distinction of vividness, which is common in lively Greek narrative. Read 466.

¹³ τῶν πολεμίων. The plural is regular, whereas English uses the singular; so also the Latin *hostēs*.

¹⁴ ἐξ οὗ.

¹⁵ μακρὰν γὰρ εἶναι τὴν ὁδόν. The infinitive shows that the clause is part of what he said. ἔφη could be used after γάρ.

¹⁶ τί ἄλλο.

VIII THE A-DECLENSION

MASCULINE NOUNS IN -ās AND -ης. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

83 Learn 71, 72 a-d. Observe that all α-declension nouns are alike in the plural.

a Learn 204 ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος.

84 Review and carefully compare the following words. Learn the new forms. Notice their use in the exercises.

Interrogative :

τίς ; πόσος ; ποῖος ; πόθεν ; ποῦ ; ποῖ ;

who ? how much ? what kind of ? where (from) ? where (at) ? where (to) ?

Relative :

ὅς ὅσος οἷος ὅθεν οὗ οἷ

who as much as such as (from) where (at) where (to) where

85 a The ending -θεν means *from*. It occurs frequently.

b The nominative ending in -της is explained in 430 and b.

VOCABULARY¹ AND EXERCISES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 86 νεᾶνᾱς -ου ὁ <i>young man</i> | καλός -ή -όν <i>beautiful, fair, noble.</i> |
| ὀπλί-της -ου ὁ <i>hoplite, a heavy-</i> | καλι-σθενικός <i>cali-sthenics</i> |
| armed soldier; ὄπλον 2/ | ἐ-δο-σαν <i>they gave. Latin dō,</i> |
| πολί-της -ου ὁ <i>citizen; πόλις city</i> | dare; an-ec-dote |
| 326. politics | ἐπαθον παθεῖν, aorist of πάσχω, ex- |
| στρατιώ-της -ου ὁ <i>soldier; στρατιά</i> | perience, undergo, suffer, am |
| 72 | treated. pathos, sym-pathy |
| | ὥς conj. adv. <i>as; with inf. so as to</i> |

87 Ποῖ ἄγει ἡ ὁδὸς ἢ διὰ τῆς κώμης ; ἄγει ἡ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν ὅθεν ἤλθομεν. 2 ὁ νεᾶνᾱς οὐ λέξει πόθεν ἔσχεν¹ τὸν ἵππον. 3 οἱ ὀπλῖται ἔλαβον τὰ ὄπλα ἐκ τῶν οἰκιῶν οὐ² ἐλίπομεν αὐτά. 4 πόσους στρατιωτᾱς πέμψετε τῷ ἐμῷ στρατηγῷ ;³ 5 οὐκ ἔλεξαν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποῖός ἐστι⁴ στρατιώτης ὁ ὀπλίτης. 6 οἱ ὑμέτεροι στρατιῶται ἐκ τῆς κώμης ἔφυγον

¹ From now on the gender of the substantives will be indicated by the proper form of the article.

διὰ τοῦ πεδίου εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ὅθεν ἦλθον. **7** πόσους ὀπλίτας ἄξετε τῷ στρατηγῷ³ εἰς τὴν κώμην; ὅσους ἔχομεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἄξομεν. **8** πόση ἐστὶν ἡ σὴ χώρα καὶ πόσοι πολῖται ἐν αὐτῇ;⁵ οὐ μικρά ἐστὶν ἡ ἐμὴ χώρα καὶ πολλοὺς ἔχομεν πολίτας. **9** Ξενιάς ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἱ ἡμέτεροι στρατιῶται οὐ πιστοὶ εἰσιν.⁶ **10** ἤκουσαν πολλοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὀπλίτας εἶναι⁷ ἐπὶ τῆς γεφύρας ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ φυλακὴν οὐχ ἱκανὴν εἶναι. **11** ποῖα ἔπαθεν⁸ ὁ νεανίας ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων κώμῃ; εἶχον αὐτὸν οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἡμέρας πολλὰς καὶ ἔδοσαν αὐτῷ δῶρα καλά. **12** πότε στρατιώτας ἐλθεῖν ἠκούσατε εἰς Ἰωνίαν; οὐκ ἠκούσαμεν· οἱ γὰρ νεανῖαι ἔλεξαν ὅτι οὐκ εἰσι στρατιῶται ἐν τῇ Ἰωνίᾳ. **13** αἱ μικραὶ ἄμαξαι οἰαί εἰσιν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οὐχ ἱκαναὶ⁵ ἔχειν τὰς σκηνὰς ὅσαι ἔξω τῆς κώμης εἰσίν. **14** πόθεν ἔφη Κλέαρχος τοὺς στρατιώτας σχεῖν τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους; τοὺς πολίτας ἔφη πέμψαι αὐτοὺς ὡς δῶρα. **15** οἱ πολῖται ἔλαβον τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς οἱ ἐπέμψαμεν αὐτούς.⁹

- 88 We went into the village from which¹⁰ the soldiers had fled. **2** How many hoplites shall you lead from the camp? **3** We have not wagons enough to carry the arms for the soldiers. **4** They did not tell the captain where¹¹ they left the horses. **5** All the soldiers¹² in the camp had tents enough.

89 ¹ πόθεν ἔσχευεν *where he got*. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking* question clauses retain the verb in the *tense* of the original thought, as in **87** *εἰ* clauses and infinitive clauses. See 65.

² οὐ *where*.

³ στρατηγῷ 521 end. Frequently the idea *for* is implied, as in these cases.

⁴ ἐστὶν *was* or *is*. Consult note 1.

⁵ For the omission of the verb see 493 b.

⁶ εἰσιν *were* or *are*. Compare note 1 and see 64.

⁷ εἶναι *were*.

⁸ ποῖα ἔπαθεν *how was he treated?* ποῖα is neuter plural, cognate accusative with ἔπαθεν.

⁹ αὐτοῖς: instead of αὐτά. Either may be used.

¹⁰ Translate in two ways.

¹¹ ποῦ. Why this and not some other word meaning *where*?

¹² Put the antecedent in the relative clause. Compare 80, 9 and 82, 5.

IX REVIEW. THE ATTRIBUTIVE AND THE PREDICATE POSITION

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES. VERBS: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AORISTS, INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

90 a Review accent 11–14; nouns and adjectives 57–68, 70–78; αὐτός 198, ἄλλος 201; possessives 204; relatives 213–215; verb forms 252.

b Review 37, 44, 47, 61–65, 84.

c Study adjectives 542, 543 and a (1); the article 551 a–g.

d Suffix -ικο 425.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

9/ παράδεισος -ου ὁ *park, preserve*.
paradise

παρασάγγης -ου ὁ *league, parasang*, a Persian measure somewhat more than three miles

πελταστῆς -ου ὁ *peltast, targeteer*, a light-armed soldier carrying the πέλη, from πελάζω *serve as a peltast*

Πέρσης -ου ὁ *a Persian*

Ἑλλην-ικός -ή -όν *Greek*; Ἑλλην *a Greek*. Hellenic

Περσ-ικός -ή -όν *Persian*; τὸ Περσικόν -ου *the Persian force*

κακός -ή -όν *bad*; cowardly. cacography

πέντε *five*. penta-gon

ἕξ *six*. Latin *sex*. hexa-gon

ἑπτὰ *seven*. Latin *septem*. hepta-gon

ὀκτώ *eight*. Latin *octō*. octa-gon

χίλιοι -αι -α *a thousand*

δισ-χίλιοι -αι -α *two thousand*

εἶδον ἰδεῖν, aorist, see. Latin *videō*; WISE, idea, idol, history

ἤγαγον ἀγαγεῖν, aorist of ἄγω,
drive, lead

ἐπεὶ conj. adv. *when, after; since*

ὅτε conj. adv. *when, while*

πάλιν adv. *back, again.* palin-drome.
palim-psest

κατά prep. *down.* cata ract

Ἰ down, down from; κατὰ τῆς
πέτρᾱς down the cliff

A down, along, according to,
against; κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν along
the road; κατὰ τὸν νόμον ac-
cording to custom; κατ' αὐτοὺς
opposite to or against them

92 Ἐπεὶ εἶδεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ Περσικῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἔφυγεν.
2 πολλοὶ στρατιῶται ἦλθον εἰς τὸν ἡμέτερον παρά-
δεισον καὶ ὀπλίται καὶ πελτασταί. 3 οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ
Πέρσαι πάλιν ἐπ-εβούλευον τοῖς Ἑλληνικοῖς ὀπλίταις.
4 ποῖος πολίτης ἐστὶν ὁ νεανίας; λέγουσιν ὅτι ἀγαθός
ἐστίν. 5 πότε ἤγαγον τοὺς ὑμετέρους στρατιώτᾱς εἰς
τὴν τοῦ πολίτου οἰκίαν; 6 πέμψομεν τὸν στρατιώτην
εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον αὐτῶν. 7 ἐπεὶ συν-ήγαγε τοὺς
πολίτᾱς ἔλεξεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι οἱ ἐμοὶ στρατιῶται αὐτοῖς
ἐπι-βουλεύουσιν. 8 ποῖον δῶρον τῷ νεανίᾳ ἐπέμψατε;
9 τί ἔλαβες ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατοπέδου; 10
ὀπλίται ἕξ ἦλθον κατὰ¹ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἤγαγον πλοῖα.
11 ὅτε δὲ ὁ σὸς στρατηγὸς συν-ῆγε τοὺς πελταστὰς
ἔφυγον οἱ πολέμιοι. 12 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἦλθον οἱ ἡμέ-
τεροι στρατιῶται κατὰ¹ τὴν ὁδὸν παρασάγγᾱς πέντε.
13 ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ εἶδομεν ἀγαθοὺς στρατιώτᾱς
χιλίους ἀλλὰ οἱ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ² κακοὶ ᾔσαν. 14 ἐπεὶ
ἤγαγε τοὺς ὀπλίτᾱς εἰς τὴν κώμην πάλιν ἔφυγον.
κακοὶ γὰρ ᾔσαν καὶ οὐκ ᾔκουον³ τῶν στρατηγῶν. 15
ὅτε ἤγομεν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἰωνίαν οὐκ
εἴχομεν⁴ ἱκανὰ λαβεῖν ἐκ τῆς τῶν Περσῶν χώρας.
16 Ξενίας ἔφη ἰδεῖν Πέρσῃν ἐν τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ στρατο-
πέδῳ.

- 93 The generals will bring the citizens together in⁵ the soldiers' camp. 2 We shall direct the hoplite to tell them where the army is. 3 We brought many gifts for the young man. 4 The bridge upon the river was small. 5 Do you not hear what the young man is saying ?

- 94 ¹ κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν *down the river*; κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν *along the road*. παρὰ would mean *along by, beside*. ² οἱ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ *those in the plain*. Consult 555 b. ³ ἤκουον *did not listen to, in the sense of obey* 511 a. ⁴ εἴχομεν 565 b end. ⁵ εἰς with accusative.

- 95 The Attributive Position 552 a, b, 555 a, b.

ὁ πιστὸς στρατιώτης *the trusty soldier*
οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ πιστοὶ *the trusty soldiers*
στρατιῶται οἱ πιστοὶ *soldiers that may be trusted*
οἱ Κλεάρχου στρατιῶται *the soldiers of Klearchos*
οἱ ἔξω στρατιῶται *the soldiers outside*
οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ στρατιῶται *the soldiers in the village*
ἵππος ὁ τοῦ Κλεάρχου *a horse that belonged to Klearchos*
οἱ ἔξω *the men outside*
οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ *the men in the camp*

- 96 The Predicate Position 552 c.

οἱ στρατιῶται πιστοὶ *the soldiers are trusty*
πιστοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται *the soldiers are TRUSTY*

X PRONOUNS

Αὐτός AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

- 97 Learn the declension and meanings of αὐτός 198, 199 a, b, c, 558; and of ὅδε, οὗτος, and ἐκεῖνος 205–209.

Notice that οὔτος has the rough breathing and τ in the same cases as the article ; also that with an *o*-sound in the ultima the penult has ου, with an *a*-sound or an *e*-sound in the ultima the penult has αυ. Do not confuse οὔτος with αὐτός, which has a smooth breathing and accented ultima, while οὔτος has neither.

98	<i>This</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>These</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>roads</i>		
	οὗτος	ὁ	αὐτὸς	πολίτης	αὗται	αἱ	αὐταὶ	ὁδοί
	τούτου	τοῦ	αὐτοῦ	πολίτου	τούτων	τῶν	αὐτῶν	ὁδῶν
	τούτῳ	τῷ	αὐτῷ	πολίτῃ	ταύταις	ταῖς	αὐταῖς	ὁδοῖς
	τούτον	τὸν	αὐτὸν	πολίτην	ταύτας	τὰς	αὐτὰς	ὁδοὺς

99 The position of ὅδε, οὔτος, and ἐκεῖνος 553. This statement applies only to demonstratives agreeing with a noun :

οὔτοι οἱ φίλοι *these friends*. οἱ τούτων φίλοι *the friends of these men ; their friends*. ἐκεῖνοι οἱ πολῖται *those citizens*. ὁ ἐκείνων βίος *the life of those men ; their life*.

a The demonstrative use of ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ and ὁ δέ 549 a, b.

100 The demonstratives ὅδε *hic*, οὔτος *is*, ἐκεῖνος, *ille* have two uses.

a As adjectives in the *predicate* position but without the predicate meaning :

ὅδε ὁ νεανίας *this young man* (here before us)

οὗτος ὁ πολίτης *this citizen* (whom we have just mentioned)

ἐκείνη ἡ ὁδός *that road* (over there)

b As demonstrative pronouns and in this use as a substitute for emphatic personal pronouns :

ταῦτα ἔλεξεν *he made these remarks* (as just quoted)

ἔλεξε τάδε οὗτος *this man spoke as follows*

τούτους ἐλάβομεν *these men we captured*

ἐκεῖνοι δ' ἔφυγον *but they fled* (those others)

τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον *their boat*

101 For the three uses of αὐτός compare 199.

a In the attributive position it means *same, idem* :

τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ *on the same day*

b Not in the attributive position and agreeing with some word in the sentence or understood, it means *self* or *very, ipse* :

αὐτὸς ὁ πολίτης *the citizen himself* or *the very citizen*

αὐτοὶ ἄρξομεν *we ourselves will take the lead*

c Used alone in the oblique cases it is an unemphatic personal pronoun and means *him, her, it, them*. In this use the possessive genitive of the pronoun does not take the attributive position :

ἡ σοφία αὐτοῦ *his wisdom*

οἱ φίλοι αὐτῶν *their friends*

εἶδομεν αὐτούς *we saw them*

οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ *the men with him*

ἡ κώμη καὶ αἱ ἐν αὐτῇ οἰκίαι *the village and the houses in it*

102 For * μὲν . . . * δέ see 669 a.

τότε μὲν ἦσαν τύραννοι, νῦν δὲ αὐτοὶ οἱ πολῖται ἄρχουσιν *then there were rulers, but now the citizens themselves govern.*

ὁ μὲν βίος βραχύς, ἡ δὲ τέχνη μακρά *life is short, but art is long.*

While always marking a contrast, μὲν . . . δέ also serve together as a connective and must never be used unless *and* or *but* can be put between the contrasted expressions without changing the meaning. δέ alone means *and*, *yet*, or *but*.

103 REVIEW OF SOME PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

τίς ἐστιν	$\left| \begin{array}{ll} \text{ὁδε} & \text{hīc} \\ \text{οὗτος} & \text{is} \\ \text{ἐκεῖνος} & \text{ille} \end{array} \right $; αὐτὸς ὁ ἄγγελος ὃν ἔπεμψας

Who is this, that man? The very messenger whom you sent.

τί ἤγαγες παρὰ Φοῖβον; ὃ or ὃ τι εἶχομεν *What did you bring to Phoibos? What or whatever we had.*

πόσους ἔλαβες; πάντας ὅσοι παρῆσαν *How many did you take? All who were present.*

ποίους ἔλαβες; Ἕλληνας οἱοὶ ἀγαθοὶ εἰσιν *What kind of men did you take? Greeks, who are brave men.*

ποῦ ἦν ὁ νεανίας; ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ οὗ οἱ φίλοι ἦσαν *Where was the young man? In the house, where his friends were.*

πόθεν ἔλαβες τούτους τοὺς ἵππους; ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς
κώμης ὅθεν τάδε τὰ ὄπλα ἐλάβομεν *Where did
you get these horses? In the same village where
we got these arms here.*

ποῖ ἴασιν οἱ ὀπλίται ἐκεῖνοι; εἰς κώμην οἱ ὁ Κλέαρ-
χος ἔπεμψεν αὐτοὺς *Where are those hoplites go-
ing? To a village where Klearchos sent them.*

πότε εἶπες ταῦτα; ὅτε Κλέαρχος ἔτι παρ-ῆν· ἐπεὶ
δὲ ἀπ-ῆλθεν οὗτος οἱ ἄλλοι τάδε εἶπον *When did
you say that? While Klearchos was still pres-
ent; but after he had gone, the others said this.*

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

104 μάχη -ης ἡ *fight, battle*

ὁ αὐτός *the same*

εἶπον εἰπεῖν,¹ *orist, ὅτι clause, say*

αὐτοῦ *adv. right here, there*

ὑπό *prep. under, hypo-crite, hypo-thesis*

G *from under, at the hands of;*

by, the regular form for agent;

αἰρεθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν *chosen*

by the citizens

D *under, at the foot of; ὑπὸ τῇ*

*ἀκροπόλει at the foot of the
acropolis*

A *to a position under or at the*

foot of, under; ὑπ-ῆλθον ὑπὸ

τὰ δένδρα they came up under

the trees; implying previous

motion, ὑπὸ τὸν λόφον they

halted at the foot of the hill

105 Οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς πολίτης ἦν ἡμέτερος² φίλος. 2 οὗτος
μὲν ὁ ὀπλίτης ἀγαθὸς ἦν, κακὸς δὲ ἐκεῖνος ὁ πελτα-
στής. 3 οὗτοι εἶδον αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ ἐμῷ παραδείσῳ.
4 οἱ ἄλλοι εἶπον τὰ αὐτὰ πρὸς τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους.
5 Ἠγήσανδρος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν· ὁ δὲ³ ἄλλους
ἔπεμψεν. 6 οὗτος ὁ νεανίας αὐτὸς αὐτοῖς ἰκανὸς ἐστίν.
7 τούτους τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὀπλίτᾱς οὐ πέμψω; 8 τοῖσδε
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἔλεξαν τάδε. ταῦτα ἔλεξαν. 9
ποῖος⁴ ἦν ἐκεῖνος ὁ λοχαγός; 10 ὁ στρατηγὸς Ξε-

νῖαν ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθεῖν· ὁ δ' οὐκ ἦλθεν. **11** ἐν μάχῃ μὲν⁵ ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα⁶ κακοί. **12** τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας ἔλιπον αὐτοῦ, πελταστὰς δὲ δισχιλίους ἔλαβον καὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας. **13** εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ αὐτὴ ἀγορὰ ἱκανὴ ἐστὶ καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις. **14** ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτοι οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἦλθον λόχοι, ἔφυγον οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης⁷ πολέμιοι, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οἱ δὲ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου. **15** πολλὰ⁸ κακὰ ἐπάθομεν ὑπὸ⁹ τῶν Περσῶν ὅτε ἤγομεν τὴν στρατιὰν διὰ τῆς τούτων¹⁰ χώρας. **16** οἱ πολλοὶ ἔφασαν δίκαιον εἶναι τοῦτον ἀποπέμψαι.

106 These same men themselves were friends of ours. **2** Those soldiers did not see your general in the camp. **3** Some were in the village, others on the plain. **4** On the next day my friend came and said that he had men enough to take the stronghold. **5** And we went to the bridge, for we heard that the enemy were there.

107 ¹ εἰπεῖν: εἶπον is for ἐ-εἶπον. When the augment ε is dropt, we still have εἶπον; hence the infinitive εἰπεῖν.

² ἡμέτερος of ours 551 c.

³ ὁ δέ or ὁ δὲ but he.

⁴ ποῖος what sort of man?

⁵ ἐν μάχῃ μὲν: notice that μὲν does not come immediately after the preposition here. With the article the order would be ἐν μὲν τῇ μάχῃ.

⁶ τὰ δὲ ἄλλα but in other respects 540.

⁷ οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης: the Greek regards the point of departure as prominent, from. We should say

the enemy in the village. Do not say the enemy fled from the village. That would be ἔφυγον ἐκ τῆς κώμης οἱ πολέμιοι.

⁸ πολλὰ κακὰ ἐπάθομεν we received much bad treatment; many injuries: κακὰ is cognate accusative. The Greek uses the plural. "Suffered many bad things" is not the English idiom. See 536 b.

⁹ ὑπὸ at the hands of, by: the regular expression for the agent. Cp. Latin ablative with ab.

¹⁰ τούτων: the position is not contrary to 553. That applies to a demonstrative agreeing with the noun.

XI Ω - VERBS

THE PRESENT, SIGMATIC AORIST AND THEMATIC AORIST
SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE USES

108 Learn 269, 282 and the present and the aorist subjunctive active in 252, 348.

a The subjunctive mode-suffix ωη unites with the *primary* personal endings giving **combined endings** which are used in all subjunctives that have active endings.

109

COMBINED ENDINGS	PRESENT	σα-AORIST	σα-AORIST	ο:ε-AOR.	ο:ε-AORIST
	ἀγ ο : ε - drive	πεισ α - persuade	ἀρξ α - begin	ἰδ ο : ε - see	εἰπ ο : ε - say
-ω	ἄγ-ω	πείσ-ω	ἄρξ-ω	ἴδ-ω	εἴπ-ω
-ης	ἄγ-ης	πείσ-ης	ἄρξ-ης	ἴδ-ης	εἴπ-ης
-η	ἄγ-η	πείσ-η	ἄρξ-η	ἴδ-η	εἴπ-η
-ωμεν	ἄγ-ωμεν	πείσ-ωμεν	ἄρξ-ωμεν	ἴδ-ωμεν	εἴπ-ωμεν
-ητε	ἄγ-ητε	πείσ-ητε	ἄρξ-ητε	ἴδ-ητε	εἴπ-ητε
-ωσι	ἄγ-ωσι	πείσ-ωσι	ἄρξ-ωσι	ἴδ-ωσι	εἴπ-ωσι

Notice that the combined endings are *substituted* for the final vowel of the *tense-stem*.

110 Remember that the augment is used only in the indicative and that the *tenses* of the subjunctive do not denote *time* 475 and a. Compare 63.

111 Study the following **Uses of the Subjunctive** :

a Subjunctive Sentences 471 a, b, 472, 473 a, b, c. In

these uses the subjunctive is *independent*. Compare West, *Latin Grammar* 491 I., 492, 493.

b Complex Sentences 606 a, b, 607, 608, 609.

1 **Μή** clauses 610, 611 a, b. Compare West, 516, 5.

2 **Ὅς** and **ὅστις** clauses 612, 615, 616 a, 617, 618 a.

3 Other relative clauses 620, 627, 629.

c * **Αν** 666 (2).

//2 In condensed statement we may say that any of the relative words used thus far may take **ἄν** and introduce the subjunctive. The time, whether future or universal, is always clearly defined by the context. In reading the references and studying the examples note carefully the translation. Decide by the general sense whether good English requires *who* and *when* or *whoever* and *whenever*; so also whether to use *shall* or *should* and *is* or *was*:

λέξω ὃ τι ἂν συμ-βουλεύσῃς *I shall tell whatever advice you give.*

ἔφη λέξειν ὃ τι ἂν συμ-βουλεύσω *he said that he should tell whatever advice I gave.*

//3 For the negative **μή** consult 486. Observe that the negative of **μή** clauses is **οὐ**, of relative clauses that take the subjunctive **μή**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

//4 ἐπιστολή -ῆς ἡ *letter*. epistle

σωτηρίᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *safety*

μόνος -η -ον *alone, only*. mon-arch

ἄρχω 66, mono-lith λίθος 173

γράφω *write*. graphic, graphite. mono-gram

δέδοικα. aor. ἔδεισα. *fear, am afraid*

παιδεύω *instruct, train up*; παῖς *boy* 232

συμ-βουλεύω¹ *D advise*

ἐπειδάν conj. adv. with subjv.

<i>whenever, after, as soon as;</i>	πῶς interrog. adv. <i>in what way?</i>
ἐπειδή + ἄν	<i>how?</i>
νῦν adv. <i>now</i>	ἀνά prep. <i>A up, up along, along,</i>
ὅταν conj. adv. with subjv. <i>when-</i>	<i>indefinite; ἀνὰ χρόνον in course</i>
<i>ever, when; ὅτε + ἄν</i>	<i>of time</i>

115 Γράφωμεν ἐπιστολὴν τοῖς φίλοις. 2 τί εἶπωμεν πρὸς ταῦτα; πῶς παιδεύωμεν τὸν νεανίαν: 3 μὴ ἄρξης λέγειν. μὴ ἄρξωμεν λέγειν. 4 ποῖ φύγωμεν καὶ πῶς τοὺς φίλους λίπωμεν; 5 πόθεν τὴν σωτηρίαν² σχῶμεν; 6 μὴ ταῦτα³ εἶπητε πρὸς τοὺς πολίτας. 7 ἄγωμεν τοὺς στρατιωτάς τοὺς μὲν εἰς τὴν κώμην, τοὺς δὲ εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον· νῦν γὰρ οὐ δεδοίκαμεν⁴ μόνοι⁵ ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. 8 δέδοικα μὴ οὐ ρᾶδιον ἦν λαβεῖν τοὺς ἵππους τούτους. 9 ἐδείσαμεν μὴ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ νεανῖαι ἐπι-βουλεύωσι τοῖς πολίταις. 10 δέδοικα μὴ οὐ λάβωσι πλοῖα ἱκανὰ οἱ στρατιῶται. 11 ἀνὰ⁶ τὴν τῶν Περσῶν χώρᾱν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἄξουνσι τοὺς στρατιωτάς οὓς ἂν πέμψωμεν. 12 ὅστις ἂν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἐπι-βουλεύῃ, οὗτος οὐ φίλος⁷ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν.⁸ 13 ἄξομεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν⁹ χώρᾱν ὅσους ἂν πέμψητε ὀπλίτας. 14 οἱ¹⁰ ἂν ἐλθεῖν αὐτοὺς κελεύσωμεν, οὐ λείψουσιν τοὺς φίλους μόνους. 15 πέμπειν δῶρα βουλεύωμεν ὅταν μὴ ἱκανὰ ἔχωσιν. 16 ὃ τι ἔχει ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἄξει τοῖς φίλοις. 17 λέξουσιν τοῖς νεανῖαις ὃ τι ἂν συμβουλεύσης.¹¹

116 Do not send these men into the village. 2 Let us not leave our friends alone⁵ here. 3 Whatever he says,¹¹ I shall not tell them. 4 Let us send all¹² the young men we have. 5 Whenever¹³ you speak to the citizens, they heed what you say.

- //7 ¹ **συν-βουλεύω**: *συν* before π, β, φ becomes *συν* 50 a. For the aorist *συν-εβούλευσα* consult 268.
- ² **τὴν σωτηρίαν** *safety* 551 b.
- ³ **ταῦτα** *this*. Greek uses the plural frequently where we use the singular. Cp. 107, 7.
- ⁴ **δεδοίκα-μεν** *we fear*. The -μεν indicates first plural.
- ⁵ **μόνοι** *alone*: predicate adjective as in English. Read 545, 546, and the *foot-note*.
- ⁶ **ἀνά** *up through*.
- ⁷ **φίλος**: the absence of the article here indicates a predicate.
- ⁸ **ἡμῖν** *to us, nobis*: dative plural.
- ⁹ **πολεμίαν** *the enemy's, hostile*: equivalent to τῶν πολεμίων.
- ¹⁰ **οἱ ἄν** *wherever*. Distinguish οἱ from οἱ, οἷ, ὄ.
- ¹¹ **συν-βουλεύσης**: see //2, examples. What indicates that this refers to the future, while ἐπι-βουλεύη in number 12 refers to any time?
- ¹² **ἔσους ἔχομεν**. The English may omit the relative in "all *that* we have." The Greek must express the relative. Why must we use ἔσους and not οἷς?
- ¹³ **ὅταν** with the subjunctive.

XII Ω-VERBS

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

- //8 Learn the perfect and pluperfect indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle active in 252.
- a** Reduplication 289 a, b, c, 290 and a.
- b** For the **κα**-perfect study 287, 288; 292, 293; 294; 296 and a; 297; γυμνάζω, πείθω 341, 342 a.
- c** For the **α**-perfect study 332 *five lines*, 333, 336; γράφω, πέμπω, ἄρχω 341, 342 b.
- d** The declension of the perfect active participle in -κώς and -ώς, will be given later.
- //9 The perfect stems denote a completed act in any time.
- a** The augment is used only in the indicative, for the pluperfect, and is not a part of the *tense-stem*.

b The reduplication is used in every part of the perfect systems and is a part of the *tense-stem*.

/20 Pronounce aloud again and again, reading down the columns, the forms in 341. So also the following :

VERB-STEM } MEANING	βουλευ- <i>plot against</i>	φευγ-, φυγ- <i>run away</i>	λειπ-, λιπ- <i>abandon</i>
PRESENT	ἐπι-βουλεύ-ω	ἀπο-φεύγ-ω	κατα-λείπ-ω
FUTURE	ἐπι-βουλεύ-σω		κατα-λείψω
AORIST	ἐπ-ε-βούλευ-σα	ἀπ-έ-φυγ-ο-ν	κατ-έ-λιπ-ο-ν
PERFECT	ἐπι-βε-βούλευ-κα	ἀπο-πέ-φευγ-α	κατα-λέ-λοιπ-α

The pluperfect forms of the above verbs are

ἐπ-ε-βε-βουλεύκ-η | ἀπ-ε-πε-φεύγ-η | κατ-ε-λε-λοίπ-η

/21 Write a **partial synopsis** of this *tense-system* as follows :

TENSE-STEM MEANING . .	πέπαυ κα - <i>stop</i>	πτεπει κα - <i>persuade</i>	λελοιπ α - <i>leave</i>
INDICATIVE	πέπαυ κα ἐ-πεπαύ κ η	πέπει κα ἐ-πεπεί κ η	λέλοιπ α ἐ-λελοίπ η
SUBJV.	πέπαύ κ - ω	πεπεί κ - ω	λελοίπ - ω
INFINITIVE	πεπαυ κέ - ν α ι	πεπει κέ - ν α ι	λελοιπ έ - ν α ι
PARTICIPLE	πέπαυ κ ώ ς	πεπει κ ώ ς	λελοιπ ώ ς

/22 **Accent.** The accent in compounds does not go back of the augment or reduplication.

The perfect active infinitive accents the penult ; the perfect active participle accents the ultima with the acute.

/23 **Meaning** of the perfect forms 453, 456 and d, 457, 458.

124 a Ἔως clauses 631, the indicative.

b Ὡστε clauses 566 b, the infinitive. The negative is usually μή.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

125 ἄγω ἄξω ἡγαγον ἦχα *drive*. AXLE
30, 79

ἀπο-λείπω *leave*

κατα-λείπω *desert*

* φᾶσ(ν), inf. clause, *they say*

φεύγω, aor. ἔφυγον, *flee*. Latin
fugiō

ἀπο-φεύγω *run away, escape*

κατα-φεύγω *flee for refuge to, take
refuge in, at εἰς*

ἕως conj. adv. *as long as, while ;
until*

πεζῇ adv. *on foot ;* τρά-πεζα 79

ὥστε conj. adv. *and so, so that ;
with inf. so as to, so that ;* ὥς +
* τε *and*

περί prep. *on all sides, around*

G *about, concerning, for ;* equiv-
alent to Latin *dē ;* περί αὐτοῦ
ask about him

D *round, about, not common*

A *about, all round, attending ;*
equivalent to Latin *circā ;* περί
αὐτόν *stand about him*

πρό prep. G *before, in front of, in
defence of, for ;* πρὸ τῆς οἰκίας *in
front of the house ;* πρὸ ἁρίστου
before breakfast

σύν prep. D *with, in company
with, together with ;* in writing
use instead of σύν with the dative
μετά and the genitive for the
above meanings, but σύν τοῖς θεοῖς
with the aid of the gods

126 Οἱ πολῖται ἔφασαν τοὺς λοχαγούς ἐπι-βεβουλευκέναι
τοῖς στρατηγοῖς. 2 πολλοὶ τῶν περὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἐπε-
φεύγεσαν εἰς τὴν κώμην. 3 γεγράφαμεν ἐπιστολὴν
τῷ στρατηγῷ περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ στρατιωτῶν.
4 οἱ περὶ¹ Κλέαρχον λελοίπασιν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ πεπόμε-
φᾶσιν ἄλλους. 5 οἱ μετὰ¹ Προξένου ἡχᾶσι τοὺς ἵπ-
πους ὅσοι μὴ² ἀπ-επεφεύγεσαν. 6 ἐβεβουλεύκειμεν
λέξαι τοῖς πολίταις πρὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. 7 εἶπεν ὅτι
ὁ στρατηγὸς συν-ῆχε τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς πρὸ Κλεάρχου.
8 ὅστις μὴ ἐν μάχῃ πέφευγε, τοῦτόν φᾶσιν καλὸν καὶ
ἀγαθὸν εἶναι. 9 ἠκούσαμεν τούτους ἀπο-λελοιπέναι

τοὺς φίλους ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ κατα-πεφευγέναι εἰς τὸ χωρίον. 10 ὅσους εἶχον ὀπλίτας ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, τούτους πέπομφα παρὰ τὸν Ξενίαν. 11 κατα-πεφευγὼς ἦν παρὰ τοὺς φίλους.

127 Where have you told³ them to go? 2 The horses were outside, but we had left our arms in the fort. 3 When have you planned to take the village? 4 They said that the peltasts had left the army. 5 They have brought together all⁴ the companies they have.⁴

128 ¹ οἱ περί, οἱ μετά *the attendants of, companions of.* ³ Use the proper form of *κελεύω*.
² μή gives an indefinite meaning that οὐ would not. ⁴ Use the relative, object of *have*. Compare 117, 12.

REVIEW OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

129 We have had **ἀνά** *up*, frequently indefinite, **ἀπό** *away from*, **ἐξ** *out from*, **κατά** *down*. In composition prepositions have their regular meaning but sometimes an added meaning gained by usage. In composition **ἀπό** sometimes means *back, in return*; both **ἐξ** and **κατά** sometimes give the idea of *completion*; **κατά** sometimes a *definite* point or object in view; **σύν** *with* or *together*. Study the following sentences. Do not look up the compounds in the vocabulary. Work out the meaning.

130 Ἀπο-λελοίπασι τὴν στρατιὰν Ξενίᾱς καὶ Ἀγίᾱς, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀπο-πεφεύγασιν. ἵππους γὰρ ἔχω ὥστε κατα-λαβεῖν αὐτούς. 2 τὴν κώμην ἐκ-λελοίπασιν οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ κατα-πεφεύγασιν εἰς τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων στρατιάν. 3 ἕως μὲν ἡ ὁδὸς ῥᾶδίᾱ ἦν ἵππῳ, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγον, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄπορος ἦν κατ-έλιπον τὸν ἵππον καὶ πεζῇ προ-ἦλθον. 4 ἔλαβον κώμην καὶ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ¹ ἔξ-έφυγον,

ὅσους δ' ἐλάβομεν κατ-εἶχομεν ἀπο-φεύγειν.² 5 οἱ ἵπποι ἀπ-έφευγον ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ κατ-ελάβομεν αὐτοὺς ἀπ-επέμψαμεν πάλιν καὶ Κλονίος ἀπ-ήγαγεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 6 ἀπ-ῆλθον, δι-ῆλθον, εἰσ-ῆγον, εἰσ-ῆλθον, ἐξ-ήγαγον, ἐξ-ῆλθον, κατ-έπεμψα, παρ-εἶχον, παρ-ῆλθον, προ-ῆγον, προσ-ῆγον, προσ-ῆλθον, συν-ῆλθον, συν-εισ-ῆλθον, συν-εξ-ῆλθον.

- /31/ ¹ οἱ πολλοί *the many, the greater* ² ἀπο-φεύγειν: *translate as a part 555 b. from genitive.*

XIII Ω - VERBS

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE USES

- /32/ Learn the perfect and pluperfect indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle middle and passive in **253, 254**, and the middle and passive endings in **263**. Observe that the subjunctive of εἶμι has a circumflex accent throughout.

- /33/ Review //8 a. Study **298, 299, 300 a, b, d, 301; 341, 344 a.**

$\left. \begin{array}{c} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\}$	$+ \mu\alpha\iota = -\mu\mu\alpha\iota,$	$\left. \begin{array}{c} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\}$
---	--	---

$+ \mu\alpha\iota = -\gamma\mu\alpha\iota,$	$\left. \begin{array}{c} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\}$	$+ \mu\alpha\iota = -\sigma\mu\alpha\iota.$
---	---	---

Consult **44 a, b, c.**

b The participle ending in -μένος shows the same consonant changes.

c Do not investigate the inflection of the indicative of these mute perfects nor of liquid perfects. The declension of the participle is regular, **-μένος -η -ον**. Review //9.

/34 Pronounce aloud, again and again, reading down the columns, the forms in 341. So also the following :

VERB- STEM } MEANING	βουλευ- <i>advise</i>	στρατευ- <i>march with</i>	ἀγ- <i>lead away</i>
PRESENT	συμ-βουλεύ-ω	συ-στρατεύ-ω ¹	ἀπ-άγω
FUTURE	συμ-βουλεύ-σω	συ-στρατεύ-σω	ἀπ-άξω
AORIST	συν-ε-βούλευ-σα	συν-ε-στράτευ-σα	ἀπ-ήγ-αγον
PF. ACT.	συμ-βε-βούλευ-κα	συν-ε-στράτευ-κα ²	ἀπ-ήχα
PF. MID.	συμ-βε-βούλευ-μαι	συν-ε-στράτευ-μαι	ἀπ-ήγμαι

The pluperfect forms of the above verbs are

συν-ε-βε-βουλεύ-μην | συν-ε-³-στρατεύ-μην | ἀπ-ήγ-μην

/35 Write a partial synopsis of the perfect *tense-systems* as follows :

TENSE- STEM } MEANING	πεπαυ- <i>stop, cease</i>	ἐστρατευ- <i>campaign</i>	ἤχα- <i>drive</i>
IND.	πέπαυ-μαι ἐ-πεπαύ-μην	ἐ-στράτευ-μαι ἐ-στρατεύ-μην	ἀπ-ήχα ἀπ-ήχη
SUBJV.	πεπαυ-μένος ὦ	ἐστρατευ-μένος ὦ	ἀπ-ήχ-ω
INF.	πεπαυ-σθαι	ἐστρατεῦ-σθαι	ἀπ-ηχέ-ναι
PTC.	πεπαυ-μένος	ἐστρατευ-μένος	ἀπ-ηχώς

/36 Accent. Review /22. The perfect middle infinitive and participle accent the penult.

¹ For συ from συν see 52 b. ² For ε as reduplication see 289 c.

³ For ε as reduplication and augment see 293.

137 **Meaning** of the middle and passive 499; 500 a παύω, πείθω, φαίνω; 500 b ἄρχω, βουλεύω, συμ-βουλεύω. Deponent verbs 501 are middle or passive in form but active in meaning.

138 a "Εως clauses 631, the indicative and subjunctive.

In εως clauses that take the subjunctive the context must determine the force of the εως clause, whether it refers to future time or is universal in time, and whether εως means *while* or *until*. In εως ἄν πιστοὶ ὦσι δούλοι πιστεύομεν αὐτοῖς *as long as slaves are faithful, we trust them*, both the leading clause and the εως clause are universal; but the subjunctive in the εως clause may imply a thought like *up to a time when they may cease to be faithful*; this is not felt in εως μένομεν αὐτοῦ χρὴ ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι *while we are waiting here, we must be brave men* and ἴωμεν εως ἔτι οἰόμεθα ἄν αὐτῶν κρατῆσαι *let us go while we still feel that we may overcome them*, where the indicatives, μένομεν and οἰόμεθα, state a present fact. In πιστεύομεν τοῖς δούλοις εως ἄν ἄπιστοι φανῶσιν *we trust our slaves until they show themselves untrustworthy*, while the time of the leading clause is universal, and both clauses are general, the time of the εως clause is future to πιστεύομεν.

In εως ἄν πιστοὶ ὦσιν οἱ δούλοι πιστεύσομεν αὐτοῖς *as long as our slaves are faithful, we shall trust them* and πιστεύσομεν τοῖς δούλοις εως ἄν ἄπιστοι φανῶσιν *we shall trust our slaves until they show themselves untrustworthy*, both leading clauses and εως clauses are future, and the εως clause in each case is indefinite; but in εως ἄν ὦσιν the time is coincident with πιστεύσομεν in the same way as with πιστεύομεν above.

We may then say: In εως clauses the subjunctive marks the action as belonging to, or as likely to continue to, some indefinite time, future to that of the leading verb—that is, as a supposed occurrence more or less uncertain in regard to realization.

b "Ινα clauses 640 (2), 642 a, the subjunctive. Negative μή.

c "Ωστε clauses 639 a, the indicative. Compare the infinitive 566 b.

d Εἰ clauses 645, 646, 647, the indicative. Negative μή.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 139 ἀρχή -ης ἡ *beginning; command; government, province; ἄρχω* 66. *eu-phemism, eu-phony*
 mon-archy *μόνος* 114 *ἵνα* conj. adv. *where; that, in order that*
 σατράπης -ου ὁ *satrap, a Persian governor of a province* *καλῶς* adv. *beautifully, well, nobly;*
μένω wait, stay; await. Lat. *ma-* *καλῶς ἔχειν* be well, be all right;
neō *καλός* 86
 στρατεύω *make an expedition; mid.* *οὕτως* adv., before a consonant
dep. take the field, serve, march; *οὕτω, so, thus, in that case; οὕτως*
στρατός army *ἔχειν* be so; *οὗτος* 100
 συμ-βουλεύω D *advise; mid. con-* *εἰ* conj. *if*
sult, ask advice of

- 140 Ἐφη τὸν τῆς χώρᾱς σατράπην πεπαῦσθαι¹ τῆς ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τῶν Περσῶν. 2 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πεπαύκασιν τοῦτον τὸν κακὸν πόλεμον. 3 πέπauνται² τούτου τοῦ κακοῦ πολέμου. 4 συμ-βεβούλευκα αὐτῷ μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 5 τί οὐ συμ-βεβούλευται³ τοῖς φίλοις; ⁴ 6 τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἵππους τούτους ἐπεπόμφεσαν τῷ σατράπῃ εἰς τὴν κώμην. 7 δεδοίκαμεν μὴ οὗτοι οἱ νεᾶνιαι οὐ καλῶς πεπαιδεύονται. 8 ἐδείσαμεν μὴ ὁ σατράπης ἢ πεπαυμένος τῆς ἀρχῆς¹ ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν. 9 ἕως μὲν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμενον πιστοὶ ἡμῖν ἦσαν, ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ἦλθον οὐ ῥᾶδιον ἦν συν-αγαγεῖν αὐτοὺς πάλιν. 10 μένωμεν, ὃ στρατιῶται, ἕως ἂν⁵ ἀκούσωμεν ὃ τι ἂν ὁ στρατηγὸς εἴπῃ. 11 ἦχα πολλοὺς πολίτας ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, ἵνα⁶ τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἴδωσιν. 12 πεπαιδεύ-

μεθα ἵνα τοῖς πολίταις συμ-βουλεύωμεν.⁷ **13** γράψω ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ Κλέαρχον⁸ ἵνα πείσω⁹ αὐτὸν μὴ στρατεύειν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. **14** γεγράφαμεν πολλὰς ἐπιστολὰς μακρὰς ἵνα πείσωμεν τοὺς νεανίας ἐλθεῖν μεθ' ὑμῶν.¹⁰ **15** οὕτω πεπαιδευταὶ οὗτος ὥστε εἶ συμ-βουλεύει τοῖς φίλοις. **16** εἰ οἱ ἡμέτεροι νεανίαὶ εἶ πεπαιδευταὶ, τὴν σωτηρίαν ἔξομεν.¹¹

141 Where¹² have you sent the hoplites? **2** The soldiers have been trained by good captains. **3** They had fled along this river to¹³ a village. **4** I have advised them⁴ not to send gifts. **5** Let us go now that⁶ we may see¹⁴ the satrap.

142 ¹ πεπαῦσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς *had been deposed from the government.* ἀρχῆς: a from genitive **509 a.**

² πέπαιονται *have ceased from:* middle.

³ συμ-βεβούλευται *has asked advice of:* middle.

⁴ φίλοις: the dative is used with σύν in the verb **598 a.**

⁵ ἕως ἄν *until* **631, 138 a.**

⁶ ἵνα *in order that* **640 (2), 642 a.**

⁷ συμ-βουλεύωμεν *advise.* Cp. numbers 4 and 5.

⁸ παρὰ Κλέαρχον: compare the dative in **126, 3.** The uses are equivalent. πρὸς could be used in place of παρὰ.

⁹ πείσω: aor. subjv. act. of πείθω *persuade.* It takes the accusative, not the dative.

¹⁰ μεθ' ὑμῶν *with you:* by elision for μετὰ ὑμῶν **32, 42.**

¹¹ ἔξομεν *we shall have:* ἔχω.

¹² Use ποῖ. See **103.**

¹³ εἰς with the accusative.

¹⁴ ἴδωμεν: aor. subjv. of εἶδον **91, 109.** Cp. number 11.

XIV Ω - VERBS

THE Θη-, THE Η-, AND THE FUTURE PASSIVE.
PRINCIPAL PARTS

143 Learn the aorist and the future passive, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive in **254, 336** and **a.**

a For the θη:ε- passive study **302-305, 308 ; 310.**

b For the η:ε- passive study **334-337.**

144 Observe that the subjunctive is like the subjunctive of εἶμι 384 a. The combined endings, 108, 109, are added to and contracted with the final vowel of the *tense-stem*, thus giving a circumflex on ωη.

a In the future indicative second singular notice the dropping of σ in σαι 263 b.

145 PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

Learn 311. Review 268 and a, 290 and a; 118 a, 133 a. Complete 341 by adding the passive aorists.

$$\left. \begin{array}{c} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} \text{ a } \Lambda \text{ } \pi\text{-mute} \quad + \theta = \phi\theta, \quad \left. \begin{array}{c} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \text{ a } \kappa\text{-mute} \\ + \theta = \chi\theta, \quad \left. \begin{array}{c} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} \text{ a } \tau\text{-mute} \quad + \theta = \sigma\theta. \quad \text{See 43 a, b.}$$

b Write the principal parts of παύω, βουλεύω, ἐπι-βουλεύω, συμ-βουλεύω, παιδεύω, στρατεύω, συ-στρατεύω, πιστεύω, κωλύω, λείπω, ἄγω. Use the form in 134 and 341 instead of that in 311, keeping the letters of the *verb-stem* in column.

146 The Passive Systems, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive:

AORIST	FUTURE	AORIST	FUTURE
φανθη:ε- <i>show</i>	φανθησο:ε- <i>show</i>	φανη:ε- <i>appear</i>	φανησο:ε- <i>appear</i>
ἐ-φάνθη-ν φανθῶ φανθη-ναι	φανθήσο-μαι φανθήσε-σθαι	ἐ-φάνη-ν φανῶ φανῇ-ναι	φανήσο-μαι φανήσε-σθαι

147 Ei clauses, εἰ + ἄν = ἐάν, and the subjunctive 650.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 148 δούλος -ου ὁ *slave*; compare ἀνδρά-
ποδον 66
ῥῶ *fixed time, season.*
Latin *hōra*; *horo-scope*
ἐλεύθερος -ᾱ -ον *free, independent.*
Latin *liber*
δώσω *shall give*
ἐστάλην, aor. ἡ- passive of στέλλω,
was sent
ἦκω *have come, come; return*
ἐφάνην, aor. ἡ- passive of φαίνω, *ap-
peared, was seen.* phantasm
ἐφάνθη, aor. θη- passive of φαίνω,
was shown
κωλύω, A and inf. clause, *hinder,*
oppose, prevent
αὐτίκα *adv. immediately*
*δή *adv. 671 c, indeed, now, of*
course
εἰάν conj. with subjv. *if; εἰ + ἄν*
- 149 Οὗτος ὁ πόλεμος ἐπαύθη, παυθήσεται, πέπνυται. ἔφη
τοῦτον τὸν πόλεμον παυθῆναι, παυθήσεσθαι, πεπνυ-
σθαι. 2 ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος ἐπιστεύθη ὑπὸ πολλῶν· πιστὸς
γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῖς. 3 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐφάνησαν κῶμαι πολ-
λαί. 4 καλῶς ἐπαιδεύθησαν οὗτοι οἱ νεᾶνιαι, οὐχ ὥς
δούλοι ἀλλ' ὥς ἐλεύθεροι καὶ πολῖται. 5 τί ἐκωλύθη-
μεν κελεύειν¹ αὐτὸν μὴ ἐλθεῖν; 6 ἡμῖν² μὲν ἐφάνησαν
πιστοὶ εἶναι οἱ δούλοι ἀλλὰ οὐκ ἐπιστεύθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν
ἄλλων. 7 πιστοὶ ὦμεν στρατιῶται ἵνα πιστευθῶμεν
ὑπὸ τῶν λοχαγῶν. 8 οὐχ ῥῶ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀπ-ελθεῖν,
ἕως ἄν οἱ στρατηγοὶ κελεύσωσιν. 9 ὑπὸ τῶν³ φίλων
τοῦτο ἡμῖν ἐφάνθη δίκαιον εἶναι. 10 Χειρίσοφος μὲν
δὲ ἐπὶ⁴ πλοῖα ἐστάλη οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔμενον
ἡμέρᾱς⁵ πολλὰς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, ἕως ἄν ἦκη.⁶ 11
Περσικοὶ στρατιῶται ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀλλ' οὐκ
ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἕως οἱ οπλῖται ἀπ-ἦλθον.
12 αὐτίκα ἔλθωμεν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἵνα ἐλεύθεροι
ᾶμεν. 13 εἰ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν, οὕτως
ἔχει. 14 εἰάν δούλοι εὖ παιδευθῶσι, τούτοις πιστεύομεν.

15 εἰς ἀγαθοὶ ὦμεν, οἱ πολῖται πολλὰ δῶρα δώσουσιν ἡμῖν. **16** εἰς μὴ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὦσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, εἰς τὴν κώμην ἔλθωμεν, ἵνα καταλάβωμεν αὐτούς. **17** εἰς κελεύσῃς τούτους τοὺς δούλους μὴ λέγειν, οὐ λέγουσιν. οὐ λέξουσιν.

150 Let us not remain here, but let us go immediately. **2** Whom of our soldiers shall ⁷ we now trust? **3** He was so noble that he-had ⁸ many friends. **4** He appeared to be faithful, but was not. **5** This wicked satrap will be deposed from the government. **6** If he has asked-advice-of his friends,⁹ it will be well.

151 ¹ κελεύειν from telling: like a from genitive. We could also write τοῦ κελεύειν **572 c.**

² ἡμῖν μέν to us indeed **117, 8.** Here the second contrasted member is marked by ἀλλά **669 a.**

³ τῶν our.

⁴ ἐπὶ for, after.

⁵ ἡμέρας: accusative time how long.

⁶ ἕως ἃν ἦκη until he should return, for him to return. **138 a.**

⁷ Implying that none can be trusted; express by the subjunctive **471 a.**

⁸ Use the dative of possessor **524 a.**

⁹ What case is required? See **142, 4.**

XV Ω - VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF -άω -έω, AND -όω VERBS AND
MUTE VERBS

152 Review **311.** Learn all the verbs in **341** and all the cross references. Read aloud many times. Write a partial synopsis of each tense-system except the perfect middle, taking one from each verb.

153 Learn **317.** The verb-stems thus end in α:ᾱ, α:η, ε:η, or ο:ω.

νῖκα:η- <i>conquer</i>	αἰτε:η- <i>ask for</i>	ἄξιο:ω- <i>deem worthy</i>	αἶρε:η-, ἔλ- <i>take</i>	δοκ-, δοκε- <i>seem</i>
νικά-ω	αἰτέ-ω	ἄξιό-ω	αἶρέ-ω	δοκέ-ω
νική-σω	αἰτή-σω	ἄξιό-σω	αἶρή-σω	δόξω
ἐνίκη-σα	ἦτη-σα	ἦξιό-σα	εἶλ-ο-ν	ἔ-δοξα
νε-νίκη-κα	ἦτη-κα	ἦξιό-κα	ἦρη-κα	
νε-νίκη-μαι	ἦτη-μαι	ἦξιό-μαι	ἦρη-μαι	δέ-δογ-μαι
ἐνίκη-θη-ν	ἦτή-θη-ν	ἦξιό-θη-ν	ἦρέ-θη-ν	ἐ-δόχ-θη-ν

154 Hereafter the principal parts of all verbs as they occur in the vocabularies will be required. They are to be found in the VERB-LIST on page 299 of the *Grammar*. All irregular in any particular are given. Each pupil should check each verb in the list as it is studied. This will be necessary to enable him to find what he must have for reviews.

Check and learn for this lesson: ἄγω¹, αἶρέω², ἀκούω³, ἄρχω, γράφω, δοκέω⁴, ἔχω⁵, κελεύω⁶, λέγω⁷ *speak*, λείπω⁸, πᾶσχω⁹, πείθω, πέμπω⁸, πράττω¹⁰, τάττω, φεύγω¹¹, φυλάττω.

¹ ἄγω 350, 10; the aorist stem has reduplication, ἀγ-αγο:ε-, which with augment and personal ending makes ἤγ-αγο-ν.

² αἶρέω 350, 9; the aorist takes syllabic augment ἔ-ελο-ν contracting to εἶλο-ν. Compare 267.

³ ἀκούω: for future ἀκούσο-μαι see 392. The aorist passive assumes σ.

⁴ δοκέω: for the two stems δοκ- and δοκε- see 262.

⁵ ἔχω: a form of the stem ἔχ- was σεχ- which in the future was weakened to ἐχ- giving ἔξω. See 54. In the imperfect ἔ-σεχο-ν became ἔ-εχον, εἶχον 267. In the aorist ἔ-σεχο-ν became ἔ-σχο-ν 350, 6.

⁶ κελεύω: some verbs assume σ in the perfect middle or aorist passive, or in both. Compare ἀκούω.

⁷ λέγω: the perfect εἴρηκα is from another verb. Read 391.

⁸ λείπω: the perfect λέ-λοιπ-α shows a vowel change, ε to ο indicated by ε:ο, that is common. Compare πέ-πομφ-α from πέμπω. So we have λόγος *speech* from λέγω *speak*, τρόπος *turning* from τρέπω *turn*. Read 25.

⁹ πᾶσχω 392; 350, 3.

¹⁰ πράττω: look for πράσσω. So with other verbs in -ττω look for -σσω. The principal parts are regular.

¹¹ φεύγω 392, 350, 2.

a Regular forms are used in ἐρωτάω, but there are some more common irregular forms to be given later. A few other verbs that have already been used will also be reserved.

b Ἀθροίζω *collect* is regular, verb-stem ἀθροιδ-, like γυμνάζω **341**.

c Ἦκω *have come* has only ἤξω.

d For the perfect ἀκ-ήκο-α *have heard* see **291 c**.

e The futures in -σομαι are regular in inflection, -σομαι, -σει, -σεται **144 a**.

f The perfect passive of κελεύω assumes σ, κε-κέλευ-σ-μαι, and is inflected according to **322 b**.

155 Remember that the **inflections** of all these verbs, and of others to come, are like the tense-systems already given, perfectly regular. Remember also that, no matter how simple or how complicated the present, the other tenses are not made from the present but from the *verb-stem*, and some verbs have more than one stem.

The **classes** to which the present stems belong will be taken up gradually. Always notice the *verb-stem* and use it in making the principal parts.

Review **256, 257 (1)**. Learn **259 (3) c**. σσ is an older form for ττ, τάσσω = τάττω.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 156** ἄγγελος -ου ὁ messenger. ange- οὐκ ἔφη. inf. clause, *said that not*,
lus, angel *denied, refused*; equivalent to
νίκη -ης ἡ victory; νικάω **153** Latin *negāvit*
σκοπός -οῦ ὁ watcher, scout ἐνθά-δε adv. *hither, here*; -δε =
σπονδή -ης ἡ libation; plural *-ward, here-ward*
σπονδαί -ῶν truce, treaty. spondee ἐπι-μελῶς adv. *carefully*
ισχυρός -ᾶ -όν strong, mighty, οἶκα-δε adv. *homeward, home*; οἶκος
stubborn **30**

πλησίον adv. 599, G near

τότε adv. then

χθές adv. yesterday

VERBS

αἰρέω take, capture; mid. choose.
heresy, di-aeresis

αἰτέω, A of person and A of thing,
ask for, demand; inf. clause,
ask one to, ask that

ἀξιόω, A of person and G of thing,
deem worthy; inf. clause, claim
as a right, ask, demand

δηλώω make clear, show; δηλος
30

δοκέω think; seem, seem best. dog-
ma, para-dox

ἐρωτάω, A of person and A of
thing or interrog. clause, ask a
question, inquire of

νικάω conquer, have conquered, am
victorious; νίκη

ποιέω make; do. poem ποίημα; poet
ποιητής

πράττω accomplish, do. practical
πράκτικός; practice

τάττω arrange, assign. tactics
τάξις; syn-tax σύν 125

φυλάττω guard, watch; mid. A
guard against; φυλακή 79

157 Οἱ πολῖται ἠρώτησαν¹ τὸν σατράπην τί ἐπαύθη τῆς ἀρχῆς. 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἠρωτᾶτο¹ πόσους στρατιωτᾶς τότε ἦθροισεν. 3 ἠτήσαμεν² αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀπλίτας ὅσους εἶχεν ἵνα λάβωμεν τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον· ὁ δὲ δισχιλίους ἔπεμψεν. 4 ἐπιμελῶς τάξουσιν τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ἵνα φυλάξωσι τὴν κώμην ἡμῶν.³ 5 ὦ στρατιῶται, νενικήκατε πολλὰς νικᾶς⁴ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 6 ὑπὸ τῶν πολῖτῶν οὗτος ὁ νεανίας ἠξιώθη δώρων⁵ πολλῶν. 7 σκοποὶ πάλιν ἐπέμφθησαν ἵνα ἴδωσιν ὅτι οἱ Πέρσαι ἐποίησαν.⁶ 8 ἤκομεν ἐνθάδε κελεῦσαι τοὺς ἀγγέλους μὴ λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν. 9 ἔπεισαν αὐτὸν γράψαι ἐπιστολὴν ὅτι ἤξει⁷ οἴκαδε καὶ ἄξει ὅσους ἂν ἔχη⁸ πελταστᾶς. 10 ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς μακρὸς ἐστὶ καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῷ εἶδομεν πολλὰς κώμας μικράς. 11 ἐφάνησαν χθὲς οἱ πολέμοι βουλευεῖν ἄγειν στρατιωτᾶς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους, ἀλλ' ἔδοξεν⁹ αὐτοῖς μὴ ἐλθεῖν. 12 ἄλλοι δὲ βάρβαροι ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πλησίον¹⁰

παραδείσω πολλοὶ καὶ πολέμιοι. 13 τότε ἐπέισαμεν αὐτοὺς μὴ πάλιν ἀθροῖσαι τοὺς δισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. 14 ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν μὴ ἐλεῖν τὰ πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ· ὥστε¹¹ τοὺς μὲν ἵππους αἰρήσομεν, λείψομεν δὲ τὰ πλοῖα. 15 οὗτοι οἱ ἄγγελοι ἤκον καὶ εἶπον ὅτι Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἔφη ἄρξαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. 16 ὁ Πέρσης ἔδεισεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς¹² τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραπτεν.

158 If we take the village, we shall guard it well. 2 They asked the messenger how many men were in the fort. 3 We shall send to Klearchos the soldiers that we have. 4 As long as we remained in camp, the satrap was friendly to us. 5 The scouts asked the captain for¹³ a thousand hoplites.

159 ¹ ἠρώτησαν 535. In 2 ἠρωτᾶτο he was asked (*impf. pass.* to be given later) retains the second object.

² ἠτήσαμεν: these three sentences show the difference in meaning between ἐρωτάω and αἰτέω.

³ ἡμῖν for us 523.

⁴ νίκας 536 a. We say win victories.

⁵ δῶρων 516 a end.

⁶ ἐποίησαν had done. The aorist may be translated by the perfect or pluperfect 463.

⁷ ὅτι ἔξει that he would return.

⁸ ὅσους ἂν ἔχη as many as he had.

⁹ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς it seemed best to them; they decided is a very common translation.

¹⁰ πλησίον in the park near by 555 a.

¹¹ ὥστε and so 639 a.

¹² οἷς by what: a by dative 526. Consult 613 b, 614. οἷς is equivalent to τούτοις & by that which. The English construction is the same.

¹³ αἰτέω ask for.



Greek sword.

XVI Ω - VERBS

THE MIDDLE FORMS OF THE PRESENT, FUTURE, AND SIGMATIC AND THEMATIC AORIST SYSTEMS, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE

/60 Learn the inflections in **253, 254, 348**. Review **263** and **b** and **44**.

a Present and future systems **264, 265, 268, 269, 273-278**.

b Aorist systems **279-282, 286, 349**.

/61 In the **subjunctive** the mode-suffix ω:η unites with the *primary* personal endings giving **combined endings**, which are used in all subjunctives that have the middle endings. Observe that in all the above tenses the combined endings are *substituted* for the final vowel of the *tense-stem*. See **108, 109** and compare the forms.

-ωμαι
-η
-ηται
-ωμεθα
-ησθε
-ωνται

/62 In **499, 500 a, b** carefully examine the verbs already used. See **/37** and read **394, 395** for **deponents**.

/63 Principal parts of some **Passive Deponents** :

βουλ-, βουλη- <i>wish</i>	δυνα:η- <i>can</i>	οι-, οιη- <i>think</i>	πορευ- <i>advance</i>
βούλ-ομαι	δύνα-μαι	οῖ-ομαι	πορεύ-ομαι
βουλή-σομαι	δυνή-σομαι	οιή-σομαι	πορεύ-σομαι
βε-βούλη-μαι	δε-δύνη-μαι		πε-πόρευ-μαι
ἐ-βουλή-θην	ἐ-δυνή-θην	ᾤ-ή-θην	ἐ-πορεύ-θην

A list of the verbs that are used as passive deponents in this book is given in **/85**.

/64 Inflections of some **Middle Forms** :

	PRESENT	PRESENT	σα-AORIST
TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	δυνα- <i>can</i>	οιο:ε- <i>think</i>	πεισα- <i>persuade</i>
INDICATIVE	δύνα-μαι δύνα-σαι δύνα-ται δυνά-μεθα δύνα-σθε δύνα-νται	οἶο-μαι οἶε ι οἶε-ται οἰό-μεθα οἶε-σθε οἶο-νται	ἐ-πεισά-μην ἐ-πίεσ ω ἐ-πίεσα-το ἐ-πεισά-μεθα ἐ-πίεσα-σθε ἐ-πίεσα-ντο
INFINITIVE	δύνα-σθαι	οἶε-σθαι	πείσα-σθαι
PARTICIPLE	δυνά-μενος	οἰό-μενος	πεισά-μενος

IMPERFECT	σα-AORIST	IMPERFECT	ο:ε-AORIST
δυνα- <i>can</i>	ἀρξα- <i>begin</i>	οιο:ε- <i>think</i>	ἐλο:ε- <i>choose</i>
ἐ-δυνά-μην ἐ-δύν ω ἐ-δύνα-το ἐ-δυνά-μεθα ἐ-δύνα-σθε ἐ-δύνα-ντο	ἤρξά-μην ἤρξ ω ἤρξα-το ἤρξά-μεθα ἤρξα-σθε ἤρξα-ντο	ᾠό-μην, ᾠμην ᾠο υ ᾠε-το ᾠό-μεθα ᾠε-σθε ᾠο-ντο	εἰλό-μην εἴλο υ εἴλε-το εἰλό-μεθα εἴλε-σθε εἴλο-ντο

a The only forms that will give trouble are the second singular indicatives and the thematic aorist infinitive. Observe them carefully : παύει, παύσει, ἐπαύου, ἐλίπου, ἐδύνω, ἐπαύσω, λιπέσθαι, ἐλέσθαι.

/65 Partial **synopses** by tense-systems :

PRESENT DEPONENT	PRESENT MIDDLE	σα-AORIST MIDDLE	ο:ε-AORIST MIDDLE
δυνα- <i>can</i>	ἄγο:ε- <i>drive</i>	πείσα- <i>believe</i>	ἐλο:ε- <i>choose</i>
δύνα-μαι ἐ-δυνά-μην δύν-ωμαι δύνα-σθαι δυνά-μενος	ἄγο-μαι ἡγό-μην ἄγ-ωμαι ἄγε-σθαι ἀγό-μενος	ἐ-πείσα-μην πείσ-ωμαι πείσα-σθαι πείσα-μενος	εἰλό-μην ἐλ-ωμαι ἐλέ-σθαι ἐλό-μενος

Some synopses should be written each day. Always write the *tense-stem*.

/66 Observe that δύναμαι, though without tense-suffix, makes the imperfect second singular like forms with a tense suffix and not as in the present ; also that the subjunctive is made like the forms with a tense-suffix /6/.
a Check in the Verb-list and learn βούλομαι, δύναμαι, οἶομαι.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- /67 βούλομαι pass. dep. /85, *will, wish, desire*. Latin *volō*
 δύναμαι pass. dep. /85, *can, am able*; equivalent to Latin *possum*. dynamite, dynasty *δυναστής* ruler, nobleman
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger, run a risk; *κίνδυνος* danger
 μετα-πέμπομαι dep. *send after, summon*
 οἶομαι, οἶμαι pass. dep. /85, inf. clause, *think, believe, suppose*
 πείθω A *persuade* 39; *πείθομαι* mid. and pass., pass. dep. /85, D *believe, obey*
 πορεύομαι pass. dep. /85, *go, proceed, march, advance*; πόρος, ἄ-πορος 72
 συμ-πορεύομαι D *travel with, accompany*
 συ-στρατεύομαι dep. D *take the field with, join in an expedition*
 ἄνευ adv. 599, G *without*

ἔτι adv. *yet, still, longer*; ἔτι δέ,
πρὸς δ' ἔτι *besides* —

καί adv. 670 a, *also, even, emphasis*
on what follows

ἀντί prep. G *over against; instead*

of: πόλεμος ἀντὶ εἰρήνης *war in-*
stead of peace; ἀνθ' ὧν ἔλαβον *in*
return for what I received

*οὖν conj. 673 a, *therefore, then,*
accordingly, at any rate

168 Χθὲς οἱ ἡμέτεροι στρατιῶται σύν-εστρατεύσαντο αὐτῷ¹
ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας, οὓς ἐφυλάττετο² πολλὰς ἡμέρας.
2 πορευθῶμεν οὖν οἴκαδε μετὰ τῶνδε τῶν φίλων· οὐ
γὰρ δυνάμεθα αὐτοῦ μένειν ἄνευ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τούτων.
3 ἔτι δὲ καὶ λέγονται πολέμιοι βάρβαροι ἀθροίζεσθαι
πολλοὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ πλησίον ποταμοῦ. 4 ὥστε οὐ βούλο-
μαι κινδυνεύσαι καὶ τῷ ἐνθάδε μένειν.³ 5 καὶ τότε
δὲ ἐπαύσαντο τοῦ πολέμου. 6 οἱ τότε πολῖται συν-
εβουλεύοντο τοῖς στρατηγοῖς¹ καὶ ἐπείθοντο τούτοις.⁴
7 καὶ⁵ πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ βουλευσόμεθα. πρὸς ταῦτα
βουλευσώμεθα. 8 μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ στρατηγὸς μετ-
επέμψατο τοὺς δύο λοχαγούς εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. τοῦτόν
φᾶσιν ἄρξασθαι⁶ λέγειν τάδε. 9 συμ-πορεύονται
οὖν παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ οἶομαι αὐτοὺς συμ-βουλεύ-
σεσθαι τῷ τῆς χώρας σατράπῃ. 10 οὐκ οἰόμεθα τοὺς
πολεμίους δύνασθαι ἐλεῖν καὶ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον τοῦτο.
11 ποῖ ᾤοντο τοὺς δούλους ἐλθεῖν; εἴπομεν αὐτοῖς,
ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐπείθοντο.⁷ 12 αἵρησόμεθα Δημοκράτην
ἄρχειν⁸ τῶν ἡμετέρων κωμῶν. 13 οἱ στρατιῶται
πάλιν εἶλοντο Δεξιππον ἄρχειν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀντὶ τοῦ
Ξενίου· ὁ δὲ ἤρξατο⁹ ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν. 14 εἰὰν δυνώ-
μεθα ἐλεῖν τοὺς δούλους πείσονται¹⁰ ἔτι ἡμῖν. 15 εἰὰν
οἱ σκοποὶ ἐπιμελῶς πορεύονται οὐκ οἶομαι κινδυνεύσειν
αὐτούς. 16 οὐκ ἐδύναντο οἱ ἄγγελοι μένειν· ὁ γὰρ
σατράπῃς μετ-επέμψατο αὐτοὺς ἵνα συμ-βουλεύσῃται.

169 They did not desire to go. 2 They thought that the Persians were at the river. 3 We were not able to see the soldiers. 4 Do not send-after your friends. 5 They chose to remain and obey us.

170 ¹ αὐτῷ 525: a *with* dative. See 598 a.

² οὓς ἐφυλάττετο *against whom he had been guarding*. Notice the middle 500 b and the translation of the imperfect.

³ τῷ ἐνθάδε μένειν *by remaining here* 526 b. Consult 575.

⁴ τοῦτοις 520 a: a *to* dative.

⁵ καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα δέ *and in reference to this also*.

⁶ ἄρξασθαι 500 b. Notice the

middle *began to speak*, nearly like ἄρξασθαι τοῦ λόγου *began his speech*; not *was the first to speak*.

⁷ οὐκ ἐπείθοντο *they did not believe*.

⁸ ἄρχειν 565 and a, 510 c.

⁹ ἤρξατο *consulted the gods first*. Notice the middle *made his beginning*.

¹⁰ πείσονται: the context will tell whether πείσομαι is from πείθομαι *obey* or πάσχω *experience*.

XVII Ω - VERBS

THE LIQUID FUTURE AND AORIST, AND THE ROOT-AORIST, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND INFINITIVE

171 Learn the liquid future and aorist, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and middle 331.

a Study 323, 324, 327-329. In the future ε contracts with ο:ε giving the circumflex wherever possible. Examine with cross references φαίνω, κρίνω, κτείνω, μένω in 330. Write the *tense-stems* στελεο:ε-, στείλα-; φανεο:ε-, φηνα-; μενεο:ε-, μείνα-; κρινεο:ε-, κρίνα-; κτενεο:ε-, κτείνα-.

172 Learn the root-aorists ἔστην, ἔγνων 366-368 a; ἔβην, ἐπριάμην 369 (a). Write the *tense-stems* στα:η-, βα:η-, γνο:ω-, πρια-.

a In the subjunctive the combined endings are *added* to the *tense-stem*. In the resulting contraction

α and ε of the stem are absorbed¹ and ο makes ω throughout. The accent is always circumflex. But ἐπριάμην is inflected according to 166.

β Check in the Verb-list and learn for this lesson ἀγγέλλω,² βάλλω,³ κρίνω, μένω, στέλλω,⁴ φαίνω. For ἀπο-κρίνομαι *reply*, a middle deponent, see κρίνω. Reserve the others.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

173 δειλη -ης ἡ *afternoon, evening*

λίθος -ου ὁ *stone*. litho-graph, mono-lith 114

στα-θ-μός -οῦ ὁ *standing place, stopping place, station; day's march; στα-, ἔστην 406, 400 b*. Latin *stō, statūō*; STAND, sy-stem σύν 178

χρόνος -ου ὁ *time*. chrono-logy; chrono meter μέτρον *measure*

ἐπιτήδειος -ᾱ -ον *suitable, proper, necessary; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια provisions*.

μέσος -η -ον *middle; μέσος ὁ the middle of; μέσον or τὸ μέσον the center 556*. Latin *medius*: mesopotamia ποταμός 50

μεστός -ή -όν G *full, filled with, abounding in*

δέκα *ten*. Latin *decem*; decade, decagon, deca-logue

τριά-κοντα *thirty*. Latin *trīgintā*

ἅμα *adv. D at the same time, to-*

gether with; (σ)άμα, ἅμα-α 79.

Latin *simul*; SAME

ἐνταῦ-θα *adv. here, there; then*

ἐντεῦ-θεν *adv. from here, from there; thereafter; therefore*

ἤδη *adv. already, now, at once*

μηκ-έτι, οὐκ-έτι *adv. no more, no longer, differing as the simple μή and οὐ 486; μή and οὐ + ἔτι 167*

οὐ-πω *adv. not yet*

ἀμφί *prep. on both sides. amphitheater; amphibious βίος 30*

G *about, concerning; rare in prose*

A *round, about; οἱ ἀμφι Χειρίσοφον Cheirisophos and his men; ἀμφι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι be busied about the provisions; ἀμφι δορηστών about supper-time*

ὑπέρ *prep. over. Latin super 54; hyper-borean, hyper-critical. hyperbole βάλλω*

¹ But after ρ cp. 369 (a) ἔδρᾱν, δρᾱς.

² ἀγγέλλω 259 a.

³ βάλλω 259 a; 330 a, 350, 4.

⁴ στέλλω 259 a.

G over, beyond, for the sake of;
 ὑπὲρ τῆς κεφαλῆς above the
 head; ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος in de-
 fence of Greece

A over, above, more than; ὑπὲρ
 τὴν δύναμιν beyond his ability

VERBS

ἀγγέλλω bring news, announce;

ἄγγελος /56. ev-angelist εὐ /39

ἀπ-αγγέλλω, ὅτι clause, bring or
 take a message, report

παρ-αγγέλλω, inf. clause, pass along
 an order, command

βαίνω go, walk. Latin *vadum*
 ford; basis βάσις

δια-βαίνω A go through, cross; διά
 /78

βάλλω throw, throw at, pelt. pro-
 blem; sym-bol σύν /78

κρίνω separate; judge, decide.
 Latin *crimen* decision; crisis,
 critic κριτής judge

ἀπο-κρίνομαι dep., ὅτι clause, give
 a decision; answer, reply

στέλλω equip, send; ἐπι-στολή /14.
 epi-stle ἐπί /78; apo-stle ἀπό /78

φαίνω show; midl. appear. phase,
 fancy, em-phasis ἐν /78

ἔβην, aor. of βαίνω, went

ἔγνων, aor. of γινώσκω, recognized,
 knew

ἔστην, aorist, stood; σταθμός.

STAND

ἐπριάμην dep., aor. of ὠνέομαι,
 bought

174 *Ἡδη ἦν περὶ μέσον ἡμέρᾱς καὶ ἔβησαν εἰς τὴν κώμην
 καὶ εἶλον πολλοὺς καὶ δούλους καὶ ἐλευθέρους. 2 ὁ δοῦ-
 λος ἔβη εἰς μέσσην¹ τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰς ἣν ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ
 πολίτου ἵνα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια λάβῃ. 3 ἀμφὶ δείλην ἦλθον
 πάλιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον καὶ ἔστησαν αὐτοῦ ὅθεν οἱ πολέμιοι
 ἔφυγον εἰς χωρίον ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης. 4 ἡ κώμη ἐξ ἧς
 ἔβημεν ἦν μεστή τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.² 5 οὐκ ἐδύναντο
 μέναι ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμέρᾱς πολλὰς. 6 ἐντεῦθεν
 ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ³ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς⁴ δέκα παρα-
 σάγγᾱς τριάκοντα εἰς κώμην μικράν· ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 μακρὸν χρόνον καὶ ἔλαβον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 7 οἱ Πέρσαι
 ἀπ-εκρίναντο ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι πορεύονται παρὰ τὸν
 ποταμόν. 8 ἐν χρόνῳ ἔγνωμεν⁵ ποῖοι ὀπλιταὶ εἰσιν
 οἱ ἐν τῇ τούτων χώρᾳ. 9 ἀπ-ῆγγειλαν ὅτι οὐκέτι ἐδύ-

ναντο πρίασθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἱκανά. **10** μείνωμεν αὐτοῦ ὅσοι ἂν μὴ δυνώμεθα πάλιν ἐλθεῖν. μηκέτι μένωμεν αὐτοῦ ὅσοι ἂν δυνώμεθα πάλιν ἐλθεῖν. **11** οἱ θεοὶ ἔφηναν ἡμῖν τὴν εἰς σωτηρίαν ὁδόν. **12** ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ⁶ οὐ δι-έβησαν τὸν ποταμόν· ὁ γὰρ στρατηγὸς οὐχ ἦκεν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦλθεν οὗτος· καὶ τότε δὴ δι-έβησαν. **13** οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ ταῦτα ἱκανὰ ἦν. **14** οἱ πολῖται ἔκριναν τὴν τῶν τριάκοντα ἀρχὴν εἶναι κακὴν. **15** παρήγγειλαν πάλιν αὐτοῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὴ ἐλεῖν τοὺς δούλους. **16** τὰ ἄλλα ἔβαλον εἰς τὸν ποταμόν. λίθοις⁷ ἔβαλλον αὐτόν.

- 175 We shall not yet answer these men what we think is just.
 2 All-who came-to-know⁸ him judged him to be noble and good.
 3 At daybreak⁹ we shall begin to advance against the thirty.
 4 I can report¹⁰ that they have not yet advanced to the river.
 5 If we go now we shall be able to report¹⁰ about evening.

- 176 ¹ εἰς μέσην into the midst of 556. tive 526 a. They pelted him with stones; they threw stones at him.
² ἐπιτηδείων 512. This is the regular form in Greek.
³ ἡμέρᾳ: a with dative 525. ⁸ ὅσοι ἔγνωσαν.
⁴ σταθμούς 538 fourth example. ⁹ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.
⁵ ἔγνωμεν we came to know. ¹⁰ Use the aor. inf. of ἀπ-αγ-γέλλω.
⁶ ἡμέρᾳ 527 c.
⁷ λίθοις with stones: a with da-

XVIII COMPOUND VERBS

REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS AND VERBS

- 177 Review 268 and a, 290 and a. Review 129, 130.

Learn 528. Read 435–437 a, b, 438 a, 597. In 598 review the prepositions and read a and b. As we have noticed

already the case often determines the translation of the preposition. Such points will be noticed further as they occur.

The Greek language is rich in prepositional compounds and by their use shades of meaning are indicated with extreme nicety, which will be missed unless we note the prepositions carefully.

178 We here give the **prepositions** with their common meanings in composition. This list is to be used for reference.

<i>ἀμφί</i> on both sides, about	completely; a definite object in view. καθ-
<i>ἀνά</i> up, back, again; sometimes also intensive or indefinite	<i>μετά</i> sharing with, in quest of, among; change of state or position. μεθ-
<i>ἀντί</i> against, in return, instead	<i>παρά</i> beside, along by, beyond; transgression
<i>ἀπό</i> away, off, in return, back; also negative. ἀφ-	<i>περί</i> around, exceedingly, surpassing; intensity
<i>διά</i> through, apart, over, across	<i>πρό</i> before, in defense of, forward, forth, in public
<i>εἰς</i> into, in, to, on	<i>πρός</i> to, against, besides, in addition
<i>ἐν</i> in, on, at, among. ἐγ-, ἐμ-	<i>σύν</i> with, together. συγ-, συμ-, συμ-, συ-
<i>ἐξ</i> ἐκ out from, away, from, out; also completion, thoroughness	<i>ὑπέρ</i> over, beyond, in behalf of
<i>ἐπί</i> upon, against, besides, over, after; intensity. ἐφ-	<i>ὑπό</i> under, covertly, slightly, gradually. ὑφ-
<i>κατά</i> down, against; fully,	

179 The following **compound verbs** have been already used or appear in this lesson:

<i>ἀνα-βαίνω</i> , A with <i>ἐπί</i> , go up, ascend, mount. Anabasis	control myself, endure
<i>ἀν-έστην</i> aor. stand up, arise	268 d
<i>ἀν-έχω</i> hold up; rise (<i>ἀν-ίσχω</i>) of the sun; mid.	<i>ἀπ-αγγέλλω</i> , ὅτι clause, bring back word, report
	<i>ἀπ-άγω</i> lead off or back

- ἀφ-αιρέομαι, two A or A of thing and G of person, *take from, deprive*
 ἀπ-αιτέω, two A, *ask from, what is due*
 ἀπ-ἦλθον *come or go away, return*
 ἀπ-ιέναι *go off, return, retreat*
 ἀπο-κρίνομαι, D of person and ὅτι clause, *reply*
 ἀπο-λείπω *leave by going away from, leave behind, desert*
 ἀπο-πέμπω *send off or back; remit; mid. dismiss*
 ἀπο-φεύγω *flee away, or too far to be caught, escape*
 δια-βαίνω A *go through, cross*
 εἰσ-ἦλθον aor., A with prep., *go into, enter*
 ἐξ-άγω *bring out; march out*
 ἐξ-αιρέω *take out; mid. select*
 ἐξ-ελαύνω *drive out, expel; march on, proceed*
 ἐξ-ἦλθον aor. *go out, march out*
 ἐξ-ιέναι *go out*
 ἐκ-λείπω *leave by going out, abandon. ec-lipse*
 ἐκ-φεύγω *flee out of, escape*
 ἐμ-βάλλω *throw in; empty of rivers; invade of armies, εἰς τὴν χώραν*
 ἐπι-βουλεύω D *plot against*
 ἐπ-έστην aor. *settle on, stop, halt*
 ἐπ-ἦλθον aor. *come to or against; D attack*
 ἐπι-θυμέω G *set my heart on, desire 438 a; θῦμός heart, desire*
 ἐπι-πείθομαι D *am won over to, accede to*
 ἐπι-χειρέω *put my hands to, attempt 438 a; χεῖρ hand*
 κατα-βαίνω, G with ἀπό, *go down, dismount*
 κατα-βάλλω *throw down, let fall*
 κατ-έστην aor., A with εἰς, *settle down, take my place, become established*
 κατ-έχω *hold down, occupy; with inf. clause, restrain from*
 καθ-ήκω *come down, extend down*
 κατα-λαμβάνω *capture; overtake; find. cata-lepsy*
 κατα-λείπω *leave by putting down or leave behind to perish; forsake*
 κατα-πέμπω *send down*
 κατα-φεύγω *flee down; flee for refuge, εἰς καταφυγὴν*
 μετα-πέμπομαι *send among after one to come to myself, summon*
 παρ-αγγέλλω, D or A, and inf. clause, *send word along, command*
 παρ-εἶναι D *be beside one, be present*

παρ-έχω *have beside, provide*
παρ-ῆλθον aor., A *go by, pass*
along

προ-άγω *lead forward*

προ-ῆλθον aor. *go before; go*
forward

προ-ιέναι *go on before; ad-*
vance

προ-καταλαμβάνω *seize before,*
preoccupy

προσ-άγω *lead to, lead against;*
advance

προσ-αιτέω, two A, *ask in ad-*
dition or more

προσ-ῆλθον aor., D of person,
A of place with εἰς, *go to*

συν-άγω *bring together, collect*

συν-βουλεύω D *plan with, ad-*
vise; mid. consult with, ask
advice of

συν-εἰσῆλθον aor. *enter with;*
go in together

συν-εξῆλθον aor. *go out with;*
go out together

συν-ῆλθον aor. *come together,*
assemble

συν-πορεύομαι D *march with,*
accompany 185

συν-πράττω, D of person and
A of thing, *do with one,*
help in doing, coöperate
with

συν-στρατεύομαι D *serve with,*
join an expedition

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

180 ἥλιος -ου ὁ *sun*. helio-graph, helio-
trope

λόφος -ου ὁ *ridge; hill, height*

μισθός -οῦ ὁ *wages, pay*

ἄκρος -ᾱ -ον *pointed; topmost; τὰ*
ἄκρα the heights; ἡ ἄκρᾱ 72.
Latin *acer* sharp; *acme*

βασιλείος -ον *belonging to a king,*
royal; τὰ βασίλεια palace, castle;
βασιλεύς king

ἕτερος -ᾱ -ον *the other, one of two,*
hetero-geneous

πρῶτος -ῃ -ον *first; πρῶτον adv.*
first. Latin primus and pri-
mus; proto-type

ἡνίκα conj. adv. *at which time,*
when

ὥς τάχιστα adv. *as soon or rap-*
idly as possible; cp. ὥς 86

181 Κλεαγόρᾱς ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. 2 οἱ στρατηγοὶ
ἀπ-ῆτησαν τὸν σατράπην μισθὸν τὸν δέκα ἡμερῶν.¹
3 ἐβούλοντο ἀφ-ελέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσᾱς τὰς κώμας.²
4 οὐκ ἐδυνάμεθα δια-βῆναι τὸν ποταμὸν τοῦτον ἄνευ
πλοίων. 5 συν-εἰσ-ῆλθον ἡμῖν³ εἰς τὰς κώμας καὶ

ἐξ-εἶλον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. **6** ἐπ-εθύμησαν ἐξ-ιέναι ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. **7** ἐπ-εχείρησα συμ-πράττειν αὐτῷ³ ταῦτα. **8** οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς ἐν-έβαλλεν εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην. **9** ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀν-έχοντι⁴ οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπ-άξουσι τὸ ἱππικόν. **10** ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀν-έβησαν⁵ ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον λόφον καὶ κατ-έβαινον⁵ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀνα-βαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπ-ῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων κατ-έβαλλον.⁶ **11** ἐπεὶ δὲ κατ-έλαβεν⁷ αὐτοὺς Ἀρβάκης μετὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιστῆναι οὐ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μηκέτι προ-ιέναι. **12** ἡνίκα ἦν ἤδη δείλη, ὥρᾳ ἦν ἀπ-ιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις.⁸ **13** ἡνίκα ἐξ-ήλυνον εἶδον βασίλεια⁹ καὶ περὶ αὐτὰ κώμας πολλάς· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ λόφων ἦν οἱ καθ-ῆκον ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ὑφ' οἷς ἦν ἡ κώμη. **14** ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ σκοποὶ ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ παρὰ τοῦ σατράπου ἀπ-ῆγγειλαν πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι προ-κατ-έλαβον τὰ ἄκρα αὐτοῖς.¹⁰ **15** οὐ δυνάμεθα κατα-λιπεῖν τοὺς φίλους· δεδοίκαμεν γὰρ μὴ οὐ δύνωνται μόνοι πορεύεσθαι. **16** μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀν-έστη καὶ εἶπεν· οὗτος μὲν ἐκέλευε μὴ λαβεῖν τὰ δῶρα, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι οὐκ ἐπ-επείθοντο.¹¹ **17** οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσ-ῆτησαν μισθὸν τὸν σατράπην· ὁ δὲ ἀπ-επέμψατο αὐτούς. **18** ἐπεὶ ὁ σατράπης κατ-έστη¹² εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν, ἐπείθοντο αὐτῷ.

- 182 They left the town and sought refuge in¹³ the hills. **2** We could not restrain them from-seizing¹⁴ the lights. **3** We expect¹⁵ to overtake them about evening. **4** If you do ascend the hill you can not see the river. **5** Let us go out as¹⁶ soon as we can. **6** Let us ask the satrap for more¹⁷ pay for the young men.

183 ¹ ἡμερῶν *ten days' pay*. The article τόν belongs with μισθόν *pay*, namely *that (τόν) of ten days*. The genitive denotes *measure* 506 a, 4.

² κῶμᾱς 535.

³ ἡμῖν 598 a; so also αὐτῷ in 7.

⁴ ἀν-έχοντι *rising*: ptc. dat. sing. from ἀν-έχω. The whole expression means *at sunrise*.

⁵ ἀν-έβησαν καὶ κατ-έβαινον *had ascended and were descending*. Notice the tenses.

⁶ κατ-έβαλλον: some instrument is implied as *stones λίθοις* or *missiles*. Notice the change of tense here also, though English does not here make any distinction. See 466.

⁷ κατ-έλαβεν: the verb is singular though the subject includes more than one. It could be singular too if the subject read Ἀρβάκης καὶ οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ. Compare 498 b.

⁸ τοῖς πολεμοῖς *for the enemy*.

⁹ βασιλεία: something belonging to the king as a *castle* or *palace*; neuter accusative plural.

¹⁰ αὐτοῖς: a *for* dative 523. The context shows that *for* is here *before them, against them*.

¹¹ ἐπ-επείθοντο: ἐπὶ in composition here indicates *won over there-to, to his side*.

¹² κατ-έστη *became established*. For εἰς we say *in* rather than *into*. The Greek views the act as motion into; we view it as rest in.

¹³ εἰς: see above.

¹⁴ καταλαβεῖν or τοῦ καταλαβεῖν. Later we shall use μὴ οὐ καταλαβεῖν and τοῦ μὴ καταλαβεῖν.

¹⁵ Write *we think that we shall*.

¹⁶ ὥς ἂν . . . τάχιστα with the subjunctive.

¹⁷ πρὸς in προσ-αιτέω.

XIX Ω - VERBS

DEPONENTS. REVIEW

184 **Deponents** 137. Many active verbs are deponent in the future. The following not found in 392 are used in this book. Add them to the list in 392 and use the list for reference. Learn the principal parts as the verbs are met in reading.

ἀλέξω (ἀλεξόμενος), ἀλέξομαι
ward off

ἀπο-διδράσκω, -δράσομαι *run*
away

δια-βαίνω, -βήσομαι *cross*

δι-αρπάζω, -αρπάσομαι *sack*

ἐρωτάω, ἐρήσομαι *ask*

θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι *wonder*

θέω, θεύσομαι *run*

ρέω, ρεύσομαι *flow*

σκοπέω, σκέψομαι *view*

φθάνω, φθήσομαι *anticipate*

/85 The **Passive Deponents**, 394, 395, used in this book are here given. Use the list for reference. The other deponents are used in the aorist middle.

βούλομαι <i>wish</i>	βουλήσομαι	βεβούλημαι	ἐβουλήθην
δέομαι <i>request</i>	δεήσομαι	δεδέημαι	ἐδεήθην
δύναμαι <i>can</i>	δυνήσομαι	δεδύνημαι	ἐδυνήθην
δια-λέγομαι <i>talk</i> <i>with</i>	διαλέξομαι	δι-είλεγμαi	δι-ελέχθην
ἐν-αντιόομαι <i>oppose</i>	ἐν-αντιώσομαι	ἤναντίωμαι	ἤναντιώθην
ἐπι-μέλομαι <i>take</i> <i>care of</i>	ἐπι-μελήσομαι	ἐπι-μεμέλημαι	ἐπ-εμελήθην
ἐπί-σταμαι ¹ <i>understand</i>	ἐπι-στήσομαι		ἤπιστήθην
(μέμνημαι) ² <i>remem-</i> <i>ber, mention</i>	μεμνήσομαι	μέμνημαι	ἐμνήσθην
οἶομαι <i>think</i>	οἰήσομαι		ὤήθην
ὀρμάομαι <i>set out</i>	ὀρμήσομαι	ὥρμημαι	ὥρμησάμην ὥρμήθην
πείθομαι <i>obey</i>	πείσομαι	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην
πειράομαι <i>attempt</i>	πειράσομαι	πεπείραμαι	ἐπειράθην
πορεύομαι <i>advance</i>	πορεύσομαι	πεπόρευμαι	ἐπορεύθην
φοβέομαι <i>fear</i>	φοβήσομαι	πεφόβημαι	ἐφοβήθην
προ-θῦμέομαι <i>desire</i>	προ-θῦμήσομαι		προυθῦμήθην
	προ-θῦμηθήσομαι		

/86 a Review 62, 66, 70, 71, 76.

b Review the indicatives and subjunctives in 252, 253, 254, 331, 348, taking κρίνω, αἰρέω, λαμβάνω, βούλομαι, and δύναμαι /64, /66 for your examples. Write each *tense-stem*.

¹ 268 b, if ἐπι- is taken as ἐπί.

² The perfect μέμνημαι *remember* serves as a present, with the pluperfect and future perfect form for the imperfect and future meaning. Compare Latin *memini*. The present stem appears in the compounds ἀνα-μυμήσκω and ὑπο-μυμήσκω *remind one of something*.

c The verbs to be checked in the Verb-list and learnt are ἀφ-ικνέομαι,¹ βαίνω,² γίγνομαι,³ δέομαι, εἶμι,⁴ ἐρωτάω, λαμβάνω,⁵ οἶδα,⁶ οἶχομαι,⁷ ὁράω.⁸ In compounds look for the simple form.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 187 **μεγάλη** fem. *great, large, tall*
ἀφ-ικνέομαι A with prep. *arrive, come to, reach*; **ἰκ-, ἰκανός** 72; **οἶκος** 30. Latin *vīcus* *village*
γίγνομαι *become, am, am born; happen*; **γεν-**. Latin *gignō* *bear*; *gēns* *race*; *genesis*
δέομαι 185, G, or A of thing and G of person, *want, desire*; with inf. clause and G of person, *request, beg*
ἐν-εἶναι *be in or on*
λαμβάνω *take, receive, obtain*
οἶδα εἶσομαι, ὅτι clause or ptc. clause, *know, understand*
οἶχομαι οἰχήσομαι *am gone, have gone*
πρόσθεν adv. G *before, in front of; formerly*; **τὸ πρόσθεν** *the van, the time before*; **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν** *forward*
*** μὲν-τοι** adv. *really; yet, nevertheless, however*
οὐ-δέ conj. adv. *and not, but not, nor*. Compare Latin *neque*
*** τε** conj. *and*; *** τε . . . καί** conj.⁹ *both . . . and, not only . . . but also*. Compare Latin *-que*

- 188 **γίγνεται, γενήσονται, ἐγένετο, ἐγένοντο.** 2 **ἔσομαι, ἔσται,**¹⁰ **ἔσονται, εἴσομαι, εἴσεται, εἴσονται.** 3 **οἴχεται, ὀχέτο, οἰχήσεται, οἴεται, ὤετο, ὦοντο, ὦμην, οἶμαι.** 4 **ἀφ-ικνεῖται,**¹¹ **ἀφ-ικνουῦνται, ἀφ-ίκετο, ἀφ-ίκοντο, ἀπ-**

¹ ἀφ-ικνέομαι 261 e.² βαίνω 259 b, 56 b; cp. φαίνω.³ γίγνομαι 257 a.⁴ εἶμι: ἔσομαι only.⁵ λαμβάνω 261 c.⁶ οἶδα: εἴσομαι only.⁷ οἶχομαι: οἰχήσομαι only.⁸ ὁράω 391, 291 a.

⁹ In **τε . . . καί, τε** only is postpositive and enclitic, but it comes early in its clause. Notice **ἀνθρωποὶ τε καὶ ἵπποι, ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἀρχεσθαι, τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, λέγει ὅτι φίλος τε τῶν ἄλλων ἦν καὶ συν-ἐπράττειν αὐτοῖς.**

¹⁰ The short form **ἔσται** is used for **ἔσεται**.¹¹ The inflection is like liquid futures 331.

εκρίνατο. 5 λήψεται, ὄψονται, αἰρήσεται, εἶλον, εἶλον-
το, ἐλεῖν, ἐλέσθαι.

- 189 We shall be, they will become, they became, they were.
2 What shall they have? They will know, we shall be,
we shall know. 3 They have gone, they thought, they
think, they will see. 4 They arrived, we shall take, we
shall choose, they chose.

ΠΟΡΕΙΑ ΑΠΡΑΚΤΟΣ

- 190 Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου καλοῦ καὶ
περὶ μέσον ἡμέρᾱς¹ ἀφ'έκοντο εἰς τὰς τοῦ σατράπου
κώμας τοῦ Ἀρμενιάς. ὁ δὲ οὐ παρ-ἦν.² ἐνταῦθα οὖν
ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱς δύο· ἐδέοντο γὰρ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων³ καὶ
ταῦτα πολλὰ ἐν-ἦν. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθ-
μοὺς πέντε παρασάγγᾱς τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν
ποταμόν· οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μέν, μακρὸς δ' οὐ.⁴ κῶμαι
δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. ἡ δὲ κώμη εἰς ἣν
ἀφ'έκοντο μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ βασιλεία εἶχε⁵ τῷ σα-
τράπῃ⁶ καὶ ἐν-ἦσαν πολλαὶ οἰκίαι καλαὶ ἐν αὐτῇ· καὶ⁷
αὕτη δὲ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστὴ ἦν. ἐνταῦθα δ' οὐκ
ἔμειναν μακρὸν χρόνον· ἐβούλοντο γὰρ τὸν σατράπην
ἰδεῖν καὶ ἀπο-λαβεῖν ἐκείνου⁸ τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἃ εἶχεν
αὐτῶν.⁹ ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος ᾤχετο,¹⁰ ὥστε ἐξ-ἦλθον καὶ
ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν· ὥντο γὰρ ἔσσεσθαι
αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ πλησίον πεδίῳ. ὁ δὲ σατράπης οὐκ ἐφάνη
ἐπὶ τῷ πεδίῳ οὐδὲ¹¹ κατα-λαβεῖν αὐτὸν ἐδύναντο. εἶπον¹²
οὖν πρὸς τοὺς δούλους ὅτι¹³ ἐβούλοντο· οἱ δ' ἀπ-εκρί-
ναντο ὅτι¹⁴ τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ ἀπ-ἦλθεν ἐκεῖνος εἰς
τὴν τῶν Περσῶν χώραν καὶ ἐκέλευσαν αὐτοὺς μένειν¹⁵
ἡμέρᾱς δέκα αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ μέντοι ἀπ-ἦλθον οἴκαδε.

191 ¹ μέσον ἡμέρας *midday, noon.*

Note the omission of the article with each. Observe the other time expressions in this exercise, dative time *when*, accusative time *how long*.

² παρ-ῆν: imperf. of παρ-εἶναι *be present, adesse*. Notice the accent; it can not go back of the augment. For ῆν see 2/, 384.

³ τῶν ἐπιτηδελῶν 512.

⁴ οὐ: proclitic takes this accent by 18.

⁵ εἶχε *contained*: imperf. of ἔχω.

⁶ τῷ σατράπῃ *for the satrap*.

⁷ καὶ αὕτη δέ *and this also*. καὶ is also, δέ *and*.

⁸ ἐκείνου *from him*.

⁹ αὐτῶν *of them, belonging to them, or simply their slaves*.

¹⁰ ᾤχετο *had gone*: as a pluperfect.

¹¹ οὐδέ *and not, nor*, is the common negative after a negative sentence instead of καὶ οὐ.

¹² εἶπον *they told*.

¹³ ὅ τι *what*.

¹⁴ ὅτι *that*.

¹⁵ μένειν *wait for*: with an object accusative.

XX Ω - VERBS

Ω-FORMS AND ΜΙ-FORMS. REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS AND CONSTRUCTIONS

192 Except some μι-presents all forms made on a tense-stem having a *tense-suffix* are of the ω-form of inflection; all forms made on a tense-stem having no tense-suffix are of the μι-form of inflection.¹

¹ These names are as convenient as any. They are thus used because in the indicative the ω-form treats the personal endings more or less as they are treated in the present indicative of verbs in -ω, and the μι-form treats them usually as they are treated in the present indicative of verbs in -μι. The pluperfect active may be regarded as anomalous and not classed. The tense-suffixes end in ο:ε or α (-ο:ε, -σα, -α, -κα, -α). In the passive aorists θη:ε and η:ε are voice suffixes, not tense-suffixes. All complete verbs, whether ω-verbs or μι-verbs, have both ω-tenses and μι-tenses.

The present system of μι-verbs, to be given later, naturally takes the μι-inflection whether it has a tense-suffix -να, -νν:ῦ, -ννν:ῦ, or not. But when it assumes a form of ο:ε as in εἶ, ἐτίθει, ἐδίδουν, δεικνύοι, ῥοι it takes the ω-inflection. The application of this will come later. The

193 Review the Subjunctive forms in 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367. The ω-form substitutes the combined endings 109, 161 for the final vowel of the tense-stem; the μι-form adds the combined endings to the tense-stem and contracts if possible. In this contraction α is absorbed¹ like ε, and ο makes ω throughout. Contract forms take the circumflex if possible. The perfect middle is compound.

a So then in ω-presents, α-aorists, ο:ε-aorists, and active perfects *substitute*, in other tenses *add*, the combined endings.

SUBJUNCTIVES²

194

παυ- stop	βαλ-, βλη- throw	κριν-, κρι- judge	γνο:ω- come to know
παύ-ω παύ-ωμαι	βάλλ-ω βάλλ-ωμαι	κρίν-ω κρίν-ωμαι	γινώσκ-ω γινώσκ-ωμαι
παύσ-ω παύσ-ωμαι	βάλ-ω βάλ-ωμαι	κρίν-ω κρίν-ωμαι	γνῶ
πεπαύκ-ω	βεβλήκ-ω	κεκρίκ-ω	ἐγνώκ-ω
πεπαυμένος ᾧ	βεβλημένος ᾧ	κεκριμένος ᾧ	ἐγνωσμένος ᾧ
παυθῶ	βληθῶ	κριθῶ	γνωσθῶ

rules for the subjunctive in 193 and for the optative in 275 cover all cases that the pupil needs. These sections should be learnt word for word.

¹ But see 172 a note.

² In such tables as this, when the names of the tenses are omitted, it will be understood that the systems are given in the same order as they appear in the principal parts: verb-stem, present system, future system,

Write the inflection of subjunctives on these *tense-stems* : active *μεινα-*, *ἰδο:-ε-*, *εἰπο:-ε-*, *βα:η-*, *γνο:ω-* ; middle *φῆνα-*, *λαβο:-ε-* ; passive, *πρᾶχθη:-ε-*, *φανη:-ε-*. Make tables similar to the above if needed.

INFINITIVES

195

παυ- <i>stop</i>	βαλ-, βλη- <i>throw</i>	κριν-, κρι- <i>judge</i>	βαν-, βα:η- <i>go</i>
παύειν παύε-σθαι	βάλλειν βάλλε-σθαι	κρίνειν κρίνε-σθαι	βαίνειν
παύσειν παύσε-σθαι	βαλεῖν βαλεῖ-σθαι	κρινεῖν κρινεῖ-σθαι	βήσε-σθαι
παῦσαι παύσα-σθαι	βαλεῖν βαλέ-σθαι	κρίναι κρίνα-σθαι	βῆ-ναι
πεπαυκέ-ναι	βεβληκέ-ναι	κεκρικέ-ναι	βεβηκέ-ναι
πεπαῦ-σθαι	βεβλή-σθαι	κεκρί-σθαι	-βεβά-σθαι
πεπαύσε-σθαι	βεβλήσε-σθαι		
παυθῆ-ναι παυθήσε-σθαι	βληθῆ-ναι βληθήσε-σθαι	κριθῆ-ναι κριθήσε-σθαι	-βαθῆ-ναι

Make similar tables as needed.

196 Review the Infinitive forms in 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.

a Endings.¹ The ο:ε-tenses have -ειν, α-aorists -αι, active perfects and μι-forms active, and passive with

aorist system, perfect active system, perfect middle system, passive system. The subjunctive has no forms in the future system. The same order is used with the infinitives in 195.

¹ 196 a and b should be learnt word for word.

active endings, *-vai*, other passives and all middles *-σθαι*.

b Accent. All infinitives in *-vai*, the *a*-aorists active, the perfect middle, and the *ο:ε*-aorist middle accent the penult; the *ο:ε*-aorist active has *-εῖν*.

/97 **a** Review and complete the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive of *φημι* 382 and *εἰμι* 384.

b Learn the **personal pronouns**, first and second persons, 194, 557.

c The verbs to be checked in the Verb-list and learnt are *γινώσκω*,¹ *διώκω*,² *ἐλαύνω*,³ *ἔρχομαι*,⁴ *μάχομαι*,⁵ *μέλλω*, *ὑπ-ισχνέομαι*.⁶

/98 **a** *Πρίν* with the infinitive 568.

b The infinitive with special negative 572 and **b, c**.

c Review 6/, 62, 63, infinitive as object.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

/99 <i>δόξα -ης ἡ opinion</i> ; <i>δοκέω</i> /56.	<i>ἐλαίνω drive; ride, drive; march.</i>
<i>ortho-dox</i>	<i>elastic</i>
<i>κραυγή -ης ἡ outcry, shout</i>	<i>ἔξ-εστι(ν) ἔξ-εῖναι, D or A of person</i>
<i>δεινός -ή -όν frightful; skilful,</i>	<i>and inf. clause, one may, it is</i>
<i>clever; ἔ-δει-σα /14</i>	<i>possible or permitted</i>
<i>ἔτοιμος -η -ον or -ος -ον at hand,</i>	<i>ἔρχομαι come, go, arrive; of the</i>
<i>ready, prepared</i>	<i>present stem forms other than</i>
<i>γινώσκω come to know, perceive,</i>	<i>the indicative are very rare</i>
<i>recognize. Latin nōscō; KNOW,</i>	<i>μάχομαι D of person, fight, fight</i>
<i>gnome, a-gnostic</i>	<i>with; μάχη /04</i>
<i>διώκω pursue, chase</i>	<i>μέλλω, inf. clause, am about to,</i>
	<i>shall, intend; delay</i>

¹ *γινώσκω* 260 a.

² *διώκω* 392.

³ *ἐλαύνω* 261 d, 322 c *ἐλῶ, ἐλῶ, ἐλῶ*; 291 c.

⁴ *ἔρχομαι* 291 c, 391.

⁵ *μάχομαι* 322 c.

⁶ *ὑπ-ισχνέομαι* 261 e.

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, D of person and πρὶν conj. adv., with inf. clause, inf. clause, *undertake, promise*; before; with finite modes, *before, until*
 ἔχω 30

200 Τοῦτον τὸν πολίτην εἶλοντο ἄρχειν αὐτῶν. 2 οὐχ ὥρᾱ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν λέγειν περὶ τούτων. 3 ἔτοιμός εἰμι ἀκούειν ὃ τι βούλει εἰπεῖν. 4 κραυγὴν πολλήν¹ ἐποίησαν ὥστε καὶ τοὺς² ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ ἀκούειν. 5 διέβησαν τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀφ-ικέσθαι. 6 οὐκ ἐδυνήθησαν ἡμᾶς πείσαι ἐλθεῖν. 7 ἔμελλον συμ-βουλεύσειν³ αὐτοῖς μὴ λέγειν. 8 τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοῦ μένειν ὡς κωλύειν τούτους τοῦ⁴ ἀθροίζεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ ὀπλίτας ἔπεμψε τὰ ἄκρα κατα-λαβεῖν. 9 ἐβούλετο καὶ ὑμᾶς παρ-εῖναι αὐτῷ⁵ ὡς κωλύειν Ξενίαν μὴ ἐπι-πείθεσθαι τοῖς τριάκοντα τοῖς κακοῖς. 10 ὑπ-έσχετο Κλεάρχῳ μὴ κωλύσειν⁶ τούτους μὴ οὐ πέμπειν⁷ δῶρα πρὸς ὑμᾶς. 11 ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα εἶναι ἀγαθοὶ πολῖται καὶ δεινοὶ λέγειν. 12 νῦν ἕξ-εστιν ἡμῖν⁸ πορεύεσθαι μετ' ἐκείνων. 13 ἤρξαντο⁹ τοῦ δια-βαίνειν ἄνευ ἡμῶν. 14 ὥτε πολλοὺς ἀκούσειν ἔαν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἴπῃ. 15 ἔφη αὐτὸς¹⁰ εἶναι ὁ δοῦλος ὃν ἔπεμψαν. 16 ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι σοφός, ὅτε ἡρωτᾶτο τὴν δόξαν.¹¹ 17 οὐκ ὥροντο Ἀγασίαν μαχεῖσθαι τοῖς φίλοις.¹² 18 διώξω-μεν αὐτοὺς πρὶν κατα-φυγεῖν. 19 ᾗτήσαμεν ἡμεῖς αὐτὸν μὴ ποιῆσαι ταῦτα. 20 παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς νεᾷ-νίαις ἐπι-στήναι αὐτοῦ· αὐτὸς γὰρ ἔφη μόνος προ-ιέναι.¹³

20/ It-seems-best¹⁴ to us not to remain here longer. 2 See-
 ing¹⁵ is not believing. 3 He is said to-have-proved-him-
 self¹⁶ clever at speaking.¹⁵ 4 They went before we could
 persuade them to reply. 5 Let us not prevent them from¹⁷

going¹⁵ if they so desire. 6 You were not to blame for his¹⁸ not remaining.¹⁵

202 ¹ πολλήν *much*; fem. sing. of πολλοί 2/.

² τοὺς ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ: subject accusative of ἀκούειν 562 a.

³ συμ-βουλεύσειν: the future infinitive is common with μέλλω; the present is also used. Avoid the aorist. See 570 b.

⁴ τοῦ ἀθροίζεσθαι: a *from* genitive. μὴ ἀθροίζεσθαι and τοῦ μὴ ἀθροίζεσθαι would also be proper. See 572 and c, 575.

⁵ παρ-εἶναι αὐτῷ *to be with him* 598 a.

⁶ κωλύσειν: the future infinitive is the regular form after verbs of *hoping, promising, and swearing*; the other tenses are not so common. The negative is regularly μὴ, though the original thought was οὐ κωλύσω *I will not hinder*. See 577 and b; 579 a.

⁷ μὴ οὐ πέμπειν *from sending* 572 a.

⁸ ἔξ-εστιν ἡμῖν *we may*.

⁹ ἤρξαντο: ἄρχω in both meanings, *begin* and *rule*, takes the genitive. See the examples in 510 b, c.

¹⁰ αὐτὸς εἶναι *that he himself was*. αὐτός *ipse*, in the nominative is never the subject.

¹¹ ἠρωτάτο τὴν δόξαν: compare 159. 1.

¹² φίλοις: a *with* dative 525.

¹³ προ-ιέναι *would go forward*. The forms of the present *ιέναι* have frequently a future force, as in the English *I am going*.

¹⁴ δοκεῖ. The inflection is like that of liquid futures, δοκέει = δοκεῖ.

¹⁵ Remember the infinitive in *-ing*.

¹⁶ γένεσθαι: aor. inf. of γίγνομαι.

¹⁷ Use μὴ οὐ, or τοῦ, or the infinitive alone: do not use τοῦ μὴ οὐ.

¹⁸ τοῦ μὴ μένειν αὐτόν. Study 75. 11.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

203 Nearly all these **Uses of the Subjunctive** have occurred in the exercises, some of them frequently. They are here arranged for review and ready reference.¹

I In Subjunctive Sentences, *Independent*

Time future. Negative μὴ

¹ Do not take the time to investigate 632 A, 644 b, 636 a, 638 c now. When the necessary words have been learnt the constructions will be found already familiar. Avoid separating any of the uses in 203 II b or in II c. If kept together what is usually treated as a very complicated matter will be very simple and will present no difficulty that has not been already confronted.

a Dubitative 471

b Hortative 472

c Prohibitive 473

II In Subordinate clauses, *Dependent*

a *Mḗ* clauses. Time future. Negative οὐ. 611 b

b Relative clauses with ἄν. Time future or universal. Negative μή. 616 a, 618 a, 620, 627, 629, 631, 632 A; πρίν 644 b

c *Ἵνα* *that* clauses. Purpose to be accomplished. Negative μή. 642 a. So ὥς *that* 636 a, ὅπως *that* 638 c

d *Ἐάν* *if* clauses. Time future or universal. Negative μή. 650

THE INFINITIVE MODE

204 All the following **Uses of the Infinitive** are found in the preceding exercises, some of them very frequently. They are given here for review and reference.¹

Description 562 and a. Tenses 563 and a. Negative usually μή 564

a As a *To* or *For* Dative

1 Alone 565 and a, b

2 With ὥς or ὥστε *so as* 566 b; ἐφ' ᾧ *on condition that* 567

b With πρίν *before* 568

c As Object 570 a, b, c

1 With subject accusative 570 d

2 Subject omitted 571

3 Special negative, μή and μή οὐ, 572 a, b, c

¹ Do not investigate the cases in 567, 577 c, and 579. They present nothing new, but use forms or expressions that have not yet been treated.

- d** With or without τό as Subject 574 and **a**
e With the article as noun in genitive or dative 575; or
 accusative 562 **a end**
f Infinitive clause representing a sentence with finite
 verb 577 **a, b, c, 578** and **a, 579** and **a**

XXI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

GUTTURAL STEMS IN -κ AND -γ. THE DENTAL STEM
 ΝΥΚΤ-

205 **a** Learn the case-endings in ἄλ-s 99, 100. Read 98.

b Review 38 **b, 45 a, b,** and 37. Compare αἶγ-s = αἶξ,
 φύλακ-s = φύλαξ with ἄγω ἄξω, ἦκω ἦξω and the Latin rēg-s =
 rēx, duc-s = dux. Learn 101, 109, 110.

c Learn κήρυξ 111 **a** and νύξ 111 **c end**.

206

(ἡ) ΝΥΚΤ- this same night				noct- night
αὕτη	ἡ	αὐτή	νύξ	nox
ταύτης	τῆς	αὐτῆς	νυκτ-ός	noct-is
ταύτῃ	τῇ	αὐτῇ	νυκτ-ί	noct-ī
ταύτην	τὴν	αὐτήν	νύκτ-α	noct-em
αὐταὶ	αἱ	αὐταὶ	νύκτ-ες	noct-ēs
τούτων	τῶν	αὐτῶν	νυκτ-ῶν	noct-ium
ταύταις	ταῖς	αὐταῖς	νυξί	noct-ibus
ταύτᾱς	τᾶς	αὐτᾶς	νύκτ-ας	noct-īs, -ēs

207 **a** For συν-λαμβάνω, σύν + λαμβάνω, see 50 **c**.

b Check in the Verb-list and learn -θνήσκω, ἔπομαι 267,
 σημαίνω 259 **b**. Write the principal parts of ἀπο-θνήσκω:
 ἀποθνήσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον, τέθηγα.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 208 Θράξ Θράκος ὁ *Thracian* ἔπομαι D *follow, accompany.*
 κήρυξ κήρυκος ὁ *crier, herald;* Latin *seguor*
 κραυγή 199 συν-έπομαι D *follow along with,*
 νύξ νυκτός ἡ *night.* Latin *nox* *accompany.*
 σάλπιγξ -γγος ἡ *trumpet* σημαίνω *make a sign, give the sig-*
 φάλαγξ -γγος ἡ *line of battle;* ἐπὶ *nal;* D *inform, order, declare*
 φάλαγγος *in line.* phalanx συλ-λαμβάνω *take with or together,*
 φύλαξ -ακος ὁ *guard;* φυλάττω *seize, arrest.* syl-lable
 156, φυλακή 79 ἔνθα conj. adv. *where; whereupon*
 εἴκοσι *twenty.* Latin *vīginti* μεταξύ adv. *in the midst of; G be-*
 ἀπο-θνήσκω *die off, am killed; used* *tween*
 as passive of ἀπο-κτείνω 362

- 209 Οὔτοι οἱ Θράκες γενήσονται φύλακες ἀγαθοὶ πρὶν ἡμᾶς προ-ιέναι. 2 κήρυκες δύο ἀφίκοντο νυκτὸς¹ παρὰ τῶν Περσῶν ἵνα περὶ σπονδῶν συμ-βουλεύωνται τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἡμῶν. 3 ἔὰν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένηται ἡ στρατιά, ἡμεῖς νικήσομεν² νίκην καλὴν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 4 κήρυκας ἔπεμψαν πρὸς τοὺς Θράκας λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἀπ-έθνησκον. 5 ἔὰν οὔτοι οἱ φύλακες συν-έπωνται ἡμῖν νικήσομεν τοὺς Θράκας. 6 ἔὰν οἱ φύλακες ἡμῖν ἔπωνται δώσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἱκανὰ αὐτοῖς. 7 τὸν κήρυκα ἐρρησόμεθα τὴν δόξαν³ περὶ ᾧ οἱ πολῖται ἔλεγον. 8 ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄγγελος ἐσήμηνε, οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔπεμψαν τοὺς ὀπλίτας εἰς τὸ διώκειν.⁴ 9 ἀκήκοα ὅτι πολλοὶ ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς ἀπ-έθανον πλησίον⁵ τῆς κόμης οὗ ἐγένετο ἡ μάχη. 10 φύλακες εἴκοσιν εἶποντο τοῖς Θραῶσι ἐκ τῆς κόμης· οὔτοι δὲ συν-ελήφθησαν καὶ ἀπ-έθανον πρὶν τοὺς φίλους δυνηθῆναι ἀφ-ελεῖσθαι⁶ αὐτούς. 11 ἔνθα⁷ δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα¹ ᾗσαν ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων εἶδον τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς⁸ ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις.

ταύτην μὲν οὖν⁹ τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν μεταξὺ⁵
 τοῦ λόφου καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ¹ ἦλθον
 πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν νεᾶνιαι δύο καὶ ἐσήμηναν αὐτοῖς
 οὗ¹⁰ ἐδύναντο δια-βῆναι τὸν ποταμόν. 12 καὶ ἦν μὲν
 δείλῃ, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον τοὺς σκοποὺς πορεύεσθαι καὶ τὴν
 μὲν νύκτα, ἔὰν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν,
 ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν.

2/0 We told you to advance, when the herald should give the
 signal on the trumpet. 2 If you do not wish to follow,
 we shall proceed alone. 3 We were planning to go before
 the messengers arrived. 4 We shall wait here for¹¹ them
 to come. 5 We conquered them in two battles¹² before
 their captain was killed.

2// ¹ νυκτός *by night*. Notice the
 time constructions in this lesson:
 genitive, time *within which* 515;
 dative, time *when* 527 c; accusa-
 tive, time *how long* 538.

² νικήσομεν *shall win*: takes a
 cognate accusative 536 a.

³ τὴν δόξαν: τί δοκεῖ αὐτῷ. Cp.
 202, 11 and 200, 16.

⁴ εἰς τὸ διώκειν *in pursuit*: the
 infinitive used as a verbal noun in
 the accusative 562 *end*. Cp. 574
 and add 'or *with* the article with
 prepositions.'

⁵ πλησίον 518 b. So also μεταξὺ
 in 11.

⁶ ἀφ-ελεσθαι *rescue*: aor. mid. of
 ἀφ-αιρέω: *take away to themselves*.

⁷ ἔνθα δὲ . . . ἦσαν *and where*
 . . . *they themselves had been*:
 keep the words in their order in
 getting the meaning.

⁸ πολλούς *in large numbers*.

⁹ μὲν οὖν: notice the order each
 time two or more particles occur
 together.

¹⁰ οὗ: *a place where*.

¹¹ ἕως ἄν with the subjunctive.

¹² Use the dative without a prepo-
 sition. The Greek probably regards
 it as instrumental 526.



Dicast's ticket (σύμβολον).

XXII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

GUTTURAL STEMS IN -κ, -γ, χ. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. ADVERBS IN -ως, -θεν, -τε, AND -οι

2/2 a Review 109–111 a. Decline διῶρυξ.

b Review the pronouns in 194, 199 a. Learn 195 a, b, c, 197, 200, 203 and a.

2/3 Adverbs. Learn 229. In like manner make adverbs from the following adjectives and give their meaning: δεινός, δηλός, ελεύθερος, ἐπιτήδειος, ἔτοιμος, ἰκανός, ισχυρός, κακός, καλός, μεγάλη 77 b, ῥάδιος. Notice οὔτω(ς) *thus* and ὡς *as*, without accent, from οὗτος *this* and ὅς *who*.

2/4

	THEMATIC AORIST	ROOT-AORISTS	
VERB	αἰρέω	άλίσκομαι	γιγνώσκω
TENSE-STEM	έλο:ε-	άλο:ω-	γνο:ω-
MEANING . .	<i>take choose</i>	<i>am taken</i>	<i>recognize</i>
INDICATIVE	εἶλο-ν εἰλό-μην	έ-άλω-ν or ἤλω-ν	ἔ-γνω-ν
SUBJV.	ἔλ-ω ἐλ-ωμαι	άλῶ	γνώ
INFINITIVE	εἰλεῖν ἐλέ-σθαι	άλῶ-ναι	γνώ-ναι

a Inflect these forms in the indicative and subjunctive.

b Check in the Verb-list and learn ἀλίσκομαι,¹ αἰσθάνομαι,² θέω.³

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

2/5 δι-ῶρυξ -υχος ἡ ditch, canal

θόρυβος -ου ὁ disturbance, confusion, noise of a crowd

πάρ-οδος -ου ἡ way by, passage

τάφρος -ου ἡ ditch, trench

φοῖνιξ φοίνικος ὁ palm-tree

¹ ἀλίσκομαι 369 c, 367, 262.

² αἰσθάνομαι 261 b.

³ θέω 392, 184, 257 b.

ὀλίγος -η -ον *small, few*. olig-archy

ἄρχω 66

στενός -ή -όν *narrow*. steno-graphy

γράφω 114

φανερός -ᾶ -όν *visible, evident*;

φαίνω 173

χαλεπός -ή -όν *hard, severe, dangerous*

αἰσθάνομαι, ptc. or ὅτι clause, *perceive, see, become aware of*. aesthetic

ἀλίσκομαι *am captured, am caught*; used as passive of αἰρέω 156

θέω *run*

παρ-ιέναι *go or come by, pass along by*

συν-τάττω *arrange together; form in line*. syn-tax

εἶσω adv. G *inside, within*

ἐκεῖ adv. *there*

ἔμ-προσ-θεν adv. G *before, in front of*

ποτε adv. *once on a time, once, ever*. Compare πότε *when?* τότε *then*, ὅτε *when*, ὁ-πότε *whenever* in 2/9, 236

216 Ἐπεὶ Φίλιππος ἦσθητο ὅτι ὁ ἑαυτοῦ φίλος τέθνηκεν, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἀπ-ιέναι. 2 ἐπεὶ οἱ φύλακες ὑμῶν ἤκουσαν τοῦ θορύβου¹ ἔθρον κατὰ τοῦ λόφου ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα καὶ ὀλίγοι ἐάλωσαν. 3 χαλεπὸν ἔσται ὑμῖν ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ παρ-ιέναι· ἐκεῖ γὰρ οἱ Θρᾶκες μέλλουσι κατα-στήναι.² 4 πρῶτον μὲν ἐδείσαμεν προ-ιέναι, μὴ³ οἱ Θρᾶκες ἔλωσιν ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ ὀπλίται ἀφ-ίκοιτο οὐκέτι ἐκινδυνεύομεν ἀλῶναι.⁴ 5 οἱ φύλακες ἀλώσονται ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατοπέδου, εἰ μὴ ἀπ-έλθωσι πρὶν τοὺς Πέρσας ἀθροισθῆναι. 6 οἱ ἵπποι ἀπ-ήχθησαν εἰς τὴν κώμην ἐπεὶ ἦσθητο οἱ πολέμιοι ὅτι ἡμεῖς ἐπόμεθα. 7 ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐκέλευσε μὴ πράξαι, ταῦτα μὴ πράξωμεν. 8 ποῦ γάρ ποτε σὺ εἶδες φοίνικα; 9 οἱ δ' ἡμέτεροι αὐτῶν⁵ σκοποὶ ἀπ-ήγγελλον ὅτι οὐκ ἐδυνήθησαν ἰδεῖν τοὺς πολεμίους.

10 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπιμελῶς ἐπορεύθησαν· ὥντο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας· κατὰ⁶ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον σκοποὶ ἐφάνησαν ἔμπρο-

σθεν. εἶδον δὲ καὶ δύο διώρυχας ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ ἐφ' ὧν οὐ γέφυραι ἦσαν. καὶ ἀφ' ἰκοντο πρὸς τάφρον μεγάλην ἣν ἐποιήσαντο οἱ πολέμιοι ἵνα κωλύσωσιν αὐτοὺς μὴ προ-ίεναι. ἦν δὲ μέντοι παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάρ-οδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου. συν-έταξαν οὖν τοὺς φύλακας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, ἔαν⁷ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησίον ᾧσιν. καὶ ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάρ-οδον ἡ στρατιὰ παρ-ῆλθε καὶ ἐγένετο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσαντο οἱ Πέρσαι, ἀλλὰ φανερά ἦσαν⁸ καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη⁹ πολλά.

2/7 We were not able to perceive what¹⁰ the citizens were planning. 2 Many of their own men were captured in front of the camp. 3 Near the town the Thracians were gathering in large numbers. 4 At first it was difficult to march by night, but now we can fight by night or by day, whenever¹¹ the general wishes. 5 We heard a noise in our own⁵ camp and ran to arms.¹²

2/8 ¹ θορύβου 511 a.

² κατα-στήναι to take up a position there 179. The aorist infinitive with μέλλω is not common. Read 202, 2.

³ μή 611 b.

⁴ ἀλῶναι of being captured 565 a.

⁵ ἡμέτεροι αὐτῶν: the common form for the possessive reflexive in the plural instead of ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, which would be the proper form in an expression like negligent of ourselves. ἡμέτερος is declined and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

⁶ κατά down along, that is in the course of.

⁷ ἔαν in case that 652.

⁸ ἦσαν: plural for the regular singular 496.

⁹ ἵχνη tracks: nom. pl. neut. We have not had the word.

¹⁰ τί or ὅ τι.

¹¹ Use ὅποτε with the indicative or ὅποταν (ὅποτε + ἔν) with the subjunctive. Read 2/9 and examine the first three examples.

¹² εἰς or ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Compare ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις 209, 11. An accusative with a preposition is used when motion is implied.

CORRELATIVE ADVERBS

219 We have recently had the demonstrative adverb **τότε** *then*, the interrogative **πότε** *when* frequently, and in this lesson the indefinite **ποτε** *sometime, ever*. We have also had **οὕτω(ς)** *thus* and its relative **ὥς** *as*, and interrogative **πῶς** *how*. The corresponding indefinite is **πως**. For **ποῖ** *whither* the indefinite is **ποι**. As the relative stem **ὁ** in **ὅς** *who* combines with the indefinite **τις** *someone* giving **ὅστις** *whoever*, so the same relative stem **ὁ** combines with indefinite adverbs making *general relatives*. Observe that the indefinites are enclitic.

πότε ἦλθες; ἐγὼ τότε ἦλθον ὅτε ἐκέλευσας
When did you go? I went then, when you told me to.

ἦλθές ποτε σύ; ἐγὼ πολλάκις ἦλθον ὁ-πότε ἐβουλόμην
Did you ever go? I went often, whenever I wished.

πότε πέμψεις τοὺς ἵππους; ὁπότε (ὁπότε + ἄν) δύνωμαι
When will you send the horses? Whenever I can.

πῶς ποιήσεις τὴν ὁδόν; τὴν μὲν ἑτέραν πως ἐποίησα· ταύτην δὲ οὕτω ποιήσω ὅπως ἂν σὺ κελεύσης. ἀλλὰ δύναμαι ποιῆσαι ὅδὲ πως
How shall you make the road? The other I made in some way or other; but this one I shall make in whatever way you may direct. But I can make it in some such way as this.

220 These general relatives are common in quoted questions 621. We have been using hitherto the direct interrogatives.

1 οὐκ οἶσθα ὃ τι πεποίηκας

You don't know what you have done.

2 ἠρόμην αὐτὸν ὁ-πόθεν τὰ ὅπλα ἔλαβεν

I asked him where he got the arms.

3 εἶπεν ὁ-πως ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ ὅ-ποι κατα-έφυγον

He told how they got away and where they took refuge.

a In the light of the above examples (compare also 84, 85, 103) examine the -θεν, -τε, -ως, and -οι forms in 236. Notice in the general relatives that when the second part has two syllables, the accent is on the first syllable of the second part; when the second part is of one syllable, the accent is on the ὁ.

XXIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

LABIAL STEMS IN -π, -β. DENTAL STEMS IN -τ, -δ, -θ.
POSSESSIVE FORMS

221 Review 204 and a, 37, 45 a, b. Learn 112-119, ὕδωρ 120, κέρας 126, φυγὰς 145.

a See 668, 488 a for ἄρα and οὐ and μή in questions.

b The suffix -ματ 407.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

222 ἄρ-μα -ατος τό chariot

ἀσπίς -ιδος ἡ shield

ἐλπίς -ιδος ἡ hope

κέρας κέρᾱτος and κέρως τό horn;

wing of an army. rhino-ceros ρίνο-

κέρως from ρίς ρινός nose

ὄνο-μα -ατος τό *name*; γινώσκω
/99. Latin *nōmen*; ὄν-onym

στράτευ-μα -ατος τό *army, force*;
στρατεύω /39, στρατηγός 2/

τόξευ-μα -ατος τό *arrow*; τοξεύω
shoot with a bow, τοξότης *archer*
367

ὔδωρ ὕδατος τό *water*. hydr-antio,
hydrant, hydro-phobia 30

φυγᾶς -άδος ὁ *exile*; φεύγω, ἔφυγον
66

χρή-μα -ατος τό *thing of use*; τὰ

χρήματα *property, money*; χράομαι
use

ἀριστερός -ᾶ -όν *left*; ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
on the left

δεξιός -ᾶ -όν *right*; τὸ δεξιόν *the*
right wing; ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ *in the*
right hand; ἐν δεξιᾷ *on the right*.

Latin *dexter*

εὐ-ώνυμος -ον *of good name*; *left*,
used for ἀριστερός; τὸ εὐώνυμον
the left wing

εἰς-άγω *lead into*

223 Ταύτῃ τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ σκοποὶ εἰς-ἤγόν πως τὸ στρά-
τευμα εἰς τὸ ἐαυτῶν στρατόπεδον, ἐπεὶ ᾗσθοντο ὅποι¹ οἱ
Θυράκες ὥχοντο. 2 ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι εἶδομεν ἀσπί-
δας καὶ τοξεύματα πολλά, ὅπου¹ κατ-έλιπον οἱ φυγάδες
αὐτά. 3 Σῶσις τὸ ὄνομά ἐστι τῷ παιδί. 4 πολλὰς
καὶ νύκτας καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς φυγάδας
ὅποι¹ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦγεν. 5 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐφάνη-
σαν μακραὶ διώρυχες δύο μεσταὶ ὕδατος. 6 ἦρετο
ὅπου δύναται² ἰδεῖν τὰ ἄρματα ἃ οἱ πολέμιοι κατ-
έλιπον. 7 μὴ ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν οἱ κήρυκες, ἔλθωμεν ἐπὶ
τοὺς ὀπλίτας τούτους· φίλοι γὰρ ἡμῖν εἰσιν. 8 ποῖας
ἀσπίδας ἔπεμψαν πρὸς τοὺς ἐαυτῶν φύλακας; 9 πολ-
λὰ χρήματα ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν ὡς δῶρον τοῖς
πιστοῖς φύλαξι τοῖς ἐαυτῶν. 10 ἄρα μὴ ἐδύναντο
πείθειν τοὺς φύλακας ὑμῶν λείπειν τὰς ἀσπίδας; 11
ἐὰν μὴ ἐπὶ φάλαγγος συν-αγάγωσι τοὺς ὀπλίτας, οὐ
δυνησόμεθα νικῆσαι τοὺς πολεμίους. 12 ἄρα οὐκ
ἀπο-θανοῦνται οἱ ἵπποι ἐὰν μὴ δύνωνται λαβεῖν ὕδωρ
ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ; 13 ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ κέρατι τοῦ

στρατεύματος κατ-έστησαν οἱ Θρᾶκες καὶ τὰ ἄρματα,
ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ δεξιῷ οἱ ὀπλίται. 14 τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρ-
ήγγειλε Ἀγιάς λαβεῖν τὰ ὄπλα, τοὺς δὲ λοχαγούς ἐκέ-
λευσε προσ-άγειν τοὺς λόχους τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. 15 ἄρ' οἶει τοὺς Ἀραβας
γενήσεσθαι ἀγαθοὺς στρατιώτᾱς : 16 ἔλεγον ὅτι σὺν
τοῖς θεοῖς πολλαὶ ἡμῖν³ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες εἰςὶ σωτη-
ρίᾱς.

- 224 We will follow you wherever⁴ you lead and do whatever
you command. 2 Let us ask the exile how we shall arrange
the guards. 3 Whenever he comes, we send for our friends.
4 You will not proceed by night, will you ? 5 They will
send for horses wherever⁴ they can get them.

- 225 ¹ ὅ-που, ὅ-ποι : compare ποῦ, ποῖ ³ ἡμῖν . . . εἰσι we have.
84 ; ὅποι 220, 3 and see 236 ⁴ The verb determines whether
² δύναται he could. What re- to use ὅποι or ὅποθεν.
quires could instead of can ?

POSSESSIVES

- 226 ἡ ἐμὴ γνώμη *my opinion*, ἡ γνώμη μου *my opinion*
ὁ ὑμέτερος φίλος *your friend*, ὁ φίλος ὑμῶν *your friend*
ὁ τούτου ἵππος *his horse*, ὁ ἵππος αὐτοῦ *his horse*
τὰ τούτων δῶρα *their gifts*, τὰ δῶρα αὐτῶν *their gifts*

In the first set the idea of possession is more strongly emphasized than in the second set.

REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 227 ἡ ἐμὴ οἰκίᾱ, | ἡ ἐμαντοῦ οἰκίᾱ | <i>my (own)</i> |
| τὸ σὸν ὄνομα, | τὸ σεαντοῦ ὄνομα | <i>thy (own)</i> |
| | ἡ ἐαντοῦ οἰκίᾱ | <i>his (own)</i> |

ἡ ἡμετέρā οἰκίā, ἡ ἡμετέρā αὐτῶν οἰκίā *our (own)*
 τὰ ὑμέτερα δῶρα, τὰ ὑμέτερα αὐτῶν δῶρα *your (own)*
 ὁ σφέτερος, ὁ σφέτερος αὐτῶν, ὁ ἑαυτῶν *their (own)*

A reflexive generally refers to the subject of its own clause and agrees with its antecedent in *person*. The reflexive *pronoun* agrees also in gender and number with its antecedent.

- 228 The possessive pronouns when definite, and the possessive genitive of the reflexive pronouns, take the *attributive position*; the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns takes the *predicate position*. Review 101 c. Compare 554 and a. ἐμὸς φίλος or φίλος μου means *a friend of mine* 551 c.

XXIV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

ADJECTIVE STEMS IN -οντ. Πᾶς, Ἀπᾶς, Σύμπᾶς, Οἶδα

- 229 Study 155. Add to the second sentence *and the genitive plural always has -ῶν*, as in nouns of the *α*-declension.

ἀπαντ-, ἀπᾶσᾶ-					
<i>all together</i>					
ἅπᾱς	ἅπᾱσα	ἅπαν	ἅπαντ-ες	ἅπᾱσαι	ἅπαντ-α
ἅπαντ-ος	ἅπᾱσης	ἅπαντ-ος	ἅπάντ-ων	ἅπᾱσῶν	ἅπάντ-ων
ἅπαντ-ι	ἅπᾱσῃ	ἅπαντ-ι	ἅπᾱσι	ἅπᾱσαις	ἅπᾱσι
ἅπαντ-α	ἅπᾱσαν	ἅπαν	ἅπαντ-ας	ἅπᾱσᾶς	ἅπαντ-α

a Before -s in the nominative singular, -σι in the dative plural, and -σα all through the feminine, -ντ is dropt and

a becomes **ā** 53, 28 **b**. Learn 28 **b**, **πᾶς** 160, 161 **a**, **b**, 162 **a**.

230 Learn **ἄκων** 166, 167. Notice that **-οντ-s** in the feminine and in the dative plural gives **-ους** 28 **b**. Write out the declension of **ὢν** *being*, the participle of **εἶμι**: **ὢν οὔσα ὄν, ὄντος οὔσης ὄντος**. There are no irregularities in the declension of participles. Write the declension of **τοιοῦτος** *such* 212, similar to **οὗτος** 209.

231 Learn the indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **οἶδα** 386 and **b**, **c**, **d**. Compare the forms of the aorist **εἶδον** *I saw* with the corresponding forms of **οἶδα** *I know*:

TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	ἰδο:ε- <i>see</i>	εἰδ(ε)- <i>know</i>
INDICATIVE	εἶδο-ν	οἶδα
SUBJUNCTIVE	<div>ἴδ-ω ἴδ-ωμεν</div> <div>ἴδ-ῃς ἴδ-ῃτε</div> <div>ἴδ-ῃ ἴδ-ωσι</div>	<div>εἰδῶ εἰδῶμεν</div> <div>εἰδῇς εἰδῇτε</div> <div>εἰδῇ εἰδῶσι</div>
INFINITIVE	ἰδεῖν	εἰδέναι
PARTICIPLE	ιδών	ειδώς

a Check in the Verb-list **πυνθάνομαι** 261 **c** and see **χρή** 390, *one sentence*.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 232 **ἀνάγκη** -ης ἡ *force, necessity*; **ἀνάγκη** (ἔστί), **A** or **D**, and inf. clause, *it is necessary that, it must needs be, I must*
γόνυ γόνατος τό 120, *knee*. Latin *genū*
δόρυ δόρατος τό 120, *shaft, spear*
παῖς παιδός ὁ 116, *boy, son*; **παι-δεύω** 114. *pedagogue* **ἄγω** 30
πατρίς -ίδος ἡ *native land*; **πατήρ** 264. Latin *patria*

πούς ποδός ὁ 117, *foot*; τρά-πεζα

79. Latin *pēs*; *tri-pod*

πρᾶγ-μα -ατος τό *thing done, fact,*

business; trouble; πρᾶγματα παρ-
έχειν *cause trouble*; πρᾶττω 156.

pragmatic, practical

σῶ-μα -ατος τό *body; life*

ἄκων -ουσα -ον *unwilling; un-*
willingly; α- neg. + ἐκὼν

ἐκὼν -οὔσα -όν *willing; volun-*
tarily

ὅμοιος -ᾱ -ον *D like, similar*; ἅμα
173. *homoeo-pathy*

πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν *all, every, whole*;

πᾶσα ὁδός *every road*; πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός
all the road, the whole road; πᾶν-

τες οἱ παῖδες *all the boys*; πάντες

παῖδες *all boys*; sometimes ὁ πᾶς
the whole, all. pan-acea. pan-orama

ἅ-πᾶς ἅ-πᾶσα ἅ-παν *all together,*
whole

σύν-πᾶς σύν-πᾶσα σύν-παν *all to-*
gether, entire

πυνθάνομαι, *A or interrog. clause*;
G of person, and interrog. or
ἔτι clause; *A, and ptc. or inf.*
clause, inquire; learn by in-
quiry, ascertain

χρή, *A and inf. clause, it is neces-*
sary, I ought

εὐθύς *adv. immediately, at once*

τοιούτος τοιαύτη τοιοῦτο(ν) *such*

233 Καὶ τὸ ἡμέτερον ἡμῶν στράτευμα ἔχει πολλὰς ἐλπίδας τοῦ νικῆσαι.¹ 2 οὗτος ὁ παῖς ἐπαιδεύετο μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων παίδων ὅσοι ἦσαν παρ' ἡμῖν. 3 τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων δόρατα ἦν² πέντε καὶ δέκα πόδας³ μακρά. 4 ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι τοῦ στρατεύματος ἡμῶν ἐτάχθη τὰ ἄρματα. 5 τὰς μὲν ἀσπίδας εἶχον πρὸς τὰ γόνατα, τὰ δὲ δόρατα ἐν ταῖς χερσίν.⁴ 6 τὰ τοξεύματα τὰ τῶν Περσῶν μακρὰ ἦν ὅμοια δόρασιν.⁵ 7 ἄκοντες⁶ ἦλθομεν εἰς τοῦτο τὸ μεθ' ὑμῶν πρᾶγμα. 8 τοῦ σατράπου ἄκοντος⁷ οὐκ ἄρξω τῶν φυγάδων. 9 ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος κινδυνεύσομεν καὶ περὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα σώματα.⁸ 10 νυκτός τε καὶ ἡμέρας ἐκόντες συν-ειπόμεθα τῷ στρατεύματι ὑμῶν. 11 πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἔμενον ἐγὼ ἀλλ' οἱ ὑμέτεροι κήρυκες οὐκ ἦλθον. 12 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ προσ-ἦλθεν ὁ σατράπης καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθύς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἤλασε εἰς τὸ μέσον καὶ ἔλεξε

τάδε· Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε.⁹ ¹ 13 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι ἐμοί, ἀνάγκη δὴ¹⁰ μοι μεθ' ὑμῶν μένειν. εἰ μὲν δὴ¹¹ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν πορεύσομαι. 14 εἰ μὴ εἰδῆτε ὅ τι ἀνάγκη ὑμῖν ποιεῖν, τοῦτο δύνασθε πυνθάνεσθαι τοῦ σατράπου.¹² 15 οὐκ ᾔδεσαν ὅτι ὑμεῖς δύνασθε νυκτὸς πορευθῆναι. 16 ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι¹³ συμβουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρῆ¹⁴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.

- 234 We willingly advise you whenever we think you wish it.
 2 I could not persuade him to tell us what his¹⁵ name was.
 3 The shields were carried for the soldiers by slaves. 4 The road to Lydia is many parasangs long. 5 Do you not know where I can get water for our horses?

235 ¹ τοῦ νικήσαι of victory 575.

² ἦν were 496.

³ πόδας 538. The English use is the same.

⁴ ἐν ταῖς χερσίν in their hands. The word will be given later.

⁵ ὅμοια δόρασιν like spears 522. We say like to, similar to; so also in Latin.

⁶ ἄκοντες unwillingly: translated as an adverb. See 546.

⁷ ἄκοντος 589 a, example.

⁸ καὶ περὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα σώματα even at the risk of our lives.

⁹ ποιεῖτε: ποιέω. Verbs in -έω are contracted like liquid futures.

¹⁰ δὴ of course.

¹¹ εἰ δὴ whether indeed.

¹² σατράπου: a from genitive 509 a. What different idea would be given by εἰ μὴ ἴστε instead of εἰ μὴ εἰδῆτε?

¹³ πράγμασι troubles.

¹⁴ τί χρῆ ποιεῖν what we ought to do.

¹⁵ Use dative of possessor. Cp. 223, 3.



Drinking-horns.

XXV Ω-VERBS

PARTICIPLES, FORMATION AND USES

236 Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.

Formation. **a** Present, future, thematic aorist, and future passive 275, 276, 349, 310. In the active nominative singular masculine -ο-**VT-S** makes -ων 166.

b Sigmatic and liquid aorists 286; θη:ε- and η:ε- passives, and root-aorists active 309, 335, 368 **a**. In the nominative -**ανT-S** = -**ās**, -**άνT-S** = -**ǎs**, -**ένT-S** = -**éis**. -**όνT-S** = -**oús**, -**ύνT-S** = -**ús**. All **VT-** participles ending in -**s**, except the **a**-aorists, accent the ultima.

c The **κα-** and **a**-perfects 297, 333.

d Perfect middle 300 **d**.

e The -**s** in all participles nominative singular masculine is the case ending, -**a-VT-S**, -**OT-S**, -**μενο-S**.

237 The above facts may be used in this form :¹

a Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.

b **Formation.** The future passive and all middle participles add -**μενο-S** to the *tense-stem*; the active perfects substitute -**OT** for **a**, nominative -**ώς** -**ũa** -**ós**; all others add -(**VT**)-**s**.

c **Accent.** The thematic aorist active, the active perfects, and **VT**-participles ending in -**s**, except the **a**-aorists, accent the ultima; the perfect middle accents the penult.

¹ It will be better to check and study the references in 236 and use 237 for drill. This section should be learnt word for word.

238 Group in this manner :

Active stems in	-ο:ε	-ο-ντ-ς	= -ων	παύων
Active α-aorists in	-(σ)α	-(σ)α-ντ-ς	= -(σ)ᾱς	παύσᾱς
Active perfects in	-(κ)α	-(κ)-ότ	-(κ)ώς	πεπαυκώς
Passives in	-θη:ε, -η:ε	-(θ)έ-ντ-ς	= -(θ)είς	παυθείς
Other active stems in	-α	-άντ-ς	= -ᾶς	στάς
Active stems in	-ε	-έντ-ς	= -είς	εῖς
Active stems in	-ο	-όντ-ς	= -ούς	γνούς
Active stems in	-υ	-ύντ-ς	= -ῦς	δῦς
Other forms		-μενο-ς	as	πανσάμενος

239 The **declension** has already been given. Study it in **155, 166, 162 b, 164 b, 165**. Compare **169** for **γνούς**, and **170**. Learn also **εἰδώς 172**.

a Observe that the declension of all **ντ**-participles is exactly the same, when once the nominative singular masculine is made. In that form **ο:ε** before **-ντ-ς** makes **-ων**.¹ In all other forms before **-ς** the **-ντ** is dropt and the vowel is lengthened by **28** and **b**.

240 Standing alone the participles may be translated as in Latin :

παύων	<i>stopping</i>
πανόμενος	<i>stopping myself, ceasing</i>
παύσων	<i>going to stop</i>
πανσόμενος	<i>going to cease</i>

¹ But not **ο** belonging to a verb-stem, as **γνό-ντ-ς** = **γνούς**, **δό-ντ-ς** = **δούς**, **ἄλό-ντ-ς** = **ἄλούς**.

παύσᾱς	<i>stopping, having stopt</i>
παυσάμενος	<i>ceasing, having ceased</i>
πεπαυκώς	<i>having stopt</i>
πεπαυμένος	<i>having ceased, having been stopt, being stopt</i>
πεπαυσόμενος	<i>going to be stopt (state)</i>
παυθείς	<i>stopt, being stopt, having been stopt</i>
παυθησόμενος	<i>going to be stopt (act)</i>

. PARTICIPLES

241

VERB-STEM. MEANING . .	βαλ-, βλη- <i>throw</i>	κριν-, κρι- <i>judge</i>	γνο·ω- <i>come to know</i>
PRES. ACT.	βάλλον	κρίνων	γιγνώσκων
MID., PASS.	βαλλό-μενος	κρίνό-μενος	γιγνώσκó-μενος
FUT. ACT.	βαλῶν	κρινῶν	
FUT. MID.	βαλού-μενος	κρινού-μενος	γνωσό-μενος
AOR. ACT.	βαλὼν	κρίνᾱς	γνούς
AOR. MID.	βαλό-μενος	κρίνᾱ-μενος	
PERF. ACT.	βεβληκώς	κεκρικώς	ἐγνωκώς
PF. MID., PS.	βεβλη-μένος	κεκρι-μένος	ἐγνωσ-μένος
FUT. PF. PS.	βεβλησό-μενος		
AOR. PASS.	βληθείς	κριθείς	γνωσθείς
FUT. PASS.	βληθησό-μενος	κριθησό-μενος	

Write similar tables if needed. Hereafter include participles in the partial synopses by tense-systems, which should be written every day. Arrange in this order: *Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Participle.*

242 Observe the following :

a οἱ ὄπλα ἔχοντες *those who have arms*

b οἱ ὄπλα ἔχοντες ἔμενον *those who had arms remained*

c οἱ ταῦτα εἰπόντες πάρ-εισιν *those who said this are present*

d οἱ ταῦτα λέξοντες παρήσαν *there were present men who will say this*

e ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀπ-ῆλθεν *after saying this he went away*

Notice that in *a* the time of the participle is present or universal ; in *b* present for ἔμενον ; in *c* and *e* past ; in *d* future. Read 580 and *a*, 581 and *a*.

243 Examine 582 *a*, *b*, *c*, 583 *a* *end*, and *b*, 585 *a*, *b*, 586 *a*, 587, 589, in connection with the references in the exercise. See τυγχάνω 261 *c* in the Verb-list.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

244 ἀ-δύνατος -ον *unable, impossible* ; τυγχάνω (i hit, reach, obtain ; with
α- neg. and δύναμαι 167 pred. ptc., happen, chance

245 Πάντες οἱ παρ-όντες εἶδον τὸν κήρυκα. 582 *a*. 2 πάντες ὅσοι παρ-ῆσαν ἐπέμφθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄρχοντος. 582 *a*. 3 οἱ τὸν λόφον λαβόντες κατ-ελήφθησαν¹ πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀφ-ικέσθαι. 582 *a*. 4 ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης τοὺς μὴ δυναμένους ἑαυτῶν ἄρχειν οὐκ ἔφη² δυνήσεσθαι ἄλλων ἄρχειν. 582 *c*. 5 βουλόμενος οὖν λέγειν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα συν-αγαγεῖν καὶ ἡμᾶς πάντας τοὺς οὐ παρ-όντας³ and συν-αγαγεῖν πάντας τοὺς μὴ παρ-όντας. 583, 582 *c*. 6 οὗτοι οὐ δυνάμενοι ἀπο-φυγεῖν

ἀπ-έθανον. 583. 7 νυκτός τε καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες. 583. 8 ταῦτα ἀκούσασιν τοῖς φύλαξιν ἔδοξεν⁴ ἀπ-ελθεῖν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 583. 9 ἔπεμψα τὸν παῖδα ληψόμενον ὕδωρ τῷ ἵππῳ ἐκ τῆς διώρυχος. 583 b. 10 αἱ ἄμαξαι ἐφ' ὧν ἦγοντο αἱ ἀσπίδες καὶ τὰ δόρατα καὶ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐτύχανον οὕσαι⁵ ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι. 585 a. 11 Μένων δῆλος ἦν οἰόμενος⁶ σοφὸς εἶναι. 585 a. 12 τὰ ἄρματα ἰδόντες⁷ οὐκ ἐδύναντο παύεσθαι φεύγοντες. 583, 585 b. 13 εἶδον Ξενίαν φεύγοντα. 586 a. 14 οἶδα αὐτὸν φυγόντα. οἶδα αὐτὸν φεύγοντα. 586 a. 15 εἶδομεν⁸ ἀδύνατοι ὄντες ἀπο-φυγεῖν. ἤδεσαν⁹ ἡμᾶς ἀδυνάτους ὄντας ἀπο-φυγεῖν. 587, 586 a. 16 τοῦ ἐμοῦ φίλου ἄκοντος οὐ πορεύσομαι. 589 a.

- 246 Taking the horses they proceeded by night keeping the river on the right. 583. 2 All who could not fight were captured by the Persians. 582 c. 3 We knew that the road was long and difficult.¹⁰ 586 a. 4 We happen to be present whenever he speaks. 585 a. 5 They were evidently marching as rapidly as they could. 585 a. 6 They did not cease fleeing until they reached¹¹ the camp. 585 b.

247 ¹ κατ-ελήφθησαν: aor. pass. of κατα-λαμβάνω capture.

² οὐκ ἔφη δυνήσεσθαι used to say they would not be able.

³ παρ-όντας: παρών ptc. of παρ-εἶναι be present.

⁴ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς they decided.

⁵ οὔσαι: ptc. fem. of ὤν being, agreeing with ἄμαξαι the subject of ἐτύχανον.

⁶ δῆλος ἦν οἰόμενος he evidently thought.

⁷ ἰδόντες seeing: aor. ptc. of εἶδον I saw. Translate when they saw.

⁸ εἶδομεν we saw.

⁹ ἤδεσαν they knew; imperf. of οἶδα know.

¹⁰ χαλεπός -ή -όν.

¹¹ Use the proper form of ἀφικνεόμαι with εἰς or ἐπὶ.

COMPARISON OF IDIOMS

248 In studying participles mark sharply what is like the English:

a Like the Greek idioms in 582 a and b are these English expressions: *the fleeing prisoner; the captured rebel; a running brook; a finished task; the dying; the wounded. All desiring to remain may do so.*

b As in 583 we have in English: *Taking the money he went away. Standing at the entrance he watched them passing out.*

c 585 a πολλάκις φανερός ἦν λέγων *he was frequently seen talking; δι-ῆγε λέγων he kept saying.* These are common English idioms.

d Like 585 b and c, we say: *He did not cease lamenting. He began speaking. He went dashing down the field.*

e *I saw him running* is not quite the same as *I saw that he was running*, though Greek expresses both by the participle: εἶδον αὐτὸν θέοντα 586 a.

f *All opposing, I had to desist* is similar to the form in 589.

249 There remain then only three points that are unfamiliar:

a The Greek frequently requires the article where we omit it: *all desiring* is πάντες οἱ βουλόμενοι, *anyone desiring* is ὁ βουλόμενος.

b In ἐτύγχανον λέγων *I happened to be saying* we must use the infinitive, or say *by chance I was saying*, or some equivalent.

c In οἶδα αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα *I know that he is dead*, οἶδα οὐ σοφὸς ὦν *I know that I am not wise*, we use a *that* clause; and the Greek frequently uses a ὅτι clause.

Of course all these forms above we may translate into any idiom that suits the context.

XXVI PARTICIPLES

THE GENITIVE ABSOLUTE. Ὡς WITH THE PARTICIPLE.
NUMERALS

250 **a** Learn the first twenty **cardinal** numbers **188**, and **186–189 a**.

b Review **580–587**, **589**, **590**. Examine **588** for reference. Study **592**, **593 c**.

25/ As we have seen, the **subject** of the predicate participle is omitted when it is the same as that of the leading verb, and participle and modifiers of the subject agree with the subject of the leading verb **587**. Compare **571** and **62**.

βούλομαι εἶναι σοφός *I wish to be wise*

οἶδα αὐτὸς οὐκ ὦν σοφός *I know that I myself
am not wise*

But οἶδα τοῦτον οὐκ ὄντα σοφόν *I know that HE is
not wise*

252 **Tenses 581 a.** Compare **577 a** and 6/. The negative remains unchanged.

ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα, πορευσόμεθα, ἐπορεύθημεν
We are advancing, we shall advance, we advanced.

ἔφη ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι, πορεύσεσθαι, πορευθῆναι
He said that we were were going to had
advancing, advance, advanced.

ᾗσθητο ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, πορευσομένους, πορευθέντας
He perceived that we were going to had
were advancing, advance, advanced.

a See the Verb-list for λανθάνω **261 c**, -λέγω *gather*, μανθάνω **261 c**, τρέπω, τρέφω, φθάνω **261 a**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

253 πεζός -ή -όν *afoot; foot-soldier; οἱ πεζοὶ the infantry; πεζῇ on foot* /25; ποῦς 232

μηδεῖς, οὔδεῖς -εμία, -έν *not one, no one, differing as the simple μή and οὐ; μηδέ, οὐδέ + εἰς*

δι-αρπάζω *tear apart, plunder, sack; διὰ + ἀρπάζω seize. Harpy*

ἐπι-τρέπω *D give over to, entrust; D and inf. clause, allow, permit; ἐπί + τρέπω turn*

λανθάνω *lie hid; A escape the notice of. Latin lateō; leth-argy*

μανθάνω *learn, understand. math-ematics*

ἰών, ptc. of ἵεναι, *going, marching*
 προσ-ιέναι *come to, approach, advance*

συλ-λέγω *bring together, collect; pass. come together; σύν + λέγω gather*

τρέφω *nourish, support, maintain; keep, as ἵππον τρέφω*

φθάνω *A get the start of, anticipate*

οὕτω πράττω *fare thus, meet with this result; εὖ or καλῶς πράττω am successful; κακῶς πράττω fare ill, am unfortunate*

* αὖ adv. *again, in turn, on the other hand*

254 Ὁ νεανίας ἐλθὼν συν-εβουλεύσατο τῷ θεῷ. 583.

2 Σωκράτης ἐκέλευσε τὸν νεανίαν εἰς Δελφοὺς ἐλ-

θόντα συμ-βουλεύσασθαι τῷ θεῷ. συμ-βουλεύει τῷ νεανίᾳ ἐλθόντα (ἐλθόντι) συμ-βουλεύσασθαι. 583. 3 οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπ-ῆλθον ἔχοντες τὰ ἄρματα. 583, 583 a end. 4 ταύτην τὴν χώρᾱν ἐπέτρεψε δι-αρπάσαι τοῖς φύλαξι ὡς πολεμίᾱν οὖσαν. 593 c. 5 ἐπ-εβούλευε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ὡς ἄρξων τοῦ στρατεύματος αὐτ' ἐκείνων. 593 c. 6 ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συν-ελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-εβουλεύσαντο ὡς πορευσόμενοι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. 583, 593 c, 583 b. 7 ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν ἦσθετο τὸν φίλον τεθνηκότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς πάντας ὧν ἦρχεν. 586 a, 583. 8 τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς ἐστὶ Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἐστίν. ἡμεῖς δ' οὖν ἀν-έβημεν ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδομεν τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. 583, 584, 588 a, 589. 9 ὁ μὲν σατράπης μάχῃ ἀπ-έθανε καλῶς μαχόμενος, ἡμεῖς δ' οὐκ ἦσμεν τεθνηκότα τοῦτον. 583, 586 a. 10 προ-ιόντες ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τεττάρων ὁψόμεθα τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους τοὺς τῶν Ἀράβων. 583, 506 a, ex. 4. 11 προσ-ιοῦσι αὐτοῖς τῇ σάλπιγγι ἐσήμηνε Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. 583. 12 καὶ ἔφθησαν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους. 585 a. 13 φθησόμεθα τοὺς φίλους κατα-λαβόντες τοὺς φεύγοντας. 585 a, 582 a. 14 τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ὁ σατράπης ἔλαβεν ὧδε· Κλεάρχῳ ἐπεμψε πολλὰ χρήματα· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν τούτοις τοῖς χρήμασι. 583. 15 οὕτω δὲ αὖ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον. 585 a. 16 λαβόντες τοὺς πεζοὺς

ἐλάθομεν τοὺς φύλακας ἀπ-ελθόντες νυκτός.
 583, 585 a. 17 εὐθύς παῖδες ὄντες μαυθάνουσιν
 ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. 592, 588 c. 18 εἰάν μηδεὶς
 ἔλθῃ, ἀνάγκη δὲ ἔσται ἡμῖν πορευθῆναι μόνοις. 19
 μὴ δια-βῶμεν τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀφικέ-
 σθαι. 20 φίλοι μὲν ἦσαν αὐτῷ πολλοί, ὀλίγοι δὲ
 πολέμοι.

THE GENITIVE ABSOLUTE

255 When there is a word in the sentence with which the participle can agree, the genitive absolute is not commonly used, nor is the Greek forced to the absolute construction for lack of a participle as the Latin is. The participle ὢν *being* should not be omitted. The Latin has none.

a *Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbātur*
 προ-πέμψας δὲ τοὺς ἱππέας Καῖσαρ ἐφ-είπετο
Sending forward the cavalry, Caesar followed after.

b *Hāc ōrātiōne habitā adsēdit*
 ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐκαθέζετο
After these remarks he took his seat.

c *Hōc factō eōs ab sē dimīsīt*
 ταῦτα ποιήσας ἀπ-επέμψατο αὐτοὺς
After he had done this, he let them depart.

d But *Eō praesente nōlō dicere*
 τούτου παρ-όντος οὐ βούλομαι εἰπεῖν
I prefer not to speak in this man's presence.

XXVII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

LIQUID STEMS. NUMERALS

256 a Review 187, 188, 189. Learn the cardinal numbers through one hundred in 188 and 190.

b Study the paradigms 99–103 a, c, d; εὐδαίμων 147, 148. ν disappears before -σι in the dative plural without vowel-lengthening.

c Learn πῦρ 142, 8; χεῖρ 142, 10.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 257 ἀγών -ῶνος ὁ *gathering; contest, games; ἀγῶνα ποιεῖν hold games; ἄγω 30. Latin agmen; agony, ant-agonist*
 Ἕλλην -ηνος ὁ *Greek; Ἕλληνι-κός 9/*
 ἡγεμών -όνος ὁ *leader, guide; ἄγω 30. hegemony*
 λιμὴν -ένος ὁ *harbor*
 μῆν μηνός ὁ *month. Latin mēnsis*
 πῦρ πυρός τό *fire. pyre, pyrotechnic*
 ῥήτωρ -ορος ὁ *orator. rhetoric ἡ ῥητορική 425 end*
 χεῖρ χειρός ἡ *hand. chiro-graphy γράφω 114*
 χιών χιόνος ἡ *snow*
 εὐ-δαίμων -ον *happy, prosperous; εἶ 139 + δαίμων divinity*
 σῶ-φρων -ον *of sound mind, sensible, discreet*
 ἐπ-ιέναι *go on, come up; D go against, attack*
 καθ-οράω *look down on; observe; κατά + ὁράω 186 c, 320*
 ὑπ-έρ-βάλλω *throw beyond; cross over, cross. hyperbole*
 ὑπο-μένω *stay behind; A wait for*
 ὁμ-ως adv. *all the same, nevertheless, however; ἄμα 173*

258 Οἱ ἡγεμόνες ὑμῶν φανεροί εἰσι σοφοί τε καὶ σῶφρονες ὄντες. 2 τρεῖς μῆνας οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦγον ἡμᾶς διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος. 3 αὐται αἱ κῶμαι εἰς ἃς ἀφ-ϊκόμεθα ἦσαν μεγάλαι τε καὶ εὐδαίμονες. 4 ὁψόμεθα ἐκεῖ πολλὰ μακρὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῷ λιμένι. 5 ὁ μὲν ἀγὼν ἰσχυρὸς ἦν, ἡ δὲ νίκη καλή· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς πατρίδος ἐμαχόμεθα.

6 οἱ ῥήτορες ἔλεγον τοῖς πολίταις περὶ τῆς πατρίδος αὐτῶν. 7 χαλεπά ἐστι τὰ παρ-όντα διὰ τὸ¹ τοὺς στρατηγούς τεθνηκέναι ἡμῶν. 8 οἱ φύλακες ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν ἔχοντες τὰ δόρατα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ ἡνίκα ἐφάνησαν ἔμπροσθεν οἱ βάρβαροι προσ-ιόντες ὥς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα.

A LITTLE DIVERSION

259 Ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην ἄνδρας² δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ σκοποὶ κατ-ιδεῖν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ σῶφρων ἦν ἀπ-αγγέλλων τὰ ὄντα³ τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα⁴ δὲ συλ-λαβὼν ἤκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα ὅπλα Περσικά. ἐρωτώμενος⁵ δὲ τίς ἐστι, Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου ἵνα ἐπιτήδεια λάβῃ. οἱ δὲ ἤροντο αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα⁶ πόσον τέ ἐστι καὶ διὰ τί⁷ συν-ειλεγμένον.⁸ ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Τιρίβαζός ἐστιν, ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ στρατιὰν καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς Χάλυβας τε καὶ Ταόχους· μέλλειν δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς, οὗ ἦν μόνη πάρ-οδος, ἐνταῦθα ἐπ-ιέναι τοῖς Ἑλλησι παρ-ιοῦσιν.

Ἀκούσασι⁹ ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα συν-αγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας κατα-λιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα¹⁰ τὸν ἀλόντα¹¹ ἄνθρωπον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερ-έβαλλον τὰ ἄκρα, οἱ πελτασταὶ προσ-ιόντες καὶ κατ-ιδόντες τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον¹² οὐχ ὑπ-έμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ

ἀπ-έθανόν τινες¹³ τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς¹⁴ εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιριβάζου ἔάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ πολλὰ χρήματα. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπύθοντο¹⁵ ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπ-ιέναι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἐαυτῶν στρατόπεδον, δεδοικότες μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπ-ίωσι¹⁶ τοῖς κατα-λελειμμένοις.¹⁷ καὶ εὐθὺς κελεύσαντες τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ ἀφ-ίκοντο τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

- 260 We could see no one coming up with the guide. 2 Few leaders¹⁸ were seen going into the contests. 3 We found¹⁹ the horses well kept. 4 We are all willing²⁰ to incur danger for our native country, even at the risk of our lives.²¹ 5 In the same month²² boats were brought into the harbor. 6 We have never ceased planning for our native country.

26/ ¹ διὰ τὸ . . . τεθνηκέναι: translate as a clause *because of the fact that*, or *because our generals are dead*.

² ἄνδρας δό-ντ-ες giving him men. Cp. for form Latin *dantēs*, *dō*, *dare*.

³ τὰ ὄντα facts as facts.

⁴ ἄνδρα a man: cp. ἄνδρας. Translate *seized and brought back a man who carried*. Note the agreement and use of each participle.

⁵ ἐρωτῶμενος being asked: pres. pass. ptc. of ἐρωτάω. See /57, 2 and /59, 1.

⁶ στράτευμα: the English order is πόσον τὸ στράτευμά ἐστιν.

⁷ διὰ τί for *what purpose*? διὰ on account of (*what*)?

⁸ συν-ειλεγμένον: perf. ptc. pass. of συλ-λέγω.

⁹ ἀκούσᾱσι: notice the lack of

conjunction, frequent with forms of οἶτος 600 (2).

¹⁰ ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα taking as a guide. ἡγεμόνα is in apposition with ἄνθρωπον.

¹¹ ἄλόντα: aor. ptc. of ἀλίσκομαι. Notice the other forms of ἔαλων in this selection.

¹² θόρυβον: we had the genitive before 2/6, 2.

¹³ τινες some.

¹⁴ εἰς with numerals means *about*, *to the number of*.

¹⁵ ἐπύθοντο: aor. of πυνθάνομαι.

¹⁶ ἐπ-ίωσι: subjv. of ἐπ-ιέναι.

¹⁷ κατα-λελειμμένοις: perf. ptc. pass. of κατα-λείπω.

The importance of participles is indicated by the fact that there are twenty-five in this selection.

¹⁸ Use a participle.

¹⁹ κατα-λαμβάνω.

²¹ Compare 233, 9 and note.

²⁰ Express by ἐκὼν agreeing with the subject.

²² See 527 c.

THE PARTICIPLE

262 The wide range of the **Uses of the Participle** does not admit of their close tabulation. The following is intended merely to be suggestive.

Time 581 and a, 252. Negative οὐ or μή 582 c

I *Attributive*, with or without the article

a Agreeing with a noun 582, 248 a

b Used as a noun 582 a, 248 a

II *Circumstantial*, without the article, representing a phrase or finite verb clause and modifying the main action

a Agreeing with a noun or pronoun in subject or predicate 583 and a, b, 248 b

b As a *Genitive Absolute* 589, 590, 255

c As an *Accusative Absolute*, mostly impersonal 591

III *Predicate*, without the article, agreeing with

a The Subject, with

1 Verbs like τυγχάνω, λανθάνω, φαίνομαι, δηλός εἰμι 585 a, 248 c

2 Verbs meaning *begin* and *cease* 585 b, 248 d

3 Οἶχομαι 585 c, 248 d

4 Verbs meaning *perceive* and *know*, stating a fact; equivalent to a ὅτι clause. 587, 251

b The Object, with

1 Verbs meaning *perceive*, *know*, *remember*, *show*, *make known*, stating a fact; equivalent to a ὅτι clause. 586 a, b, 248 e

2 Verbs meaning *perceive* (as *see*, *hear*), *find*, *catch*, describing an act or state. 586 a, 248 e

With some verbs participles are so used that it is not always easy to determine, and certainly not necessary to name, the use. In such cases the meaning is not in doubt.

XXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

STEMS IN **-ερ**. REFLEXIVE AND OTHER PRONOUNS.
CORRELATIVE ADVERBS

263 **a** Learn **άνήρ, πατήρ, μήτηρ, θυγάτηρ** 105–107; **άλλήλων** 202.

b Review pronouns **194–204** and 226, 227, 228; 557.

c Review adverbs **236** and 219, 220.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

264 **άδελφός -ού ό** brother. Adelphi.

Phil-adelphia φίλος 21

άνήρ άνδρός ό man; equivalent to

Latin *vir*; cp. *άνθρωπος* 39

θυγάτηρ -τρός ή daughter

μήτηρ μητρός ή mother. Latin *māter*.

πατήρ πατρός ό father. Latin *pater*

ύπ-οψιά -ας ή suspicion; *όψομαι* 186 *ο όράω, syn opsia, optio*

χάρις -ιτος ή graciousness, gratitude, thanks; *χάριν οίδα* or *έχω* am thankful. eu-charist

άξιος -α -ον G worth, worthy of; *άγω* 30. axiom

κοινός -ή -όν common, public. *epi-oepe*

πάσχω experience, undergo, am treated; *εύ* or *άγαθόν* *πάσχω* am

well treated, receive benefits; *κα-κώς* or *κακόν* *πάσχω* am badly treated, am injured. See 154 and *έπαθον* 86. *pathos, a-pathy, sym-pathy* *σύν* 178

εύ or *άγαθόν* *ποιώ* A treat well, do a favor to; *κακώς* or *κακόν* *ποιώ* A treat ill, injure. Cp. *εύ πράττω* 253

συν-γίγνομαι D am with, associate with, meet; *γίγνομαι* 187

ώφελέω A help, assist

ώς-περ conj. adv. 216, just as

άλλήλων reciprocal pron. one another, each other. *par-allel*

άμφότερος -α -ον, usually plural, both. For position cp. *οὗτος* and see 554.

* **γε** intensive particle 671 b, yet, at least

265 Ὅτε ἡμεῖς ἐμαχόμεθα ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος, ὑμεῖς ἐπεβουλευέτε τοῖς πολίταις. 2 ἐγὼ μὲν τοῖς καλοῖς τε καὶ ἀγαθοῖς φίλος εἰμί, σὺ δὲ συγγίγναι τοῖς κακοῖς. 3 εἶδομεν τὸν πατέρα σου ἔχοντα καὶ ἀσπίδα καὶ δόρατα. 4 ἡμεῖς γε ὦμεν ἀξιοὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ μὴ φύγωμεν. 5 ἂν μὴ πείθῃ¹ τῷ σεαυτοῦ πατρί, οὐ σοφὸς εἶ. ἔσει. 6 πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες ἔσονται ἀγαθοὶ πολῖται, καὶ² ἂν μὴ ἀκούωσι τῶν ῥητόρων λεγόντων. 7 ἡμεῖς μὲν τὰ ἡμέτερα αὐτῶν πλοῖα ληψόμεθα, ὑμῖν δὲ ἀνάγκη ἔσται τὰ ἄλλα λαβεῖν. 8 ὁ νεανίας τῇ μητρὶ χάριν ἔχει διὰ πολλά. 9 ὁ ἄρχων ἀφ-ηρέθη³ ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἀνδρῶν. 10 τί ἐμὲ ἄκοντα ἔπεμψας; 11 ἀμφοτέροι οἱ ἀδελφοί μου παρ-ῆσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ ἀμφοτέροι ἀπ-έθανον μαχόμενοι. 12 χάριν οἶδά σοι ὅσων⁴ ἐποίησάς μοι.⁵ πολλὴν χάριν ἔχομεν ὑμῖν ὧν⁶ εὖ ἐποιήσατε ἡμᾶς. 13 ἐφυλάττοντο⁷ δὲ ἀμφοτέροι ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρ-εῖχεν.⁸ 14 ἐβουλόμην ὠφελῆσαι αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον⁹ ὑπ' ἐκείνου. 15 τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ μετὰ πολλῶν ἀλλὰ μετ' ὀλίγων ἦλθον οἱ βάρβαροι. 16 ἡ πατρίς ἐστὶ κοινὴ μήτηρ ἡμῶν πάντων. 17 ἄξω ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἑλληνες, εἰς τὴν ἑμαντοῦ χώραν. 18 ἔγωγε μὲν πιστεύω σοί· σὺ δὲ ἐμοὶ πιστεύεις; 19 μετ-επέμψατο Ἀστυάγης τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θυγατέρα καὶ τὸν παῖδα αὐτῆς.

266 Both my father and mother were with them. 2 These men were grateful to the orator for his speech.¹⁰ 3 He saw his own men dying before his eyes.¹¹ 4 Our native country is dear to us all. 5 I fear that they can not govern themselves¹² without us.

- 267 ¹ πείθῃ *obey*: subjv. mid.
² καὶ ἂν *even if* 670 a.
³ ἀφ-ἡρέθη *was rescued*: aor. pass. of ἀφ-αίρέω.
⁴ ὅσων *for all that* 509 c.
⁵ μοι: a *for* dative; not like the use of the accusative ἡμᾶς below.
⁶ ὧν εἰς *for the favors that*.
- ⁷ ἐφυλάττοντο 500 b. It takes an object in the accusative, ἀλλήλους.
⁸ παρ-εἶχεν *occasioned, caused*.
⁹ ἀνθ' ὧν εἰς ἔπαθον *in return for the favors I had received*. See ἀντί/67.
¹⁰ Compare numbers 8 and 12.
¹¹ Write *before himself*.
¹² Use the genitive. Cp. 245, 4.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

268 A reflexive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender; its case depends on its construction. Examine 269–273 carefully and use for reference:

269 The reflexive regularly refers to the most important word *in its own clause*, usually the subject, sometimes another word, **Direct Reflexive**. Compare *sē*, *suus* in Latin, West's *Grammar* 421, 1, 423.

δύναμαι ἐμαυτὸν σῶζειν *I can save myself*.
ὁπότ' ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν *when you recognized your own power*.
δύνασθε ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἄρχειν *you can govern yourselves*.
ἀπ-έπεμψεν τούτους εἰς τὴν ἐαυτῶν χώρᾱν *he sent these back to their own country*.

270 In subordinate clauses a reflexive sometimes refers to the subject of the *leading* clause, **Indirect Reflexive**. Compare *sē* in Latin, West's *Grammar* 421, 2.

ἐβούλετο Κλέαρχος τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην *Klearchos wished the army to be devoted to him*.

271 Frequently however the simple αὐτοῦ, αὐτῷ, αὐτῶν in subordinate clauses is used instead of a reflexive referring to the subject of the leading clause.

τῶν παρ' αὐτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπ-εμέλετο ἵνα εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχωσιν αὐτῷ *he took care that the barbarians at his own court should be well disposed toward him.* οὗτος τῷ σατράπῃ εἶπεν ὅτι ἐὰν αὐτῷ δῷ στρατιώτας, αἰρήσει τοὺς πολεμίους *he told the satrap that if he would give him soldiers he would capture the enemy.*

272 We find also both in one clause referring to the subject.

συγ-καλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά *he called together in his own tent seven Persian nobles of his staff.* In 271 αὐτῷ and αὐτῷ refer to the same person, but are in different clauses.

273 In τοὺς ἐμούς παῖδας ἀφ-εἴλετο καὶ ἐμὲ αὐτόν *he rescued my sons and me myself*, neither ἐμούς nor ἐμὲ αὐτόν are reflexive, but both are emphatic. Review in this connection 227, 228.

XXIX Ω-VERBS

THE OPTATIVE MODE, FORMATION AND SOME USES

274 **Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367, 382, 384.**

Formation. a Forms in -οιμι and -οίμην, present and future 270, thematic aorist 347, active perfects 295, 333, future and future perfect passives 310, 301.

b Forms in -αιμι and -αίμην, sigmatic and liquid aorists 283, 328.

c Forms in *-ίν*, *θη:ε-* and *η:ε-* passives and root-aorists active **306, 335, 368 a.**

d The perfect middle and compound forms of the perfect active **300 b, 295 end.**

e The only irregularity of inflection is in the *α*-aorists active **283.**

f Accent **14 a, 306 end.**

275 A condensed statement of the above facts is given in **b-f**:¹

a Paradigms **252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367, 382, 384.**

b Stems. In the optative, tense-stems in *ο:ε* use *ο*, and active perfects have *ο* in place of *α*.

c Mode-suffix. The optative has three mode-suffixes, *-ι*, *-ιη*, *-ιε*. In the singular before active endings in the *μ*i-form² and contract forms,³ use *-ιη*; in the third plural before the ending *-ν* use *-ιε*; elsewhere use *-ι*.⁴

d Endings. The optative has the secondary endings, but with *-μ*i instead of *-ν* in the *ω*-form.⁵ In the third plural, when *-ιη* is used, it takes *-σαν*, as *είεν* or *είησαν* of *εἶμι* *am*. The middle endings are used as in the indicative, *-σο* becoming *-ο*.

e Accent. Final *αι* and *οι* do not affect the accent as short vowels, and in the *μ*i-form the accent does not go back of the mode-suffix.

¹ The references in 274 should be studied and checked in the *Grammar* and 275 should be learnt word for word and used for drill.

² See /92.

³ Contracts will be given later.

⁴ This rule answers all practical purposes for writing. Do not use the longer forms in the plural, unless so requested. *είησαν* is the only one likely to occur for a long time.

⁵ See /92.

f The α-aorists active have three irregular forms -ειας, -ειε, and -ειαν, the common prose forms.

276 Using the following tense-stems, the same for all modes, group as below: παυο:ε-, παυσο:ε-, παυσα-, φηνα-, λιπο:ε-, πεπαυκα-, λελοιπα-, πεπαυ-, πεπαυσο:ε-, παυθη:ε-, παυθησο:ε-, φανη:ε-, φανησο:ε-, βα:η-, γνο:ω-.

OPTATIVES

Ω-FORM	FORMS WITH TENSE-SUFFIX ENDING IN -ο:ε OR -α		
PRESENT	παύο-ι-μι παυο-ί-μην	AORISTS	λίπο-ι-μι λιπο-ί-μην παύσα-ι-μι παυσα-ί-μην φήνα-ι-μι φηνά-ι-μην
FUTURES	παύσο-ι-μι παυσο-ί-μην παυθησο-ί-μην πεπαυσο-ί-μην		
PERFECTS	πεπαυσο-ί-μην πεπαύκο-ι-μι λελοίπο-ι-μι		
Μι-FORM	FORMS WITHOUT TENSE-SUFFIX		
PERFECTS COMPOUND	πεπαυκῶς ε-ἴη-ν πεπαυμένος ε-ἴη-ν	AORISTS	παυθε-ίη-ν φανε-ίη-ν βα-ίη-ν γνο-ίη-ν

a The presents δύναμαι *can* and ἐπίσταμαι *know*, as also the aorist ἐπριάμην, though without tense-suffix, are not made as μι-forms either in the subjunctive (compare /66, /72) or the optative. They have recessive accent 365 a:

Subjunctive δύνωμαι δύνῃ δύνῃται δυνώμεθα δύνῃσθε δύνωνται. So ἐπίστωμαι and πρίωμαι.

Optative

TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	δυνα- <i>can</i>	ἐπιστα- <i>know</i>	πρια- <i>buy</i>
SINGULAR	δυναίμην δύναιο δύναιτο	ἐπισταίμην ἐπίσταιο ἐπίσταιτο	πριαίμην πρίαιο πρίαιτο
PLURAL	δυναίμεθα δύναισθε δύναιντο	ἐπισταίμεθα ἐπίσταισθε ἐπίσταιντο	πριαίμεθα πρίαισθε πρίαιντο

277 After learning the optative inflections write out partial synopses on the tense-stems in 276. Hereafter include the optative in the daily synopsis, putting it after the subjunctive. Use the following for models:

PARTIAL SYNOPSSES

	PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE MIDDLE	SIGMATIC AORIST ACTIVE	SIGMATIC AORIST MIDDLE
TENSE-STEM } MEANING	παυο:ε- <i>stop</i>	παυσο:ε- <i>cease</i>	καλεσα- <i>call</i>	ἀρξα- <i>begin</i>
IND.	παύω ἔπαυον	παύσομαι	ἐκάλεσα	ἤρξαμην
SUBJV.	παύω		καλέσω	ἄρξωμαι
OPT.	παύοιμι	παυσοίμην	καλέσαιμι	ἀρξάιμην
IMPV.				
INF.	παύειν	παύεσθαι	καλέσαι	ἄρξασθαι
PTC.	παύων	παυόμενος	καλέσας	ἀρξάμενος

THEMATIC AORIST ACTIVE	THEMATIC AORIST MIDDLE	PERFECT ACTIVE	AORIST Θη:ε- PASSIVE	ROOT- AORIST ACTIVE	ROOT- AORIST ACTIVE
λαβο:ε- <i>take</i>	γενο:ε- <i>become</i>	ήχα- <i>drive</i>	άχθη:ε- <i>drive</i>	βα:η- <i>go</i>	γνο:ω- <i>recognize</i>
έλαβον λάβω λάβοιμι	έγενόμην γένωμαι γενοίμην	ήχα ήχη ήχω ήχοιμι	ήχθην άχθω άχθειν	έβην βω βαίην	έγνων γνώ γνοίην
λαβεῖν λαβών	γενέσθαι γενόμενος	ήχέναι ήχως	άχθηναι άχθείς	βήναι βάς	γνώναι γνούς

278 We begin here the **Uses of the Optative.**

Tenses **483.** Compare **475** and **45, 60, 63, 119.**

I In Optative Sentences, *Independent*

a In *Wishes*, with or without **εἴθε** or **εἰ γάρ**, **476, 477**

Time future. Negative **μή**

b With **ἄν**, *Hypothetical Optative*, **479, 480**

Time commonly future or universal. Negative **οὐ**

279 **a** The Indicative in *Hopeless Wishes*, negative **μή**, **470, a, b.**

b The *Hypothetical Indicative*, negative **οὐ**, **461, c, d, 467 c, 468, a, b.**

c See the Verb-list for **δέχομαι**, **δφείλω**, **σφζω**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

280 **δέχομαι** *receive, accept*; **δεξιός** **222**

δφείλω *owe*; aor. **ῶφελον** with inf.
ought, would that

παρα-γίγνομαι *am present, arrive.*

See **παρ-εῖναι** /79

σφζω *save, rescue*; **σώφρων** **257**

ἄλλως adv. *otherwise, in another way*; **ἄλλος** **21**

ἴσως adv. *equally; perhaps*; **ἴσος**
equal. iso-thermal, iso-soeles

μή-ποτε, οὐ-ποτε adv. *not ever, never*; differing as the simple μή ποτε in the general vocabulary and οὐ; μή and οὐ + ποτε 215. See ὅτι conj. 622 b, *because*

281 Εὖ πράττοις. εἰ γὰρ ἴδοιτε τοὺς φίλους. μηδέποτε κακῶς πάθοις.¹ 476, 477. 2 μηδὲν² κακὸν ποιήσειαν ἡμᾶς. εἴθε πείθοιο τῷ πατρί. 3 εἴθε σὺ φίλος ἡμῖν γένοιο. 4 τὸ νῦν³ ταῦτα πράττοις ἂ ἐν χερσὶν ἔχεις. 5 ἔγωγε οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην τοῖς Πέρσαις πιστεύειν. 479. 6 μηκέτι μένωμεν· οὕτως⁵ γὰρ ἴσως ἂν δυναίμεθα κατα-λαβεῖν τοὺς ἡγεμόνας. 7 ἐν μάχῃ μὲν οὐδέποτε ἂν φύγοιμεν ἡμεῖς, οὗτοι δὲ ἰδόντες τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἂν, οἶμαι, δέχονται αὐτούς. 8 βουλοίμην οὖν ἂν τοῦτο οὕτω γενέσθαι. 480 *end.* 9 εἴθε ὁ ἄρχων ἡμῶν παρ-ῆν. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἐγένετο τοῦτο. 470 a. 10 ὦ παῖδες, ὠφελετε⁴ τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους ἰδεῖν. 470 b. 11 εἰ γὰρ ὠφέλομεν παρα-γενέσθαι· οὕτω⁵ γὰρ ἂν ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἐφύγομεν. 470 b, 467 c. 12 τί γὰρ ταῦτα οὐκ εἶπες; ὅτι σὺ οὐκ ἂν ἐβουλήθης. 467 c. 13 ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ⁵ ἐσώζοντο ἂν. 461 c. 14 ἐβουλόμην ἂν τοῦτο οὕτω γενέσθαι. 461 d. 15 τί νυκτὸς ἐπορεύεσθε; ὅτι ἐν ἄλλῳ χρόνῳ ἰδεῖν ἂν ἡμᾶς ἐδύναντο οἱ πολέμιοι. 461 c, 481.

282 May we never⁶ again see these men. 476. 2 Without you I could⁷ not have succeeded.⁸ 461 c. 3 I should prefer not⁹ to do what you ask. 479. 4 I should not march into this country without you. 479. 5 You ought to-have-been-present¹⁰ when he was speaking. 470 b.

283 ¹ πάθοις: aor. opt. of πάσχω 264.

² μηδὲν κακόν is cognate accusative and ἡμᾶς is the object of the expression. Cp. 536 c.

³ τὸ νῦν for the present.

⁴ ὠφέλετε . . . ἰδεῖν you ought to have seen.

⁵ οὕτως and ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ

in 13 suggest the circumstances to which the statement applies. 481.

⁶ μηδέποτε.

⁷ Use the proper form of δύναμαι.

⁸ Use the aorist infinitive of εἶπράττω 253.

⁹ οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην.

¹⁰ παραγενέσθαι.

XXX THE OPTATIVE MODE

REVIEW OF CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS. FORMS OF Εἴμι AND Οἶδα

284 **a** In 227 observe how the relative stem *ὁ* unites with the indefinites making the general relative pronouns, just as with adverbs in 236 and 219. Review 220 *a* and apply it to general relative pronouns. Review 227 and learn the new forms omitting the words in *-λίκος* and forms in parenthesis. *τοιόσδε* and *τοσόςδε* differ from *τοιούτος* and *τοσουτός* as *ὅδε* differs from *οὗτος*: *such* and *so much* or *so many*, as follows; *such* and *so much* or *so many*, as mentioned. See 211, 212, 222. Observe that *τοιούτος* and *τοσουτός* are declined like *οὗτος* 209 and 97. Notice the groups with the *initial* syllables in *οσ* and *οι*.

b Review 84, 85 *a*, 103, and 236, omitting the forms in parenthesis. Notice that the *final* syllable indicates the group to which a form belongs.

c In studying the references to clauses that take the optative note carefully the translations. They will help in translating these pronouns and adverbs. Observe too that the general relatives are frequently translated by simple relatives and that Greek is far more exact than English in indicating quantity and quality in relatives. The English idiom must be the guide in translating.

d Like general relative adverbs the general relative pronouns are common in quoted questions. Carefully study the following examples:

CORRELATIVES

285 Τοιοῦτοι οἷους ἔχομεν *such men as we have.*

2 τοσοῦτοι ὅσους ἔχομεν *as many men as we have.*

3 οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Περικλῆς ἀπεκρίνατο τοιάδε *such were his remarks, but Perikles replied as follows.*

4 τούτων τοιούτων ὄντων, *quae cum ita sint, such being the case.*

5 ὥς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπον οἷον ἐκείνος εἶχεν *as far as was possible with such a character as he had.*

6 ἐπορεύθη τοσαύτην ὁδὸν ὅσην ἐδύνατο *he made as long a march as he could.*

7 ὅποσον διώξαιαν τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐλθεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει *as far as they pursued so far they had to return fighting.*

8 θύομαι ὅποσα δύναμαι ἵνα πράττω ὅποῖα μέλλει ἄριστα ἔσεσθαι *I sacrifice to the best of my ability that I may do whatever will result in the best advantage.*

9 ἐπράττον ὅποῖόν τι βούλονται *they did whatever they wished.*

10 πράξουσιν ἄλλα ὅποῖα ἂν δύνωνται *they will do whatever else they can.*

11 ἔλαβον ὅποῖα τῶν χωρίων ἐδύναντο *they captured such of the places as they could.*

12 λέξω ὅποίοις λόγοις ἔπεισα αὐτόν *I will tell by what sort of arguments I persuaded him.*

13 ὅποσοι ἀπ-έθνησκον λέγει *he tells how many were killed.*

14 ἤρετο ὅποση τις εἶη ἡ χώρα *he asked about how large the country was.*

15 ἤρετο ὁποίων τινῶν ἡμῶν ἔτυχον *he asked just what sort of men they found us to be.*

16 ὁπότεροι ἂν φίλοι γένωνται τούτους αἰρησόμεθα *we shall choose whichever party proves to be friendly.*

17 δεῖ ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι *you must choose whichever (of the two) you wish.*

18 ἐθέλδιτε ἂν τούτοις ἐπι-τρέψαι, ὁπότερα ἂν ψηφίσωνται, εἴτε . . . εἴτε; *would you be willing to submit it to these men, whichever way they vote, whether . . . or?*

19 οὕτως οὐκ ἂν, ὁπότε ἔλθοιεν, βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι *in that case we should not have to make plans whenever they came.*

20 οὐκ ἦν ὁπόθεν οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανά *there was no place where they did not get enough.*

286 Examine the forms of εἶμι *go* in 385 and a, fixing the subjunctive, optative, infinitive, and participle. Learn the optative of οἶδα 386.

287 In studying the following clauses compare the uses of the optative with those of the indicative and the subjunctive usually given in the grammar in the same section. Carefully note the translations. Compare also with the table in 203. These uses of the optative are merely an extension of uses already familiar.

a Μή clauses 610, 611 a, b, c. Negative οὐ.

b Ὅς and ὅστις clauses 616 a, b, 617, 618 a, b, c. Negative μή.

c Other relative clauses 620, 627, 629, 630, 631; ὅπως with the future indicative 638 a. Negative μή.

d Πρίν clauses, indicative, subjunctive, and optative 643, 644 a, b, c.

The following may be used in writing: In *before* clauses, when *until* cannot be substituted for *before*, use πρίν with the infinitive. In *until* clauses, when *before* cannot be substituted for *until*, do not use πρίν for *until*.

See the Verb-list for ψεύδω.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 288 ναύ-αρχος -ου ὁ admiral; ναῦς κατ-άγω bring down, bring to land;
ship + ἀρχω 66. Latin nāvis; restore; κατά + ἄγω 30
nausea φοβέω frighten; φοβοῦμαι 185, am
frightened, fear; φόβος 30
Ἀθηναῖος -ᾱ -ον Athenian; as
subst. an Athenian ψεύδω deceive; mid. A am deceit-
ful, am false to. pseud-onym
ἐν-δηλος -ον evident thereby, plain;
ἐν + δηλος 30 ὄνομα 222
ἐχθρός -ᾱ -όν hostile; as subst.
enemy; equivalent to Latin in-
imicus ἐγγύς adv. G near, nearly
δ-πως conj. adv. how, in what way;
like ἵνα 139, that, in order that

- 289 Δέδοικα ἐλθεῖν. δέδοικα μὴ ἐψευσμένοι ἐσμέν. δέ-
δοικε μὴ ὁ ἵππος ἀπο-θάνῃ. ἔδεισε μὴ ὁ ἵππος ἀπο-
θάνοι. 611 a, b, c. 2 οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἐφοβήθησαν μὴ οἱ
Θρᾶκες δια-βαῖεν νυκτὸς τὸν ποταμόν. 3 ὁ ἀνὴρ
χαλεπὸς ἐχθρὸς ἐστίν ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾗ. 616 a.
4 ὅ τι ἂν βούλῃ πέμπουσιν ἄν. πέμπουσιν ἂν ὅ τι
βούλοιο. ὅ τι βουλοίμην ἔπεμπον.¹ 616 a, b, 618 b,
479. 5 ὅτῳ² φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἐνδηλος ἐγίγνετο
ἐπι-βουλεύων.³ 618 b. 6 ναύαρχον εἶλοντο Πολυκρά-

την Ἀθηναίων, ὃς ὅποσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα⁴ κατήγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 620, 616 b. 7 οἱ ἄρχοντες ἔδεισαν μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια⁵ οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν⁶ λαμβάνοιεν. 611 c; 620, 616 b. 8 εἶμι ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε. 620, 385. 9 ὁπότε σημήνεια τῇ σάλπιγγι ὁ κῆρυξ, σύμπαντες προ-ῆμεν. 627, 385. 10 οἱ στρατιῶται ἔβαλλον αὐτὸν λίθοις, ἐπειδὴ ἄρξαιτο προ-ιέναι. 629. 11 ἐπορεύοντο νυκτός, ὁπότε οἴοιντο τοὺς πολεμίους ἐγγὺς εἶναι. 627. 12 ἕως μὲν ἂν μένωμεν ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν καλῶς ἔχει, ὁπότεν δὲ ἀπ-έλθωμεν κινδυνεύομεν. 631, 627. 13 ἕως ὁ παῖς παρ-ῆν ἡμῖν εὖ ἔπασχεν ὑφ' ἡμῶν. 631. 14 σπονδαὶ ἔσονται ἕως ἂν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφ-ίκωνται εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. 631. 15 ἔδοξεν τοῖς Ἕλλησι προ-ιέναι ἕως κατα-λάβοιεν τοὺς Πέρσας. 631. 16 οὐκ ἀπ-ήλθομεν πρὶν⁷ ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἀφ-ίκετο. 644 a. 17 μὴ ἔλθωμεν πρὶν ἂν συμβουλευσώμεθα τοῖς ἡγεμόσι. 644 b. 18 οὐκ ἂν πορευθεῖεν πρὶν οἱ κῆρυκες ἦκοιεν. 644 c. 19 ἕως μένομεν αὐτοῦ χρὴ ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξει ἡ στρατιά. 631, 638 a. 20 ἐκέλευσε τὸν ἄρχοντα ἄγειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας κατὰ τὸ ἀριστερὸν κέρας τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὅτι ἐκεῖ ὁ ἑαυτοῦ ἐχθρὸς εἴη.⁸

- 290 We were afraid that the citizens would not remain with us on that day. 611 c. 2 As long as they were going-back-with you, they were not in danger. 631. 3 They would not go away before asking your advice. 644 c. 4 Whenever they saw us advancing, they would⁹ run away, being frightened by the shouting.¹⁰ 627. 5 For many days they had no place¹¹ to get provisions. 6 Let us now plan how¹² we may get horses for the others. 638 a.

29/ ¹ ἔπεμπον: notice the difference in time between πέμποιεν ἄν and ἔπεμπον, though each may be translated by *would*.

² ὅτῳ: compare 78. *To whomsoever he said he was a friend* is equivalent to *whenever he said he was a friend to anyone*.

³ ἐπι-βουλεύων: pred. ptc. after ἐνδηλος ἐγίγνετο. See 585 a.

⁴ πλοῖα: antecedent within the relative clause.

⁵ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια: inserted before its clause but to be translated with λαμβάνοιεν.

⁶ ὁπόθεν *a place to get*.

⁷ πρὶν may generally be translated *before* or *until* when a negative precedes. But see 644 d.

⁸ εἴη *was*. In such clauses with ὅτι *because* 622 b, the optative refers the reason to the speaker. His thought was ὅτι ἐκεῖ ὁ ἐχθρὸς μου ἐστίν *because my enemy is there*.

⁹ Notice the force of *would* here. Compare ἔπεμπον in number 4 and note.

¹⁰ κραυγῇ 526 a.

¹¹ ὁπόθεν: compare number 7.

¹² ὅπως: compare number 19.

XXXI THE OPTATIVE MODE

QUOTED CLAUSES WITH ὅτι. QUOTED QUESTIONS.

Ἴνα CLAUSES WITH THE OPTATIVE

292 Learn τίς, τις, ὅστις 217–221 a, b. Review 222, 223, 227, 236.

a From the beginning we have been using clauses introduced by ὅτι *that* after some verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, hearing, and perceiving*; after λέγω and εἶπον regularly, after οἶδα, ἀκούω, and αἰσθάνομαι occasionally. After some of these we have also used questions introduced by τίς, τί, ὅστις, ὅ τι, πόθεν, ὁπόθεν, and the other interrogatives and general relatives 227, 236. See 64, 65, 220.

b For ὅτι *that* clauses study 622 and a, 624 a, b. ὥς *how, that* is frequently used like ὅτι 634, 635.

c For quoted questions study 621; εἰ *if, whether* 655; εἰ . . . ἢ and εἴτε . . . εἴτε in 653, as εἰ in 655.

293 Observe that the only principle involved in these indirect quotations is that we may, when the lead-

ing clause is historical, change an indicative or subjunctive of the original thought to an optative of the same tense. Person changes as in English but the tense remains the same. In English we usually change the tense after historical expressions. Note the translations in the examples. We may even say τί λέγω; νῦν μὲν οἶδα, ἀλλ' αὔριον οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην εἰπεῖν ὃ τι λέγεις *What am I saying? I know now, but tomorrow I should not be able to tell what you said* (for are now saying). Frequently the quotation is merely implied, or is quotation in form only. Compare 64, 65.

294 THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ἄν IN QUOTATIONS

In quoting clauses which have ἄν and the subjunctive, if the subjunctive is changed to the optative, the ἄν disappears:

ἐπειδάν τι λάβῃ χάριν οἶδε *whenever he receives anything he is grateful*; εἶπον ὅτι ἐπειδὴ τι λάβοι χάριν εἰδείη *they said that whenever he received anything he was grateful*.

a The ἄν clause then takes the form in **629** last example and **616 b**. The same is true of all the other relatives with ἄν, and of ἐάν. The latter, εἰ + ἄν, becomes εἰ.

295 THE OPTATIVE WITH ἄν IN QUOTATIONS

a In quoting optatives with ἄν, the ἄν is never dropt. After words like ἔφη, οἶμαι, and νομίζω that require the infinitive, the optative changes to the *infinitive* of the same tense, retaining ἄν.

b In quoting optatives with ἄν after words like οἶδα, ἀκούω, αἰσθάνομαι, and ἀγγέλλω, if a participle is used, the optative changes to the *participle* of the same tense, retaining ἄν.

c Thus Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἄν πορευθείη μόνος
Klearchos would not proceed alone.

ἐνόμιζον Κλέαρχον οὐκ ἄν πορευθῆναι μόνον
They thought that Klearchos would not proceed alone.

ἠγγειλαν Κλέαρχον οὐκ ἄν πορευθέντα μόνον
They reported that Klearchos would not proceed alone.

Compare 577 a, b, c, 579, 595, 61, 64.

296 THE POSITION OF ἄν WITH THE OPTATIVE

When used with the optative ἄν is *postpositive*, it cannot come first in its clause. But it comes early in the clause, frequently after a negative, or interrogative, or important adverb. In a clause depending on οἶμαι, it may be closely attached to οἶμαι. When there is no word to attract it, ἄν stands near its verb. Note a similar tendency in the enclitic pronouns *τις, μοι, σοι*, and others :

τί δ' ἄν ἄλλο ἐγώ σοι δυναίμην δια-πράξαι ;
What else can I do for you?

τοῦτο γὰρ ἄν οἶμαι ἀγαθὸν καὶ ἐμοὶ γενέσθαι
For this I think would be a good thing for me too.

εἰ μὴ τι οὖν ἄλλο ἔχετε λέγειν ἀπίοιτε ἄν
Now if you haven't anything else to say, you may go.

297 In clauses with ἵνα *that* final, we may also have the optative
642 a, b. So with ὥς 636 a, b and ὅπως 638 c.¹

a See ἀλέξω and θαυμάζω in the Verb-list and /84.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 298 ἀ-πιστία -ās ἡ *distrust, treachery*;
a- neg., πιστός 2/, πιστεύω 39
λόγος -ου ὁ *word, speech, story*;
εἰς λόγους ἐλθεῖν D *have a con-*
ference with; λέγω 30. bio-logy
30, chrono-logy /73
σύν-θημα -ατος τό *agreement*;
watchword; θε- 397. theme, syn-
thesis
ἔρημος -η -ον and -ος -ον *lonely*,
empty; Ἐ *without*; σταθμοὶ ἔρη-
μοι *days' march through a desert*
country. eremite, hermit
τίμιος -ᾱ -ον *valuable*; *honored*;
τιμή 3/2, τιμάω 3/7
ἀλέξω 184, *ward off*; commonly
mid. *repulse*; *requite*
θαυμάζω 184, *wonder at, am sur-*
prised; *wonder*
συν-απ-ιέναι *go away with or to-*
gether
μηδέ, οὐδέ adv. *not even*, differing as
the simple μή and οὐ; οὐδὲ ὥς *not*
even thus 239. Of course in other
combinations the regular prose
word οὕτω(s) is to be used for *thus*
ἢ conj. *or*; εἰ . . . ἢ *whether . . . or*
μήτε . . . μήτε, οὔτε . . . οὔτε conj.
neither . . . nor, differing as the
simple μή and οὐ

299 Ἐλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο¹ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα. 2 ἤκουσαν
οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ ἀγγέλου ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικήσειαν.¹
3 ἦδει ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων μέσον ἔχοι¹ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύ-
ματος. 4 τίς ὁ θόρυβός ἐστιν; ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος
εἷη. 5 τί τὸ σύνθημά ἐστιν; ἤρετο ὃ τι εἷη τὸ σύν-
θημα. 6 ἀκούσᾱς δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν
ἄγγελον πόση τις² εἷη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος
καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ εἷη καὶ κῶμαι
ἐν-εῖεν πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. 7 πάντες ἐθαύμαζον τί

¹ Use ἵνα generally to express *that, in order that*, in the pure final sense, instead of ὥς or ὅπως, which are not used in ordinary prose so freely as in Xenophon.

οἱ ἄνδρες λέγοιεν. 8 ἐθαύμαζον εἰ οἱ στρατηγοὶ νυκτὸς πέμψοιεν στρατιώτᾱς. 9 ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 10 Κλεάνωρ καὶ Σῶσις ἦλθον ἵνα ἴδοιεν τοὺς ἀγῶνας. 11 ποῦ ἂν ἴδοιμι αὐτόν; ὁ ἄγγελος ἠρώτησε τοὺς φύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον. 12 ὥστε ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους³ σοι ἐλθεῖν ὅπως⁴ ἐξ-έλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστιᾱν ταύτην. 13 οὐδ' ἂν ὥς δυναίμεθα συν-απ-ιέναι ὑμῖν. 14 ὁ φύλαξ τὸν κήρυκα ἤρετο εἴ τι λέγειν βούλοιο. 15 μεθ' ὑμῶν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος,⁵ ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὣν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἶναι οὔτε φίλον ὠφελῆσαι⁶ οὔτε ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. 16 ἐκέλευσαν αὐτὸν προ-ιέναι μόνον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι⁷ πορευθῆναι.

300 I did not know where⁸ they were going.⁸ 2 Kleānor replied that he would not send the men until the captain returned.⁹ 3 You ought¹⁰ to-have-seen what we took from the villages. 4 They said that the enemy were crossing the river. 5 I did not suppose that even¹¹ thus would they go alone.

301 ¹ ἔσοιτο, νικήσειαν, ἔχοι: the original forms were ἔσται, ἐνίκησαν, ἔχει.

² πόση τις about how large.

³ εἰς λόγους σοι into a conference with you.

⁴ ὅπως: equivalent to ἵνα.

⁵ τίμιος is nominative to agree with the subject of οἶμαι and εἶναι. So with ἱκανός. Consult 62. Note also the position of ἂν before οἶμαι though it belongs to εἶναι. See 296. εἶναι represents an optative.

⁶ ὠφελῆσαι: the infinitives depend upon ἱκανός.

⁷ δύνασθαι represents an optative. The infinitive shows that the clause is part of what they said: οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμεθα.

⁸ ὅποι with a present tense.

⁹ Not an aorist indicative.

¹⁰ Compare 28/, 10.

¹¹ καὶ οὕτως ἂν οὐκ ἔμην or οὐδ' ἂν ὥς as in 299, 13, where the normal Attic prose form would be καὶ οὕτως ἂν οὐ δυναίμεθα.

XXXII EΙ CLAUSES

REVIEW OF Φημι AND Είμι

302 a Review carefully 645, 646 and *end.* We have already had εἰ *if* with the indicative in simple forms of condition 647, and εἰάν *if*, εἰ + ἄν, with the subjunctive 650. Review these sections.

b Study 649 and remember that we have had these tenses of the indicative in hopeless wishes 470 a. Notice the tendency of the hypothetical indicative with ἄν 461 c, 467 c, to unite with these εἰ clauses.

c Study 651. Notice in (2) that if we desire to express the same idea for present time we use εἰάν and the subjunctive; and in connection with (3) that in εἰ questions and ἵνα clauses we have used the optative when there was an implied quotation 655, 642 b.

303 Review φημι 382 a, b, c and εἶμι 384 a-d learning all except the imperatives.

See δέω 321 a, παίω, πλέω 257 b, 321 in the Verb-list.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 304 πολλοῦ ἄξιος *worth much, valuable* to; impersonal active forms of δέω, δέομαι 187
- σκευο-φόρος -ον *carrying baggage*; ζητέω *ask for, seek*; *cp. ἐρωτάω.*
as subst. *carriers, pack animals*; αἰτέω 156
- τὰ σκευοφόρα *the baggage train*; κολάζω *check, punish*
- φέρω 362. Latin *ferō* παίω *strike, beat*. Latin *paviō*,
ἀπο-πλέω *sail away or back*; πλοῖον *paveō*; ἀνα-παεσθ
- 30 *am idle, shirk* περι-μένω *stay around, remain*;
βλᾶκεύω *A wait for*
- δεῖ. δεήσει, A and inf. clause, *it is, will be, necessary*; must, have ἄλλο-θεν adv. *from another place*;
ἄλλος 2/

ὥς conj. adv. *as*; see 86, 180; of of cause *as, since*; like ἵνα 133
time *as, when*; like ὅτι 21, *that*; *that, in order that*

305 Οὐκ ἂν θαυμάζοιμι εἰ οἱ παῖδες ἔποιντο ἡμῖν. 2 εἰ μὴ τὸν παῖδα ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ ἴδοις, ἄλλοθεν δεήσει σε ζητῆσαι αὐτόν. 3 τῷ μὲν ἐτέρῳ πιστοὶ ἐγενόμεθα καὶ ὑμῖν δ' ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γενοίμεθα, εἰ βούλοισθε ἡμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι. 4 εἴ τῳ ὑπό-σχοιτό τι, οὐπώποτε ἐψεύδετο.¹ 5 εἰ ὁ ἄρχων ἴδοι ἄνδρα βλαβεύοντα, ἐκόλαζεν. ἔπαισεν ἄν.² 6 ἐπεὶ ὁ πατήρ μετ-επέμψατό με, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτό μου³ παρ-εῖην αὐτῷ. 7 εἷς δὲ εἶπεν⁴ αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὥς⁵ ἀπο-πλέοιεν. 8 εἴ τις ἄλλος τοῦτο εἶπεν, οὐκ ἂν ἐπειθόμεθα.

9 Οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ ἐβουλευόντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μέιναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο, ἢ ἀπ-ίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπ-ιέναι. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συν-ελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι ὁ σατράπης οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σηματοῦντα⁶ ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἤδη δὲ μελλόντων προσ-ιέναι αὐτῶν ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀν-έχοντι ἦλθε Προκλῆς ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι ὁ μὲν σατράπης τέθνηκεν,⁷ Ἀριαῖος δὲ ὁ ἐκείνου στρατηγὸς πεφευγὼς εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρ-βάρων. καὶ ἔλεγε δὲ ὁ ἄγγελος ὅτι Ἀριαῖος λέγοι ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περι-μενοίη⁸ αὐτούς, εἰ μέλ-λοιεν ἥκειν, τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ αὐτὸς ἀπ-ιέναι φαίη⁹ ἔχων πᾶν τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀπ-ῆλθεν ὁ ἄγγελος καὶ μετ' αὐτοῦ Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λάκων καὶ Μένων ὁ Θετταλός. οὗτοι δὲ εἶπον πρὸς Ἀριαῖον τὰ δόξαντα¹⁰ τοῖς Ἑλλησι καὶ ὅτι οὐκέτι βούλονται οἱ Ἕλληνες συμ-πορεύεσθαι τοῖς Πέρσαις, ἐπεὶ νῦν τεθνηκὼς εἶη ὁ σατράπης ὑπὲρ οὗ γε μαχέσαιντο.

306 If you intend to come, I will wait for you, but tomorrow I shall ¹¹ go back with my own force. 2 They replied that they did not wish him to wait for them. 3 He says ¹² that we said ¹² that we were not present. 4 He said that he could not find either ¹³ Proxenos or Klearchos. 5 They were deliberating whether they should ¹⁴ remain there or go back.

307 ¹ τψ, τι *anyone, anything*: from τis.

² ἴδοι, ἐκόλαζεν, ἔπαισεν ἄν: see the *Grammar* p. 264 foot-note.

³ μου depends upon δέοιτο by 512; τι is cognate accusative with δέοιτο by 536 b.

⁴ εἰς δὴ εἶπεν *one man in particular* (δὴ) *urged*. When εἶπον means *urge, bid*, it takes the infinitive.

⁵ ὥς: equivalent to ἵνα.

⁶ σημανοῦντα *to tell them*: fut. ptc. of σημαίνω 583 b.

⁷ τέθνηκεν *was dead*. The optative could also be used.

⁸ περι-μενόη: fut. opt. Contract forms have mode suffix -ιη in the singular 275 c. μενεο-ιη contracts to μενόη.

⁹ φαίη also depends upon λέγοι ὅτι, while ἀπ-ιέναι depends upon φαίη. αὐτός strengthens the subject of ἀπ-ιέναι: *that he himself was going back*.

¹⁰ τὰ δόξαντα 582 a: *the decision of the Greeks*. τοῖς Ἑλλήσι is the indirect object of δόξαντα by 520 b; cp. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς above: *they decided*.

¹¹ Use the present of ἀπ-ιέναι.

¹² Use different verbs λέγω and φημι.

¹³ Use the double negative as in 299, 15. Learn 487.

¹⁴ It is better not to use the hypothetical optative here, but to let the optative represent a deliberative subjunctive: *shall we remain?* as in 299, 9 and 305, 9.

THE OPTATIVE MODE

308 The following **Uses of the Optative** are collected and repeated here for review and reference. Compare this table very carefully with the table in 203.

Tenses 483, 475

I In Optative Sentences, *Independent*

a In *Wishes*, with or without εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, 476, 477
Time future. Negative μή

b With ἄν, *Hypothetical Optative*, 479, 480

Time commonly future or universal. Negative οὐ

II In Subordinate Clauses, *Dependent*

a Μή clauses. Time future. Negative οὐ. 611 c

b Relative clauses. Time future or universal with reference to the time of the leading verb. Negative μή. 616 b, 618 b, 620, 627, 629, 631, 632 A; πρίν 644 c

c ὥστε *that* clauses. Purpose to be accomplished. Negative μή. 642 b

So ὥς *that* 636 b, ὅπως *that* 638 c

d Εἰ *if* clauses. Negative μή

1 *Possible*. Time future, sometimes present or universal. 651 (1)

2 *Repeated*. Time past. 651 (2)

3 *Quoted*. Time future or present or universal with reference to the leading verb. 651 (3)

e ὅτι *that* and ὥς *how, that* clauses in indirect quotations when the leading verb is historical 624 b, 635

f Quoted questions after a leading historical expression, with interrogatives, general relatives, and εἰ *if, whether* 621, 655

In comparing these uses of the optative with the corresponding uses of the subjunctive observe that the optative removes the thought further from the speaker, or throws it into the past, or quotes it. Notice the tendency of the optative to follow past tenses and other optatives. In quotations it is allowed, not required.¹

¹ Some assert that it is required in quoted reasons with ὅτι *because, since* and similar words.

XXXIII Ω - VERBS

CONTRACT PRESENTS IN -έω. REVIEW OF LIQUID
FUTURES

309 **a** Paradigms of ποιέω 314 and στελῶ 331. Study all but the imperative. Learn the present active indicative and use it as a model for the rest. Consult 316 a, 317, 318, 319, 321 and a, 322 c.

b See ὠνέομαι 291 a and apply 267 to the imperfect ἐωνούμην.

c Participles in -έων are declined in 168 b.

310 **a** The contractions in -έω verbs are included in this rule:

ε + ε = ει

ε + ο = ου

ε + a long vowel or diphthong is absorbed.

b Accent. In all contract verbs, if either of the contracting syllables had an accent, the contracted syllable is accented, taking the circumflex, if possible 12.

c Follow the rule for the optative mode-suffix in 275 c: *In the singular before active endings . . . in contract forms use -ιη.* Always write -ιη in the active singular optative of -άω, -έω, and -όω contracts and not in the middle and plural forms.

311 In studying these forms, after learning the rules write the uncontracted forms first and then the contracted forms. Always use the contracted forms in writing Greek, and master them as soon as possible. Write synopses in the contracted form.

a Use the tense-stems in this form: **τῖμαο:ε-**, **ποιεο:ε-**, **δουλοο:ε-**, **στελεο:ε-**.

b Learn **οἴκοι**, **οἴκαδε**, and **οἴκοθεν** in 228.

c Consult the Verb-list for **αἰνέω**, **αἰρέω**, **δέω**, **καλέω**, **πλέω**, **φημι ἐρῶ**, **ὠνέομαι**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

3/2 ἀρετή -ης ἡ <i>goodness, valor</i>	κρατέω G <i>rule</i> ; A or G <i>conquer</i> ;
συν-λογία -ης ἡ <i>gathering, levy</i> ;	τὸ κράτος <i>strength. auto-crat,</i>
συν-λέγω 253	demo-crat
τίμη -ης ἡ <i>worth, honor</i> ; τίμιος	οἰκέω <i> dwell, live</i> ; A <i>live in</i> ; pass.
298, τιμάω 320	<i>am inhabited, am situated</i> ; οἶκος
φιλία -ας ἡ <i>friendship</i> ; φίλος 2/	30
ἀπο-δώσω <i>shall give back, shall</i>	πολεμέω D <i>make war, fight</i> ; πόλε-
<i>pay</i>	μος 50
ἀπο-χωρέω <i>go away from, retreat</i> ;	συν-πολεμέω D <i>help in war</i> ; σύν
χωρίον 38, χώρα 72	178
ἐπ-αινέω <i>praise, commend</i> ; ἐπί 178	συν-καλέω <i>call together</i> ; σύν 178
ἡγέομαι D <i>lead, guide</i> ; G <i>lead,</i>	ὠνέομαι <i>buy</i>
<i>command</i> ; sometimes <i>think</i> , as	ἐντός adv. G <i>within</i>
Latin <i>dūcō</i> ; ἡγεμών 257	ἦν for εἰάν conj. with subjv. <i>if.</i>
καλέω <i>call, summon</i> ; name. Latin	Notice the accent and avoid con-
<i>Kalendae</i> ; calendar, ec-clesiastic	fusing <i>ἦν if</i> with <i>ἦν was</i> .

3/3 Δέω, δεῖ, δέϊται, δέονται, δεόμεθα, ἐδεῖτο, ἐδέοντο. 2 οἰκοῦσι, οἰκοῦνται, ὥκουν, ὥκει, εἰάν οἰκῶσι, εἰ οἰκοῖεν. 3 ἀπ-αιτοῦμεν, ἀπ-αιτεῖ, ἀπ-ήτει, ἦν ἀπ-αιτῶμεν, εἰ ἀπ-αιτοίης. 4 ὑπ-ισχυοῦμαι, ὑπ-ισχυεῖτο, ὑπ-ισχυοῦντο, ὑπ-ισχυεῖται, ὑπ-ισχυοῦνται, εἰάν ὑπ-ισχυῶνται, εἰ ὑπ-ισχυοίμεθα. 5 ὠφελεῖ, ὠφέλει, ὠφελούσι, ὠφέλουν, ὠφελῶμεν αὐτούς, ὠφελοῖν ἄν.

3/4 Ὡδε οὖν ὁ σατράπης ἐποιεῖτο¹ τὴν συλλογὴν. 2 μεθ' ὑμῶν συν-επολέμει² Κλεάνορι τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ

τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 3 οἱ οἴκοι³ ἐν οἷς οἰκοῦσι καλοῦνται οἰκίαι. 4 πολλοὶ ἀπο-θανοῦνται οἰκοθεν πολεμοῦντες ὑπὲρ τῶν οἴκοι.³ 5 οἱ θεοὶ ὠφελήσουσι τοὺς ἑαυτοὺς ὠφελοῦντας. 6 ὁπόταν ἀπ-αιτῶσι μισθὸν τὸν τριῶν μηνῶν ἀπο-δώσο-μεν καὶ οὐκ ἀπο-πέμψομεν αὐτούς. 7 μενοῦσιν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἕως ἂν ἀφ-ικνωμέθα. 8 οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπειδὴ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἡγοῖτο αὐτοῖς⁴ ἐκράτουν τῶν Περσῶν.⁵ 9 εἰ ὠφελοῖς τὸν παῖδά μου, ἐπ-αινοίην ἂν σε. 10 ἡμῶν μὴ ὠφελοῦντων⁶ οὐκ ἂν ἐδύναντο κρατεῖν τούτων. οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο. 11 οὐκ ἀπο-κρινοῦνται οἱ Ἑλληνες πρὶν ἂν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀπο-χωρῇ. 12 ἐκέλευσαν ἡμᾶς αἰρεῖσθαι ὃ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ ἐπιτήδειον εἶναι. 13 ὅστις ἀφ-ικνοῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτως εὐδαίμονας ἐποίει ὥστε φίλους αὐτῷ εἶναι. 14 συγ-καλεῖ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιωτᾶς καὶ ὑπ-ισχνεῖται αὐτοῖς, ἔαν καλῶς πράξωσι, μὴ παύσεσθαι⁷ τοῦ πολέμου πρὶν ἂν πάντες λάβωσι ὅσα ἂν βούλωνται. 15 διὰ φιλιᾶν τῶν βαρ-βάρων δυνάμεθα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι ὅσων ἂν δεώ-μεθα. 16 τῇ ἀρετῇ τιμὴν λήψεσθε ὅπου ἂν ᾗτε. 17 τὸν μισθὸν ὑπ-ισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμε-ρῶν παρ-έσεσθαι δύο μηνῶν⁸ καὶ συ-στρατεύεσθαι ἐκελευεν. 18 εἰ δέ τινα ἴδοι ὠφελοῦντα τοὺς δεο-μένους τούτον οὐπόποτε ἀφ-ηρεῖτο τὰ χρήματα.

- 3/5 If you should ask for boats, I promise to send them.
 2 If he should fight in-our-company,⁹ we should conquer.
 3 They were assisting the Greeks at home. 4 We shall remain in that country many months. 5 On the next day they arrive at¹⁰ the fort bringing the men that they had overcome.

3/6 ¹ ἐποιεῖτο: notice the middle made *his*.

² συν-επολέμει joined Kleānor in the war against. Κλεάνορι depends upon σύν 598 a and Θραξί is dative by 525.

³ οἱ οἴκοι the dwellings; οἱ οἴκοι the friends at home.

⁴ αὐτοῖς: ἡγέομαι frequently takes the dative in the sense of *guide*, *lead*, as a *for* dative 510 c end.

⁵ Περσῶν 510 c.

⁶ ὠφελούντων: translated by an *if* clause. How does the change in

the leading verb here affect the meaning of this genitive absolute?

⁷ μή παύσεσθαι: he said οὐ παύσομαι *I shall not cease*. Read carefully 564, 577 b, 579 a. μή is the regular form after verbs meaning *swear*, *promise*, *hope*, whether the infinitive is future or not.

⁸ μηνῶν: genitive of *measure* with μισθόν.

⁹ Express by σύν in composition and the dative ἡμῖν.

¹⁰ ἐπὶ or εἰς and the accusative.

XXXIV Ω-VERBS

CONTRACT PRESENTS IN -άω AND -όω

3/7 **Paradigms 313, 315.** Study all but the imperative. Learn the present active indicative and use it as a basis for the other forms. Consult 316 a, b, 317.

a Participles in -άων and -όων are declined in 168 a, b.

3/8 The contractions for -άω and -όω verbs are covered by the following:¹

α + an *e*-sound (ε, η, ει, η) = ᾱ (ᾱ̄)

α + an *o*-sound (ο, ω, οι, ου) = ω (ω̄)

ο + ε, or ο, or ου = ου

ο + η or ω = ω

ο + an *i*-diphthong (ει, οι, η) = οι

ι is retained except in the infinitive 316 b.

a Use the same rules for **accent** and for **writing** as in -έω verbs 3/0 b, c.

¹ Compare with the general rules for contraction 29, 30.

3/9 a Review adjectives in -os -on 73, 74.

b The declension of γῆ 85.

c For μά with the accusative see 532.

d Consult the Verb-list for ἐάω,¹ ἐλαύνω,² ὁράω,¹ χράομαι.³

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 320 γῆ γῆς ἡ *earth, land, country*. ὄρθιος -ᾱ -ον *steep*; ὀρθός *straight*.
 ge-o-graphy, ge-o-metry, George γῆ ortho-graphy
 and ἔργον 379 ἐάω *allow, permit*; *let go*
 εἰς-βολή -ῆς ἡ *invasion*; *pass*; εἰς-βάλλω *throw into*; *invade*
 εἰς-βάλλω ἐν-οικέω *live in, inhabit*
 θάλαττα -ης ἡ *sea*. thalassic 46 ὁράω, pred. ptc. *see, perceive*
 ξύλον -ου τό *wood*; pl. *fuel*. xylo- πειράομαι 185 *try, attempt*
 nite, xylo-phone τιμάω *value, esteem, honor*; τιμή
 ἀμαξ-ιτός -όν *passable by wagons*; 312
 ἄμαξα 79, ἰέναι *go* χράομαι D *use*; *treat*; *find*
 ἀ-μήχανος -ον *without means, im-* ἰσχυρῶς adv. *strongly, violently*,
practicable; α- neg. + μηχανή con- exceedingly; ἰσχυρός 156
trivance, machine διό adv. *wherefore, therefore*; διά+δ

321 Πειρῶμαι, πειράται, πειρῶνται, ἐπειρώμεθα, ἐπειράτο
 ἐπειράθη. 2 ἐρωτᾶς, ἐρωτᾶ, ἡρώτᾶς, ἡρώτᾶ, ἐὰν
 ἐρωτᾶ, ἐὰν ἐρωτῶμεν, εἰ ἐρωτώῃ, εἰ ἐρωτῶεν, ἐρωτώην
 ἄν. 3 ὁρᾶ, ἐώρων, ἐώρᾶ, εἰ ὁρώῃ, ὁρῶεν ἄν. 4 ἀξιοῖ,
 ἀξιοῦνται, ἀξιοῦσι, ἡξιού, ἡξιοῦμεν, ἐὰν ἀξιοῖ.
 5 ἐᾶ, εἰῶμεν, ἐρεῖς, ἐλᾶ, ἐλῶμεν. ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἐλῶμεν.

322 Ὁ νεανίας ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ ἐστίν ὅτι¹ ἐπειράτο κατ-
 ἀγειν οἴκαδε τοὺς φεύγοντας. 2 ὁ παῖς πειράται ἐξ-

¹ ἐάω and ὁράω: for the imperfect see 261 and a; for the perfect see 291 a.

² ἐλαύνω 261 d; for the future ἐλῶ, -ᾶς, -ᾶ, -ῶμεν, -ᾶτε, -ῶσι see 322 c end.

³ χράομαι 317 a, 320.

ελαύνειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου. **3** οἱ παῖδες ἐώρων
πολλὰ δῶρα καλὰ ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις. **4** Σῶσις ἡρώτᾱ
τὸν φύλακα ὃ τι ποιοίη.² **5** οἱ Ἕλληνες ὁπότε πολε-
μοῖεν τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐνίκων διὰ τὴν ἀρετὴν. **6** μικρὸν³
προ-ιόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος οὗ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο οἱ
Ἕλληνες ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις⁴ ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων ἀσπίσι
καὶ τοῖς δόρασι πολλοῖς οὖσιν. **7** ἡρώτων τὸν παῖδα
τί⁵ δῶρα αἰτοίῃ τὸν πατέρα. **8** ἐπειδὴ οἱ φύλακες
πειρῶντο ἀπο-φυγεῖν ἐκωλύθησαν ἄν.⁶ **9** οἴκοι μενοῦ-
σιν ἕως ἂν οἱ φίλοι δέωνται αὐτῶν. **10** εἰ ἐρωτῶης
αὐτὸν ὅτου δέοιτο οὐκ ἂν ἀπο-κρίναιτο. **11** ὑπ-έσχετο
ἡμῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξ-ελᾶν⁷ τοὺς Θρᾶκας πειρωμένους
ἀφ-αιρεῖσθαι⁸ τοὺς ἐν-οικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν.
12 ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσ-βάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν·
ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθίᾱ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ
ἀμήχανος εἰσ-ελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυνεν.⁹ ἐλέ-
γετο δὲ καὶ Σύνενσεις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων
τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ'
ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη¹⁰ Σύν-
ενσεις τὰ ἄκρα ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα
ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ εἴη.¹⁰ **13** ἵνα δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλή-
νων πολέμοι γένοισθε,¹¹ πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς
ὑμᾶς πέπραγα. καὶ γὰρ οὖν¹² νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξ-εστιν τῇ
τοῦ σατράπου φιλίᾳ χρωμένοις πορεύεσθαι ὅποι ἂν
ἔλθσθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. **14** ἀλλὰ
μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξομαι οὐδ' ἐρεῖ
οὐδεὶς¹³ ὥς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρ-ῇ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν
δὲ ἀπ-ιέναι βούληται, συλ-λαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς¹⁴ κακῶς
ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀφ-αιροῦμαι. **15** ὁπότεν μὲν
μὴ ἀγορᾶν παρ-έχωμεν λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας

ἔάσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὁπόθεν ἂν δύνησθε. ἦν δὲ παρ-
έχωμεν ἀγοράν, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ὑπ-ισχνεῖσθαι ὠνουμένους¹⁵
ἕξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

323 I know that they are trying to drive out the citizens. 2
They would not see us if we should try to-escape-their-
notice.¹⁶ 3 The guide was asking us where we wished to
go. 4 They saw where the guards had-been-keeping-
watch.¹⁷ 5 They used the tents for¹⁸-houses.

324 ¹ ὅτι *because*.

² ὅ τι ποιῶν: what two mean-
ings could these words take?

³ μικρόν 540, 538.

⁴ ξύλοις *for firewood*: a predi-
cate noun with ἀσπίσι and δόρασι.
See 502, 547. These are dative
with χράσμαι, the regular use. Com-
pare the Latin *ūtor* with the ab-
lative.

⁵ τί *why*?

⁶ ἄν 467 a.

⁷ ἐξ-ελᾶν: fut. inf. of ἐξ-ελαύνω.
He said ἐξ-ελῶ.

⁸ ἀφ-αιρεῖσθαι *to deprive* 535.

⁹ ἐκώλυν *tried to prevent* 459 a.

¹⁰ λελοιπῶς εἴη: compare 254, 8.

¹¹ πολέμιοι γένοισθε *make your-
selves enemies to*.

¹² καὶ γὰρ οὖν *and so then*;
therefore 672 d.

¹³ οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς *and no man
shall ever say that (ὥς = ὅτι) I use
a man (τις) as long as he stays with
me, but whenever*.

¹⁴ αὐτούς: translate as if αὐτόν
him.

¹⁵ ὠνουμένους *by purchase*.

¹⁶ λανθάνω with the accusative.

¹⁷ Use the imperfect of φυλάττω.
See 254, 8 *end*.

¹⁸ Express by a predicate noun.
Compare 322, 6.



Ploughing and sowing.

XXXV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

STEMS IN -ι AND -ευ. ORDINALS

325 a Learn the declension of πόλις 130, 131 a and ἵππεύς 134.

b Learn the first ten **ordinals**. Review 187, 189.

c For τάξις from τάττω (ταγ-) *arrange* see 406, suffix -σι, like πράξις. For ἵππεύς from ἵππος see 430 a. Examine the nouns in 403, 404, suffixes -ο and -ᾱ.

d Examine σῶς in 96.

e Review 165, 167, 172, 106.

f Check in the Verb-list ἄχθομαι and νομίζω 346 a.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 326 βασιλεύς -έως ὁ *king*; βασιλείος 180. *basilica*
 δασμός -οῦ ὁ *division*; *tax*
 δύναμις -εως ἡ *ability*; *force*; *power*; δύναμαι 167. *dynasty*
 ἐπι-βουλή -ης ἡ *plot*; ἐπι-βουλεύω 50
 ἵππεύς -έως ὁ *horseman*; pl. *cavalry*; ἵππος 2/. *Phil-ip φίλος* 2/
 πόλις -εως ἡ *city, state*; πολίτης 86. *metro-polis μήτηρ* 264
 τάξις -εως ἡ *arrangement, order*; *line*; *post*; *division*; τάττω 156. *taotics*
 ἵπο-στράτηγος -ου ὁ *under-commander*; equivalent to Latin *lēgātus*
 ἀρχαῖος -ᾱ -ον *old, ancient*; τὸ ἀρχαῖον *adv. originally*; ἀρχή 139. *archaio, archaeo-logy*
 σῶς σῶν *safe and sound, alive and well, safe, unharmed*; σέζω 280, σώφρων 257
 ἄχθομαι *am troubled, am displeased*
 δαπανάω *expend*
 νομίζω *think regular*; inf. clause, *think, consider*; νόμος 367
 παρα-καλέω *call to my side, summon*
 ὀπισ-θεν *adv. from behind, behind*; οἱ ὀπισθεν, τὸ ὀπισθεν *the rear*
 πάνυ *adv. very*; πᾶς 232
 ἤ conj. *than*; μᾶλλον ἢ *rather than*

327 Καὶ οἱ μὲν¹ ἡγοῦντο, Φιλήσιος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν¹ σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐφυλάττετο τοὺς ἱππέας τοὺς τῶν Θρακῶν. 2 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες ὅπου² μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶς εἴη τὸν στρατηγὸν παρ-εκάλουν, ὁπόθεν δὲ οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶς εἴη, τὸν λοχαγόν. 3 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀφ-ίκετο Σπιθριδάτης τούς τε ἱππέας ἔχων οὓς αὐτὸς ἀν-έβη ἔχων εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔπεμψε πρὸς αὐτόν, ὥστε ἡ στρατιὰ πάνυ πολλὴ ἐφάνη.³

THE SATRAP'S PLOT

328 Βουλόμενός ποτε ἐπι-στρατεύεσθαι βασιλεῖ τῷ τῶν Περσῶν ὁ σατράπης τῆς Λυδίας παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς ἄρχουσι πᾶσῶν τῶν φυλακῶν ὁπόσας εἶχεν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι λαμβάνειν δύναμιν Ἑλληνικὴν ὅσῃν ἀν δύνωνται, λέγων αὐτοῖς ὅτι Πολύνικος ὁ τῆς Ἰωνίας σατράπης ἐπι-βουλεύει ταῖς Ἰωνικαῖς πόλεσιν. καὶ γὰρ⁴ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνίας πόλεις Πολυνίκου⁵ τὸ ἀρχαῖον⁶ ὑπὸ βασιλέως δε-δο-μέναι,⁷ τότε δὲ ἀφ-ειστή-κε-σαν⁸ πρὸς τὸν Λυδίας σατράπην. ὁ δὲ πρὸς βασιλέᾳ πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δο-θῆ-ναι⁹ ἑαυτῷ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Πολύνικον ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συν-ἐπράττειν¹⁰ αὐτῷ ταῦτα ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο,³ Πολυνίκῳ δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα¹¹ αὐτὸν εἰς τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν.¹² ὥστε οὐδὲν⁶ ἤχθετο³ αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.¹³ καὶ γὰρ οὗτος ὁ σῶφρων σατράπης ἀπ-

έπεμπε¹⁴ τοὺς γιγνομένους¹⁵ δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ
 πᾶσων τῶν πόλεων τῶν τε ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ ἐχθροῦ
 ἄς τότε ἐτύγχανεν αὐτὸς ἔχων.

- 329 The enemies of the king were plotting against his¹⁶ cities.
 2 With my own force I cannot overcome the cavalry of
 the king. 3 This ancient city once¹⁷ belonged to the
 Greeks. 4 This arrangement of cavalry is considered¹⁸ to
 be a good one. 5 What tribute¹⁹ we have we remit to
 the king.

- 330 ¹ οἱ μὲν *they*: the correlative of
 the first μὲν is μέντοι. The sec-
 ond μὲν with δέ may be translated
 though . . . yet.

² ὅπου . . . εἴη 620.

³ ἐφάνη 639 a. So ἡσθάνετο and
 ἤχθετο below.

⁴ καὶ γάρ *and in fact* 672 d.

⁵ Πολυνίκου: with ἦσαν *belonged*
 to 508.

⁶ τὸ ἀρχαῖον *of old, originally*
 540. Also οὐδέν below.

⁷ δε-δο-μένοι: perf. pass. ptc. *hav-*
ing been given.

⁸ ἀφ-ειστή-κε-σαν: pluperf. act.
 ind., *had revolted*.

⁹ δο-θῆ-ναι: aor. pass. inf. *to be*
given. πόλεις is the subject:
claimed that these cities should
be given.

¹⁰ συν-ἐπράττεν: compare 181, 7.

¹¹ πολεμοῦντα *while fighting*: ac-
 cusative ptc. limiting αὐτόν. The
 order here indicates that the mean-
 ing is, *he thought that his war with*
Polynīkos was the reason for his
expending.

¹² δαπανᾶν: active infinitive.

¹³ πολεμοῦντων 590: cause: *at*
their fighting.

¹⁴ ἀπ-έπεμπε: note the force of
 ἀπό: *sent what was due, remitted*.

¹⁵ γιγνομένους *as it became due,*
accruing.

¹⁶ ἐκείνου.

¹⁷ ποτε.

¹⁸ νομίζεται.

¹⁹ Retain the antecedent *tribute*
 in the δοςος clause and repeat it in
 the proper form of οὗτος.



Cylix with low base.

XXXVI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE STEMS IN **-ΕΣ**. ADVERBS.
NUMERALS

331 **a** Learn the declension of **γένος** 124, 125 and **Σωκράτης** 127, 128.

b Learn **σαφής** 151–154. Decline **πλήρης** *full* like **εὐήθης**, noting carefully the accent 153 a.

c See **στάδιον** in 144.

332 **a** By 229 make **adverbs** and give their meaning from **σαφής**, **ἀσφαλής**, **πᾶς**, **ἄλλος**, **φανερός**, **ὅμοιος**.

b By 230, using the singular form, make **adverbs** from **πρῶτος**, **δεύτερος**, **τρίτος**, **δέκατος**.

c Review and finish the table of **cardinals** 188.

d Review **62, 71, 76, 99, 102**.

e See the Verb-list and **257 b, 321, 392** for **ρέω**.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

333 βάθος -ους τό <i>depth</i> or <i>hight</i> . bathos	τείχος -ους τό <i>wall, fortress</i>
γένος -ους τό <i>race</i> ; γίγνομαι 187. Latin <i>genus</i> , hetero-geneous ἕτερος 180	ὑψος -ους τό <i>hight</i> ; ὑπέρ 173. Latin <i>super</i>
εἶρος -ους τό <i>width</i>	ἀ-σφαλής -ές <i>not to be tript, sure,</i> <i>secure</i> ; σφάλω <i>trip</i> . Latin <i>fallō</i>
μήκος -ους τό <i>length</i> ; μακρός 30	πλήρης -ες G <i>full, rich in</i> ; <i>in</i> <i>full</i> . Latin <i>plēnus</i>
ὄρος -ους τό <i>mountain</i>	σαφής -ές <i>plain, certain</i>
πλέθρον -ου τό <i>plethron</i> , about one hundred feet	ὑψηλός -ή -όν <i>high, lofty</i> ; ὑψος ρέω <i>flow</i> . STREAM, CP. Στρυμών <i>the</i> <i>Strymon</i> ; <i>rheumatism</i>
στάδιον -ου τό <i>stadium, race</i> <i>course</i> ; <i>stade</i> , about six hun- dred feet. Latin <i>spatium</i>	ἔπ-εῖτα <i>adv. thereupon, then</i> ; <i>be-</i> <i>sides</i> ; <i>next, afterwards</i>

334 Πρῶτον μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν μὲν τὸν σατράπην πορευόμενον¹ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, ἐνόμιζον δὲ στρατεύεσθαι¹ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἐχθροὺς εἰς Πισιδίαν. ἔπειτα δὲ μέντοι ἐπεὶ σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἦδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ἐπὶ βασιλεῆ μέλλοι στρατεύσεσθαι ἐκεῖνος, τότε δὴ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλιᾶν² συν-έπεσθαι αὐτῷ καὶ ὃ τι ἂν δέη³ πάσχειν. ἔτι δὲ πολλὰ ὑπ-ἰσχυεῖτο αὐτοῖς ὁ σατράπης. 2 οὕτως οὖν πεισθέντες ἐκ τούτων κατα-βάντες τῶν ὑψηλῶν ὄρων ἐν οἷς ἔμενον ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου καλοῦ οὐ ἀσφαλεῖς ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὰ ὄρη. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μικρὸς, ὄνομα⁴ Φάσις, τὸ εὖρος⁴ ὧν⁵ εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.⁶ τοῦτον δια-βάντες ἐπορεύοντο ἕως ἀφ-ίκοντο πρὸς δύο διώρυχας μεγάλας, εὖρος μὲν ποδῶν πεντήκοντα βάθος δὲ ὀκτὼ καὶ δέκα, καὶ πλήρεις ὕδατος.⁷ 3 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα πορευόμενοι ἦλθον ἐπὶ ὄρη ὑψηλὰ ὑφ' οἷς ἦν ποταμός, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρων τριῶν. πρὸς δὲ τῷ ὄρει ὤκειτο χωρίον ἰσχυρόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῷ⁸ ἦν τὸ μὲν ὕψος πόδες πεντήκοντα, τὸ δὲ μῆκος στάδιοι ἑξ. ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ἡ ἐπὶ τὴν πλησίον πόλιν ἦν στάδια⁹ πέντε μακρά. τὴν δὲ πόλιν κατέλαβον νυκτός.

335 The road was fifty stades long.¹⁰ 2 This river was forty feet wide and fifteen feet deep. 3 How¹¹ high was the wall of this fort? 4 It was not evident what they were trying to do. 5 They thought¹² that they would be safe here.

336 ¹ πορευόμενον, στρατεύεσθαι: notice the pred. ptc. object (586) and the inf. as parallel constructions: *did not know that he was marching . . . but thought that he was making an expedition.* This is

not uncommon. νομίζω requires the infinitive; οἶδα takes the participle or a ὅτι clause.

² διὰ φιλιᾶν *because of their affection for him.*

³ ὅ τι ἂν δέη *whatever they must.*

⁴ ὄνομα, εὖρος 537.

⁵ ὣν: ptc. *being*; we say *which was* or omit it.

⁶ ποδῶν 508: predicate genitive of *measure*. Instead of saying *being of twenty-five feet in width* we say *twenty-five feet wide*.

⁷ ἕξατος 512.

⁸ αὐτῷ *its*: a *for* dative 523 a. Compare also 524 a. The genitive αὐτοῦ would be proper.

⁹ στάδια πέντε μακρά *five stades long*. στάδια: accusative of *extent* 538; μακρά: predicate adjective.

¹⁰ Write this sentence in three different ways.

¹¹ Say *of what height* or *of how many feet in height*.

¹² Use νομίζω with fut. inf. or a construction with ἐδόκουν as in 334, 2.

XXXVII Ω-VERBS

REVIEW

337 a Review the different **aorist systems** active and middle and passive 252–254, 331, 336, 348, 367, writing the forms side by side. Take the verbs from this lesson.

b Collect and study the different ways of expressing **measure**, accusative and genitive and nominative, in this and the previous lesson.

c Learn or review the following verbs in the Verb-list: ἔρχομαι, εὐρίσκω,¹ ἔχω, -θνήσκω, κρίπτω,² νομίζω, φθάνω.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

338 ἀκρό-πολις -εως ἡ *acropolis, citadel*; ἄκρος 180, πόλις 326

ἔτος -ους τό *year*; ἦν ἐτῶν τριάκοντα *he was thirty years old*.

Latin *vetus* *old*

θηρίον -ου τό *animal*; pl. *game*

μηχανή -ης ἡ *contrivance, device*; ἀ-μήχανος 320. *mechanic μηχανικός*

μέρος -ους τό *part, share*

ξένος -ου ὁ *stranger; guest* or *host; mercenary, hired soldier*

¹ εὐρίσκω 260 (4), 265 b.

² κρίπτω 258 (2).

πλήθος -ους τό *multitude, numbers; extent; πλήρης* 333

πορείᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *going, march; ἔ-πορος* 72, πορεύομαι 167

τέλος -ους τό *completion, end; τέλος* adv. *finally*

ἀ-διάβατος -ον *impassable, not fordable; α- neg. + δια-βαίνω* 173

ἀναγκάζω *force, compel; ἀνάγκη* 232

ἀπ-έχω *hold off; G am distant from; mid. G keep away from; ἀπό* 178, ἔχω 30. The participle ἀπ-έχων is frequently translated *at a distance, far from*

γυμνάζω *exercise. gymnasium γυμνάσιον, gymnast γυμναστής*

δι-έρχομαι *go through, march; διὰ* 178, ἔρχομαι 199

εὕρισκω *find; mid. get, procure. eureka*

ἐξ-εὑρίσκω *find out, discover; ἐξ* 178

θηρεύω *hunt; θήριον*

κρύπτω *hide, conceal. crypt, cryptogram γράφω* 114; *grotto*

παντά-πᾶσιν adv. *all in all, entirely, wholly; πᾶς* 232

καί-περ adv. *used only with the participle* 670 c, *although*

339 Ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἑώρων πολλὰ ὄρη ὑψηλά. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν παρασάγγᾱς εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα.¹ ἐνταῦθα² τῷ σατράπῃ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀφ' ἵππου,³ ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ⁵ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ⁴ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως⁶ βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει. ρεῖ δὲ καὶ⁴ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμ-βάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρος ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.

2 ἐδόκει οὖν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι δια-βῆναι· ὥστε ἐπειρῶντο τὸ χωρίον λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηρίᾳ ἀσφαλής,⁷ ἄλλως δὲ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπ-ελθεῖν.

δι-ελθόντες δὲ σταθμούς τρεῖς ἀφ-ίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μη-
 διάς καλούμενον⁸ τείχος καὶ παρ-ῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ.
 τοῦτο εὖρος μὲν εἴκοσι ποδῶν ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν. μῆκος
 δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· καὶ⁴ ἐλέγετο δὲ
 ἀπ-έχειν Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ.⁹ τῷ δὲ ὄντι¹⁰ ἡ ὁδὸς ἦν
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας μακρά. τέλος δὲ μέντοι μέρος
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔχοντες ἀφ-ίκοντο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα,
 καίπερ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν πολεμίων πολλοῦ ὄντος, ἔνθα
 ἀπ-έθανεν ὁ Σῶσις ἐν τῷ ξένων οἴκῳ ἀπ-έχων ἀπὸ τῆς
 πατρίδος.

3 εἰ δὲ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τά τε ὄρη φθάσαι λαβόντες¹¹
 καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς ἱππέας,
 ἥξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα,
 εὖρος τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι δια-βαίνειν·
 δεύτερον δὲ τὸν Ἴριν καὶ τριῶν πλέθρων· τρίτον δὲ τὸν
 Ἄλυν δύο σταδίων, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύνασθε ἄνευ πλοίων
 δια-βῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρ-έχων;¹² καὶ ἀδιά-
 βατος δὲ ὁ Παρθένιος, ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἄν, εἰ τὸν Ἄλυν
 δια-βαῖτε. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ μόνον¹³ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι
 νομίζω τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ καὶ παντάπῃσιν ἀδύνατον.
 ὥστε κατὰ θάλατταν δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἐλθεῖν καὶ ἀπο-πλεῦσαι.¹⁴

ΑΧΙΛΛΕΥΣ ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΑΧΑΙΩΝ

340 Ἀχιλλεύς, ὥς φησιν Ὅμηρος, ἄριστος¹⁵ ἦν τῶν Ἀχαιῶν
 ὅσοι συν-εστρατεύσαντο ἐπὶ Τροίαν. πατὴρ¹⁶ μὲν ἦν
 Πηλέως μητρὸς δὲ Θέτιδος. ἔτι δὲ παῖδα ὄντα ἔκρυψεν
 αὐτὸν ἡ μήτηρ ἐν¹⁷ ταῖς θυγατράσι Λυκομήδους βασι-
 λέως Σκύρου, ἵνα μηδεὶς τῶν βασιλέων αὐτὸν εὐρὼν
 ἀναγκάσειε συ-στρατεύεσθαι· καὶ γὰρ ἤδει ὅτι ἔαν
 συμ-πλεῦσῃ¹⁸ ἀπο-θανοῖτο νέος.¹⁹ Ὀδυσσεὺς μέντοι

ἐξ-εὔρεν αὐτὸν μηχανῇ σοφῇ καὶ ἤγαγε πρὸς τὸ στρα-
τευμα ἐπεὶ ἤδη ὁ πόλεμος πολλὰ ἔτη ἦν.²⁰ ἐν²¹ δὲ
τῷ ἐνάτῳ ἔτει ἔρις ἐγένετο²² Ἀγαμέμνονι καὶ Ἀχιλ-
λεῖ, ὥστε οὗτος²³ οὐκ ἔφη ἔτι μαχεῖσθαι.

34/ ¹ πλέθρα: the verb is omitted
493 b.

² ἐνταῦθα: notice the lack of con-
junction, frequent with demon-
strative pronouns and adverbs.
ἐνταῦθα is the connective 600 (2).

³ ἀφ' ἵππου on horseback. Greek
emphasizes the *from* relation. He
rides ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου but hunts ἀπὸ
τοῦ ἵππου.

⁴ ῥεῖ δὲ καί: notice δέ and καί
together several times in this les-
son: δέ is the conjunction, καί
meaning *also* and emphasizing
the expression before which it is
placed.

⁵ ἐκ: the *from* relation again
prominent. We should say *in* or
under. The castle was built over
the springs to ensure a safe water
supply in time of war.

⁶ βασιλέως and the great king
also had a castle. Compare with
dative of possessor above, τῷ σα-
τράπῃ.

⁷ ἀσφαλῆς assured.

⁸ τὸ καλούμενον the so-called
582 b.

⁹ οὐ πολὺ not far. πολὺ will be
given later.

¹⁰ τῷ δὲ ὄντι but in reality:
ὄντι the ptc. ὦν being. Compare
τὰ ὄντα and τὰ μὴ ὄντα in 259,
261, 3.

¹¹ φθάσαι λαβόντες seize the

heights before the enemy: φθάνω
585 a.

¹² τίς . . . παρέχων who will
furnish?

¹³ οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καὶ not
only . . . but also or even.

¹⁴ ἀπο-πλεῦσαι: aor. inf. from
ἀπο-πλέω.

¹⁵ Ἀχιλλεύς . . . ἄριστος ac-
cording to Homer Achilles was the
bravest of the Achaeans.

¹⁶ πατρὸς ἦν his father was:
genitive of source 509 a. Do not
translate he was of.

¹⁷ ἐν among.

¹⁸ ἐὰν συμ-πλεύσῃ if he should
sail with them: συμ-πλέω.

¹⁹ ἀπο-θανοῖτο νέος that he would
die young. He was fated to win
great renown and die young or live
a long but uneventful life. He
chose the former.

²⁰ ἦν had lasted.

²¹ ἐνάτῳ δὲ ἔτει in the ninth year
would have been proper 527 c.
The omission of the preposition is
the regular form with words for
year, month, day, night with an
adjective.

²² ἔρις ἐγένετο a quarrel arose be-
tween: the dative is a *for* dative
523 a, 524 a. ἤρισαντο Ἀγαμέμνων
καὶ Ἀχιλλεύς. ἔρις is strife, ἐρίζω
I engage in strife.

²³ οἷτος the latter.

XXXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

Μέγας, Πολύς, Ταχύς, Βελτίων, Μέλᾱς

342 a Learn **ταχύς** 155 and add *and the feminine genitive plural has -ῶν*, 158, 159 b.

b Learn **μέγας** and **πολύς** 174, 175 and see **πολύ**, **πολλά** in 556, and **πρέσβυς** 142, 7.

c Decline **ὅσπερ** 214, 216, 612. The accent remains unchanged, **ἥπερ**, **οἷπερ**, **οὔσπερ**.

d Learn **βελτίων** 149, 150 and **μέλᾱς** 156, 157.

343 a By 229 make **adverbs** from **ταχύς**, **ῥόδύς**, **δασύς**, **χαλεπός** and give their meanings.

b Learn the **adverbs** in 230. Read 231 and 232 and notice **πολλάκις** *often*.

c Observe how 233 and 236 *end* explain the meaning of such forms as **ἄλλη**, **ταύτη**, **ἥπερ** in this lesson. **ἥπερ** is equivalent to **τῇ αὐτῇ ὁδῷ ᾗ** *by the same road by which*.

d See **πίπτω** in the Verb-list and 257 a, 326.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

344 **δένδρον -ου τό** *tree*. *rhodo-dendron*,
ῥόδον *rose*

Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ *Greece*; **Ἕλλην**
257

Ἴων Ἴωνος ὁ *Ionian*. **Ἴωνιά** 328
οἶνος -ου ὁ *wine*. Latin *vīnum*

δασύς -εία -ύ *Dense, thickly covered*. Latin *dēnsus*

ῥόδύς -εία -ύ *sweet*; **ῥδέως** *adv. gladly*. Latin *suāvis, suādeō*

ἡμισυς -εία -υ *half*; **ἡμι-**. Latin
sēmi; *hemi-sphere*

μέγας μεγάλη μέγα *great, large, tall*; **μεγάλη** 187, **μακρός** 30, **μῆκος** 333. Latin *māgnus*; *megaphone*. *o-mega*

πολύς πολλή πολύ *much, many; strong*; **πολλοί** 21, **πλήρης** 333.
poly-gon, poly-nomial

πρέσβυς *old*; **οἱ πρέσβεις -ων** *ambassadors*. *presbyter, priest*

ταχύς -εία -ύ *quick, swift*

ἐκβαίνω *step out, march out*

ἐπι-πίπτω *D fall upon, attack*

345 Ὅταν δὲ διώξωμεν αὐτούς, ἔφη Ξενίᾱς, ἀπο-φεύγουσιν· οὐδὲ¹ γὰρ εἰ ταχὺς εἴη ὀπλίτης πελταστήν ἂν δύναιτο κατα-λαμβάνειν ἀπ-έχοντα² πόδας ἑκατόν. 2 οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες νομίζουσιν, ἔαν μέσον ἔχωσι τὸ ἑαυτῶν, εἴ τι παρ-αγγεῖλαι βούλονται, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα.³ 3 οἱ πρέσβεις καὶ οἱ κήρυκες συν-εβουλεύοντο τοῖς πολίταις περὶ τῆς σω-τηρίᾱς τῆς πόλεως καὶ Τιμᾱσίῳ συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ἀγγέλους πέμψαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· οὕτως δὲ οἱ Ἰωνες ἤτησαν τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ὠφελῆσαι ἑαυτοὺς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τῷ πρὸς βασιλέᾱ τῶν Περσῶν, Ἰωνας ὄντας⁴ καὶ αὐτοὺς τούτους τὸ γένος.⁵ τὸν γὰρ ἀγῶνα ἔφασαν εἶναι κοινόν. 4 ἤκουσαν τοῦ ἀγγέλου μέγαν βασιλέᾱ ὄντα ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ ἔχοντα στράτευμα πολὺ. τοῦτον μέντοι οὐκ εἶδον· ἦν γὰρ φανερὸς δεδοικῶς⁶ μὴ ἐπι-πέσωσιν ἑαυτῷ καίπερ μῦρίους ἔχων στρατιωτᾱς. 5 καὶ ἐπορεύθησαν δὲ διὰ πεδίου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος δένδροις⁷ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. ἐκ δὲ τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον πολὺν οἶνον ἡδύν. 6 λαβὼν τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἡγείτο ἡμῖν τὴν ἐτέρᾱν ὁδόν.⁸ καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθημεν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τοὺς δὲ ὀπλίτας οὐκ ἂν ἦν⁹ ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκ-βῆναι.

346 Let us go back by the very same road¹⁰ by which we came. 2 We need fleet horses for our cavalry.¹¹ 3 It would not have been possible to overtake them, if we had gone by any other road. 4 They proceeded rapidly as¹² the enemy were following with¹³ a large army. 5 Let us send ambassadors to the great king at¹⁴ Babylon. 6 They asked us to assist them, for they could¹⁵ not go alone.

347 ¹ οἰδέ *not even*.

² ἀπ-έχοντα πόδας ἑκατόν *dis- tant a hundred feet: translate with a hundred feet start*. The hoplite wore a helmet κράνος, coat of mail θώραξ, shield ἄσπις, and greaves κνημῖς and carried two spears δόρυ and a sword ξίφος. These weighed nearly seventy-five pounds. The peltast was light-armed with a crescent shield πέλτη and spears and perhaps a short sword.

³ Read this sentence aloud and observe the difference between the εἰαν clause and the εἰ clause.

⁴ ὄντας καὶ αὐτοὺς *because they were themselves also Ionians in race*.

⁵ τὸ γένος 537.

⁶ ἦν φανερός δειδικώς *he was evidently afraid* 585 a.

⁷ δένδροις *with trees: the regular construction with δασύς*.

⁸ ὁδόν: the road *by which*, probably cognate accusative 536.

⁹ οὐκ ἂν ἦν *it would not have been possible* 461 c. ἦν, and ἔστιν with this accent, frequently mean *it was, is, possible*.

¹⁰ Use the accusative. Use ὅσπερ and compare 343 c.

¹¹ Dative plural of ἵππεύς.

¹² ὅτι or γάρ.

¹³ ἔχων in the proper form.

¹⁴ εἰς.

¹⁵ οὐ γὰρ δύνασθαι: ep. 299, 16.

XXXIX COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

SEVERAL FORMS AND IDIOMS

348 Learn 177. Remember that a penult with a short vowel is not necessarily short, as μακρός, πιστός. Learn σχολαῖος and φίλος 178 and *end*, εὐδαίμων and σώφρων 179, and 180–183 *entire*. Review βελτίων 149.

a ἄξιος	ἀξιώτερος	ἀξιώτατος	<i>worthy</i>
πολλοῦ ἄξιος	πλείονος ἄξιος	πλείστου ἄξιος	<i>valuable</i>

349 a Γυνή 142, 1.

b Βέλτιστοι δὴ 671 c (1).

c Ὡς πλείστοι 633 f. In this connection ὥς ἂν δύνηται refers to the future, a relative with ἄν and the subjunctive. Compare a past, ὥς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα /8/, 6.

d Ὡς with the participle 593 c, 594, 595 *first example*, ὥς here being equivalent to λέγων ὅτι.

e See 320 for ζάω and 257 a, 350, 5 for γίγνομαι.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 350 γυνή γυναικός ἡ *woman, wife.* ὁμο-λογέω *say the same, agree,*
 miso-gynist *admit; ἅμα 173, ὁμοιος 232,*
 βραχύς -εία -ύ *short. Latin bre-* λόγος 298. *homologous*
vis; brachy-logy περι-γίγνομαι *G get the better of,*
 νέος -ᾱ -ον *young, new; νεανίας 86.* overcome
 Latin *novus; neo-logy, neo-phyte,* συμ-πέμπω *D send with or to-*
 Naples *Νεά-πολις* together
 ζάω *live, am alive. zoö-logy ζῶον* αἰεί *adv. ever, always, from time to*
animal, λόγος 298 time. Latin *aevum; AYE*

351 Οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδόκουν εἶναι βελτίονες στρατιῶται ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ¹ καὶ ἴσως βέλτιστοι δὴ² τῶν³ τότε. 2 τῶν παίδων ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτερος ἦν Εὐκλείδης ὁ δὲ νεώτερος Ξανθικλῆς. 3 ἐντεῦθεν ὁ σατράπης Ἐπύαξαν τὴν Συνενέσιος⁴ γυναιῖκα εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀπ-έπεμψε τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν,⁵ καὶ συν-έπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. οὗτοι δὲ πρότεροι⁶ τοῦ σατράπου⁷ πέντε ἡμέραις⁸ εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφ-ίκοντο. 4 ὁ δὲ Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλεῆα ὅτι ἤξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὥς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους. 5 ἐνομίζομεν παρὰ⁹ τῷ σατράπῃ ὄντες¹⁰ ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιώτέρας ἂν τῆς¹¹ τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. 6 καὶ νῦν οἷχονται εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 7 οὐδεὶς πάντων τῶν τότε ζώντων σοφώτερος ἢ δικαιότερος ἦν τοῦ ἄρχοντος ἡμῶν. 8 ὁ ἡμέτερος σατράπης ἦν ἀξιώτερος τοῦ εὖ πράττειν¹² ἢ ἕτεροι καὶ τῶν³ τότε ἀξιώτατος ἄρχειν, ὥς ὁμολογεῖται¹³ ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν ἐγνωκότων¹⁴ οἷος ἦν. 9 οἱ Ἕλληνες πλείονος ἄξιοι στρατιῶται εἶναι ἐλέγοντο τῶν Περσῶν. ἀμείνονες γὰρ εἶναι¹⁵ τῇ ἀρετῇ. 10 πρὶν ἐγνωμεν αὐτὸν ἐν μάχῃ

οὐκ ᾔσμεν¹⁶ ὅποῖος ἄρχων εἶη. **11** ποῦ δυνήσεσθε ἰδεῖν μείζονας πόλεις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστέρᾱς τούτων τῶν ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ χώρᾳ οὐσῶν;¹⁷ **12** ᾔτησεν αὐτοὺς συ-στρατεύεσθαι ὡς εἰσ-βαλῶν¹⁸ εἰς τοὺς Πισιδᾱς. **13** Ἀρίστιππος αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ¹⁹ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως περι-γενόμενος²⁰ ἂν τῶν ἐχθρῶν.²¹ **14** ἡ ταχίστη ὁδὸς οὐκ αἰεὶ ἐστὶν ἡ βραχυτέρᾱ.

- 352 These men are more valuable soldiers with²² their arms than without²² them. **2** Not often have I seen women fairer than these. **3** We arrived too²³ late for the battle. **4** We are more friendly to the satrap than²⁴ to his brother. **5** These are the bravest men of our time.²⁵

353 ¹ οἱ πολλοί *the many, most men.*

² δὴ strengthens the superlative: *the very best.*

³ τῶν τότε *of the men of that time* 507 e.

⁴ Συνένεσιος: a genitive, -is -ios.

⁵ ὁδόν 540, 536.

⁶ πρότεροι *before, earlier*: an adjective where English uses an adverb 546.

⁷ σατράπου 517: the regular use when ἢ *than* is omitted.

⁸ ἡμέραις 526 c. Translate the adjective, genitive, and dative *five days before the satrap.*

⁹ παρὰ *in the service of.*

¹⁰ ὄντες *if we were.*

¹¹ ἀξιοτέρᾱς τιμῆς *more adequate honor* 510 d end. τυγχάνω with the genitive means *hit, reach, obtain.*

¹² τοῦ εὖ πράττειν *more deserving of success* 516 a.

¹³ ὁμολογεῖται: the subject is personal *he*, though we say *as is acknowledged.*

¹⁴ ἐγνωκότων *who have come to know*: perf. act. ptc. of γινώσκω.

¹⁵ εἶναι: the infinitive shows that the γάρ clause is part of what was reported.

¹⁶ ᾔσμεν: from οἶδα.

¹⁷ οὐσῶν: fem. gen. pl. ptc. ὦν *being*: translate *that are* or omit.

¹⁸ ὡς εἰσ-βαλῶν εἰς *saying that he intended to make an incursion into the country of.* The participle is future 583 b.

¹⁹ καί: omit and translate *three months' pay for (eis) two thousand troops.*

²⁰ περι-γενόμενος ἂν 525.

²¹ τῶν ἐχθρῶν 509 b.

²² Use a participle ἔχων and μὴ ἔχων. Why μή? See 486.

²³ Express by the comparative

adjective ἵστερος followed by the
genitive 517: *later than the battle.*

²⁴ ἥ must be expressed here.

²⁵ τῶν νῦν: compare τῶν τότε.

XL ADVERBS AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

354 a Read 228 and learn the forms from οἶκος, ἄλλος, Αἰῆ-
ναι, ἕτερος, πᾶς, and those in 228 a.

b Review 229, 230, 231, 232. The -άκις forms are used
in making the thousands, ἑξ-ακισ-χίλιοι *six thousand*.

c Learn 234, 235, 240 a, b, c, d, 241.

d Review 236, 237 omitting the forms in parenthesis.

e Check in the Verb-list σκοπέω σκέπτομαι and τρέχω.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 355 ἀργύριον -ου τό *silver, money.* σκοπέω σκέπτομαι *watch, observe;*
Latin *argentum* *consider, deliberate;* σκοπός 156.
ὄνος -ου ὁ *ass* *scope, skeptic, epi-scopal, bishop*
ἀ-παράσκευος -ον *unprepared;* α- *τρέχω* *run. troche, trochee. With*
neg. cp. παρα-σκευάζω 397, σκευο- *the aorist ἔ-δραμ-ον cp. δρόμος*
φόρος 304 *397. dromedary*
ἱερός -ᾱ -όν *holy, sacred;* τὰ ἱερά *ἀ-μαχεί* *adv. without fighting; α-*
the sacrifices; the omens from neg. + μάχη 104
inspecting the vitals of the
victim. hiero-glyphic, hier-archy
ἄρχω 66 *ἔστε* *adv. even to; conj. adv. 631,*
until, as long as
σχολαῖος -ᾱ -ον *leisurely, slow;* *πότερον* *adv. whether: πότερον or*
σχολαῖως *adv. slowly; σχολή* *πότερα . . . ἢ whether . . . or*
leisure. school, scholiast *τήμερον* *adv. today; ἡμέρᾱ 72*
εὔχομαι D *pray, make vows* *ἐκαστος -η -ον* *each; pl. several*
ἦν-περ, ἔάν-περ *conj. with subjv.*
if at least; ἐάν if

356 Ὅποτε οἱ Ἕλληνες διώξειαν τοὺς ὄνους χαλεπὸν ἦν
λαμβάνειν αὐτούς· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶτ-
τον. 2 ἐκεῖ δύο ἵπποι ἦσαν· ὁ δὲ ἵππεὺς ἐρωτώμενος

ὁπότερον αἰρήσοιτο ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι τὸν μὲν ἐγγυτέρω αὐτός γε νομίζοι εἶναι καλλίονα, τὸν δὲ ἕτερον ἂν ἔλοιτο ὡς νεώτερόν τε ὄντα καὶ θάπτονα. 3 νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει.¹ ἀμαχεῖ μὲν ἐνθένδε οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπ-ελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεν ἀπ-ίωμεν ἔφονται καὶ ἐπι-πεσοῦνται.² 4 ἐνθάδε οὖν μένωμεν, ἔνθα νῦν ἐσμεν· οὐδὲ γάρ τι³ ἄλλοθεν ἔχομεν ἐλπίδας σωθῆναι. 5 σκεψώμεθα οὖν πότερον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττόν ἐστιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἧς οὗτοι παρ-εἶχον ὀλίγα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου,⁴ μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας,⁵ ἢ αὐτοὺς⁶ λαμβάνειν, ἥνπερ κρατῶμεν, τοιούτοις χρωμένους ὁποίοις⁷ ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται. 6 ἔλεγον ὅτι εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικῶν καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξόμενος.⁸ 7 ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπ-ιόντας αὐτοὺς ἡδὴ ἑώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ δι-ἤλθον ὅσον⁹ ἐξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ ἐγένετο τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ,¹⁰ τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προ-ελθόντες κατ-έλαβον χωρίον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἧ¹¹ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παρ-ιέναι, τὸ ἀκρότατον τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἡ ὁδὸς ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. 8 ἐνόμιζε ὅσῳ¹² μὲν θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτῳ¹² ἀπαρασκευότερον βασιλέᾳ λήψεσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσοῦτῳ πλείον στρατευμα δυνήσεσθαι συλ-λέγειν βασιλέᾳ. 9 μετὰ τὴν μάχην ὁπόσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν¹³ καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες.

- 357 They proceeded rapidly as they wished to arrive before Klearchos. 2 The¹⁴ more rapidly¹⁵ we travel the¹⁴ sooner¹⁵ we shall arrive. 3 They were considering

whether they should wait or go today. 4 We cannot take these towns without¹⁶ fighting. 5 At the foot of the mountain was a road where they were intending to pass.

358 ¹ οὕτως ἔχει *the matter stands thus*: οὕτως is sometimes used for ὧδε.

² ἐπι-πεσοῦνται: fut. of ἐπι-πίπτω.

³ τι *in any way*: adverbial.

⁴ ἀργυρίου 513.

⁵ μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας *and we no longer have this either*: μηδέ instead of οὐδέ, being in an infinitive clause 564.

⁶ αὐτοὺς *ourselves*.

⁷ τοιούτοις . . . ὅποιοις *such kinds as, whatever kind*.

⁸ ἀλεξόμενος *by repaying*.

⁹ ὅσον *as much as, about*: adverbial like ὥς.

¹⁰ τῇ τρίτῃ: *with us the third day* would be the second.

¹¹ ἧ *where*.

¹² ὅσῳ . . . τοσοῦτῳ *by as much as . . . , by so much* is best rendered in English by *the . . . the*. For the dative see 526 c and compare 351, 3 and 353, 8.

¹³ ἐντὸς αὐτῶν *within their ranks*.

¹⁴ Use note 12.

¹⁵ θάπτον.

¹⁶ μὴ μαχόμενοι.



The theater at Athens, in its present condition.

XLI Ω - VERBS

THE IMPERATIVE MODE

359 a Paradigms 252-254, 313-315, 331, 336, 348, 367.

b Learn the endings 271 and formation 272, 284, 300 c, 307, 349 and a. Notice that the only peculiarities occur in the second singular.

c Learn the imperatives of φημι, εἰμι, εἶμι, οἶδα in 382, 384, 385, 386.

360 Imperative Sentences 484, 485. Negative μή. Review 473 a, b, c.

a Present Imperative μὴ θαυμάζετε *do not be surprised*, as you seem to be.

b Aorist Subjunctive μὴ θαυμάσητε *do not be surprised*, at what I shall say.

c Present Imperative μὴ λεγέτω *let him not go on saying, let him not say*.

d Aorist Subjunctive μὴ λέξῃ *let him not say*.

36/ We now have the forms to make a complete synopsis by *tense-systems* and by using all the *tense-stems* a complete synopsis of the verb.

a Use for models the synopses in 36/ (A) and 36/ (B).

b Study the synopses in 336, 348, 350, and in 369 ἔβην, ἔδρᾱν, ἐπριάμην, ἔφθην, ἔάλων.

c Insert the imperative forms in the synopses in 277.

d In the Verb-list see εὕρισκω, -θνήσκω and -κτείνω, θύω, -μιμνήσκω, φέρω.

36/
(A)

SYNOPSIS OF

ACTIVE				
	PRESENT SYSTEM	FUTURE SYSTEM	AORIST SYSTEM	PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM
PRINCI- PAL PARTS	παύω	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	πέπαυκα
STEMS	παυ-, παυοῦε-	παυσοῦε-	παυσα-	πεπαυκα-
IND.	παύω ἔπαυον	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	πέπαυκα ἔπεπαύκη
SUBJV.	παύω		παύσω	πεπαύκω
OPT.	παύοιμι	παύσοιμι	παύσαιμι	πεπαύκοιμι
IMPV.	παύε		παύσον	
INF.	παύειν	παύσειν	παύσαι	πεπαυκέναι
PTC.	παύων	παύσων	παύσας	πεπαυκώς
MIDDLE				
IND.	παύομαι ἐπαυόμην	παύσομαι	ἐπαυσάμην	
SUBJV.	παύωμαι		παύσωμαι	
OPT.	παυοίμην	παυσοίμην	παυσαίμην	
IMPV.	παύου		παύσαι	
INF.	παύεσθαι	παύσεσθαι	παύσασθαι	
PTC.	παυόμενος	παυσόμενος	παυσάμενος	
PASSIVE				
IND.	παύομαι ἐπαυόμην			
SUBJV.	παύωμαι	See Passive System	See Passive System	
OPT.	παυοίμην			
IMPV.	παύου			
INF.	παύεσθαι			
PTC.	παυόμενος			

παύω stop

VOICE			
PERFECT MIDDLE SYSTEM		PASSIVE SYSTEM Θη:ε- PASSIVE	
πέπαυμαι		ἐπαύθην	
PERFECT πεπαυ- FUTURE PERFECT		AORIST παυθη:ε- FUTURE	
VOICE			
πέπαυμαι ἐπεπαύμην πεπαυμένος ὦ πεπαυμένος εἶην πέπαυσο πεπαύσθαι πεπαυμένος			
	πεπαυσο:ε-	παυθησο:ε-	
VOICE			
πέπαυμαι ἐπεπαύμην πεπαυμένος ὦ πεπαυμένος εἶην πέπαυσο πεπαύσθαι πεπαυμένος	πεπαύσομαι πεπαυσοίμην πεπαύσεσθαι πεπαυσόμενος	ἐπαύθην παυθῶ παυθείην παύθητι παυθῆναι παυθεῖς	παυθήσομαι παυθησοίμην παυθήσεσθαι παυθησόμενος

SYNOPSIS

36/
(B)

	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
STEM . . .	ἀγο:ε	κελευο:ε	ὄραο:ε	ποιεο:ε	βουλο:ε
MEANING	<i>drive</i>	<i>urge, bid</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>make, do</i>	<i>will, wish</i>
IND.	ἄγω ἤγον	κελεύω ἐκέλευον	ὄρῳ έώρων	ποιῶ ἐποίουν	βούλομαι ἐβουλόμην
SUBJV.	ἄγω	κελεύω	ὄρῳ	ποιῶ	βούλωμαι
OPT.	ἄγοιμι	κελεύοιμι	ὀρώην	ποιοίην	βουλοίμην
IMPV.	ἄγε	κέλευε	ὄρᾱ	ποίει	βούλου
INF.	ἄγειν	κελεύειν	ὀρᾶν	ποιεῖν	βούλεσθαι
PTC.	ἄγων	κελεύων	ὀρῶν	ποιῶν	βουλόμενος

FUTURE	σα-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ	σα-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ	σα-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ	ο:ε-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ
ἥξο:ε <i>come</i>	τελεσα- <i>complete</i>	τελεσα- <i>finish</i>	ποιησα- <i>make, do</i>	έλθο:ε <i>come, go</i>
ἥξω	ἐτέλεσα τελέσω	ἐτελεσάμην τελέσωμαι	ἐποίησα ποιήσω	ἦλθον έλθω
ἥξοιμι	τελέσαιμι τέλεσον	τελεσαίμην τέλεσαι	ποιήσαιμι ποιήσον	ἐλθοιμι έλθέ
ἥξειν ἥξων	τελέσαι τελέσᾱς	τελέσασθαι τελεσάμενος	ποιήσαι ποιήσᾱς	ἐλθεῖν ἐλθών

ο:ε-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ	θη:ε-ΑΟΡΙΣΤ	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
ἔλο:ε <i>choose</i>	πρᾶχθη:ε- <i>accomplish</i>	ἔσ- <i>am</i>	ί-, ει- <i>go</i>	ιδ-, οιδ- <i>know</i>	φα:η- <i>say</i>
εἰλόμην ἔλωμαι ἐλοίμην ἐλοῦ ἐλέσθαι ἐλόμενος	ἐπράχθην πρᾶχθῶ πρᾶχθείην πράχθητι πρᾶχθῆναι πρᾶχθείς	εἰμι ἦν ᾶ εἶην ἴσθι εἶναι ᾶν	εἶμι ἦα ἴω ἴοιμι ἴθι ἰέναι ἰών	οἶδα ἤδη εἰδῶ εἰδείην ἴσθι εἰδέναι εἰδῶς	φημι ἔφην φῶ φαίην φάθι φάναι φάσκων

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 362 **καιρός** -οῦ ὁ *the right time, opportunity; advantage, advantageous*
σύμ-μαχος -ον *allied; subst. ally; σύν 178 + μάχομαι 199, μάχη 104*
ἀδικέω *do wrong; A treat unjustly, injure; ἄδικος unjust, a- neg. + δίκη 397*
ἀντι-λέγω *speak against, object*
ἀπο-κτείνω *kill off, put to death; used as active to ἀπο-θνήσκω 208*
δια-βάλλω *throw across at with words, slander, accuse falsely. diabolic, devil*
ἐφ-οράω *look upon, keep in sight; ἐπί + ὁράω 320; ἔφορος 4/6*
ἡττάομαι *am inferior, am surpassed, am defeated; ἡττων 182, 2.*
θύω *sacrifice; mid. consult the omens by sacrifice. Latin fūmus; thyme*
ἀνα-μνησκώ /85, two A, *remind; perf. μνήσκειαι G, see also 588 a, c,*
call to mind, remember; μανθάνω 253. mnemonics
προ-ελαίνω *drive ahead, march on*
στρατοπεδεύομαι *encamp; στρατόπεδον 66*
συ-σκευάζω *pack up; σύν 178; cp. ἀ-παράσκευος 355*
τίμωρέω *D of person avenged, A of person punished, G of the crime; help, avenge; mid. punish*
φέρω *bear, carry; σκευο-φόρος 304. Latin ferō; meta-phor μετά 178*
συμ-φέρω *bring together; D am of advantage to*
αὔριον *adv. tomorrow*
εἶτα *adv. then, thereupon, afterwards*
οὐ-πώ-ποτε *adv. never yet, never; οὔπω 367*
εἰ δὲ μή 656 c, *but if not, otherwise, else*
***τοί-νυν** *conj. adv. 673 b, accordingly, well then*

363 Μὴ δια-βάλλετε τοὺς συμμάχους ἡμῶν· οὐ γὰρ πώποτε¹ οὐδὲν ἡδίκηκάσιν ἡμᾶς. 2 θυσάσθων τοῖς θεοῖς ἐπὶ νίκη πρὶν προσ-ελθεῖν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἵνα σώσωσι τοὺς ἐν-οικοῦντας, καλὰ² δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ ἱερὰ ἔστω. 3 μὴ ἀπο-κτείνης τὸν κήρῡκα· οἱ γὰρ θεοὶ τίμωρήσουσιν³ αὐτῷ, οὕτως τίμωρούμενοί σε ὑπὲρ ἐκείνου. 4 ἐλθόντες πάλιν παρὰ βασιλεῆ εὔρετε ἐκεῖ ὃ τι ἂν

δύνησθε ἀγαθόν. 5 ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συν-απ-ιέναι, ἥκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός, εἰ δὲ μή, αὐριον ἀπ-ιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν, ἀλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἔαν μὲν ἥκωμεν, ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν⁴ οἴησθε μάλιστα συμ-φέρειν. ὃ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ⁵ τούτοις εἶπεν. 6 ἀπ-ιόντες⁶ τοῖνυν, ἔφη, συ-σκευάζεσθε καὶ ἐπειδὰν παρ-αγγειλῇ⁷ τις, ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ⁸ καὶ μὴ κατα-ληφθῆτε ὑπὸ τούτων. 7 νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδενσώμεθα προ-ελθόντες⁹ ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι. ἕως δ' ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ¹⁰ ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας προ-ελαυνέτω ἐφ-ορῶν ἡμᾶς καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν,¹¹ ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ.¹¹ 8 εἰ δέ τις ἄλλο ὁρᾷ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντ-έλεγεν, ἔδοξε ταῦτα. νῦν τοῖνυν, ἔφη, ἀπ-ιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα.¹² καὶ ὅστις τε¹³ ὑμῶν τοὺς οἴκοι ἐπι-θῦμει¹⁴ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου¹⁴ τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε¹³ ζῆν ἐπιθῦμει, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων¹⁵ τὸ ἀπο-κτείνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀπο-θνήσκειν ἐστίν· καὶ¹³ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων¹⁶ ἐπι-θῦμει, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σφάζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν. 9 σύγε οὐδὲ¹⁷ ὁρῶν γινώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. 10 εἶτα δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔλεξε τοιαύδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω¹⁸ τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν.¹⁹

- 364 Try to do well whatever you do. 2 Do not go before our friends come. 3 Let each man tell what he thinks is best. 4 Always remember to be brave men. 5 Let us remember²⁰ that to the victors²¹ belong the spoils.²¹

365 ¹ οὐ γὰρ πώποτε *for never yet, never*: cp. οὐπώποτε and οὐποτε; οὐδέν, a cognate accusative, repeats and strengthens the negation 487

² καλὰ *propitious*.

³ τιμωρήσουσιν: note the difference in meaning, and in the case following the verb, between the active and the middle.

⁴ ὑμῖν μάλιστα συμ-φέρειν *is most to your own advantage*. ὑμῖν is reflexive.

⁵ οὐδέ *not even*.

⁶ ἀπ-ιόντες: translate by a verb with *and*: *go back and pack up*. Read 583.

⁷ ἐπειδὴν παρ-αγγεῖη τις *when the order is given*. The Greek is personal and active: *when one gives the order*; this is not natural in English.

⁸ τῷ ἡγουμένῳ 520 a end.

⁹ προ-ελθόντες ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι *after advancing as far as it shall seem to be advantageous*.

¹⁰ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν *what is ahead*.

¹¹ ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ *that nothing may escape our notice*. ὥς: like ἵνα. λάθῃ: from λανθάνω, with object accusative ἡμᾶς.

¹² τὰ δεδογμένα: perf. mid. ptc. from δοκέω; cp. τὰ δόξαντα 307, 10.

¹³ τε . . . τε . . . καὶ mark the correlation of the clauses. In the last clause δέ is the connective and καὶ is not *and*.

¹⁴ τούτου 510 d end: τυγχάνω means here *obtain*.

¹⁵ τῶν νικούντων 508 end.

¹⁶ χρημάτων 511 c end.

¹⁷ οὐδὲ . . . οὐδέ: not οὔτε . . . οὔτε. The former is *not even . . . nor yet, not only not . . . but not even*; the latter *neither . . . nor*.

¹⁸ χαλεπῶς φέρω *take it hard, am greatly troubled*. Compare Latin *aegrē* or *molestē ferō*.

¹⁹ πράγμασιν 526 a end.

²⁰ μεμνώμεθα: perf. subjv. mid., not the compound form. Use a participle or *δτι* clause after it.

²¹ Find the expression in the last clause in number 8.



Practising the broad jump.

XLII Ω-VERBS

VERBS ASSUMING σ. LIQUID AND MUTE PERFECTS

366 Review and learn 322 a, b, c and 338–345 entire with all cross references.

In studying these paradigms observe that we have already had the consonant changes before σ, μ, and θ: 37, /33 a, /45 a. The only new facts are:

a Σ between two consonants and before another σ is dropt 55 b, c.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{b A } \pi\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{l} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} + \tau\alpha\iota = -\pi\tau\alpha\iota, \text{ a } \kappa\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{l} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \\ + \tau\alpha\iota = -\kappa\tau\alpha\iota, \text{ a } \tau\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{l} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} + \tau\alpha\iota = -\sigma\tau\alpha\iota. \end{array}$$

Consult 43 a, b.

We have already had π, β, φ and κ, γ, χ before θ changing to φ and χ respectively /45 a. So we have a smooth mute before a smooth mute and a rough mute before a rough mute: πτ, κτ and φθ, χθ.

c Remember that the perfect middle tense-stems from φαίνω *show*, βλάπτω *injure*, τάττω *arrange*, πείθω *persuade* are πεφαν-, βεβλαβ-, τεταγ-, πεπειθ-. Examine the forms in 366 f and note the consonant changes.

d Write synopses of the perfect middle on the forms in 322 b, 339, 341, 345, writing the *tense-stem* at the top. Use 366 g as a model.

e Learn the principal parts of δια-λέγομαι /85 and see 291 b.

PERFECT MIDDLE FORMS.

f

INDICATIVE	πέφαν-μαι πέφαν-ται		πέφασ-μαι πέφαν-ται
	βέβλαβ-μαι βέβλαβ-ται		βέβλαμ-μαι βέβλαπ-ται
	τέταγ-μαι τέταγ-ται		τέταγ-μαι τέτακ-ται
	πέπειθ-μαι πέπειθ-ται		πέπεισ-μαι πέπεισ-ται
INFINITIVE	πεφάν-σθαι βεβλάβ-σθαι τετάγ-σθαι πεπειθ-σθαι	βεβλάβ-θαι τετάγ-θαι (πεπειθ-θαι)	πεφάν-θαι βεβλάφ-θαι τετάχ-θαι πεπεισ-θαι

PERFECT MIDDLE SYNOPSSES

g

VERB . .	πέμπω	ἄρχω	πείθω
STEM . .	πεπεμπ-	ἄρχ-	πεπειθ-
MEANING	<i>send</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>persuade</i>
IND.	πέπεμμαι ἐπετέμμην	ἤργμαι ἤργμην	πέπεισμαι ἐπετείσμην
SUBJV.	πεπεμμένος ᾧ	ἤργμένος ᾧ	πεπεισμένος ᾧ
OPT.	πεπεμμένος εἶην	ἤργμένος εἶην	πεπεισμένος εἶην
IMPV.	πέπεμψο	ἄρξο	πέπεισο
INF.	πετέμφθαι	ἄρχθαι	πεπεισθαι
PTC.	πεπεμμένος	ἤργμένος	πεπεισμένος

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 367 ἀπορίᾱ -ās ἡ *want, difficulty, perplexity*; ἄ-πορος 72
νόμος -ου ὁ *custom, law*; νομίζω 326. Latin *numerus*; astro-πο-
my, eco-ποmy οἶκος 30
τοξότης -ου ὁ *bowman, archer*;
τόξον *bow* 402, τόξευμα 222.
toxicology
προτεράιος -ᾱ -ον *former*; τῇ προ-
τεράῳ *on the day before*; πρό,
πρότερος 183
ἀπ-ελαύνω *drive away, ride away*
δια-λέγομαι 185, D of person, A
of thing, *talk with*; λέγω 30.
dialect, dialogue
δια-πράττω usually mid. *do thor-*
oughly, effect, stipulate
ἐπι-τάττω *draw up next*; D *put*
upon, *enjoin, command*
ὀρμάω 185, *set going; hasten*
on; frequently in mid. *set out,*
start
προσ-ελαύνω *drive towards; ride*
towards; march against
συν-εφ-έπομαι D *follow on with,*
accompany
βαρέως adv. *heavily*; βαρύς *heavy.*
bary-tone
πλήν adv. G *except*; conj. adv.
except that
πολλ-άκις adv. 232, *many times,*
frequently, often; πολὺς 344
μή-πω, οὐ-πω adv. *not yet*; οὐπώ-
ποτε 362
ταχύ adv. 230, 231, *speedily, soon*;
ταχύς 344, ταχέως
ὑστερον adv. *later, afterwards*;
ὑστερος 183
- 368 Οὕτως οἱ πεζοὶ νῦν τεταγμένοι εἰσίν, ὥς ἔστιν¹ ὁ τῶν
Ἑλλήνων νόμος εἰς² μάχην. 2 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ
ἄγγελοι ἀπ-ήλαντον καὶ ἦκον ταχύ. ᾧ³ καὶ δῆλον ἦν
ὅτι ἐγγὺς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο⁴
ταῦτα πράττειν. 3 πολλάκις ἤδη δι-ειλέγμεθα αὐτῷ
περὶ τῆς σωτηριᾶς τῆς πόλεως, ἀλλ' οὐπώποτε δέδοκ-
ται οὔτε ἡμῖν οὔτε τούτῳ πειρᾶσθαι κωλύειν τοὺς πολί-
τας μὴ⁵ ἀθροίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 4 ὁ δὲ σα-
τράπης ἔχων τοὺς πεζοὺς οὐπω ἀφ-ῖκτο ἀλλ' ἔτι προσ-
ήλανεν, ἡνίκα ἡμεῖς ὠρμώμεθα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου
λαβόντες τοὺς ἰππέας. 5 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
ῥῆντο⁶ ἀντὶ τῶν τεθνηκότων ἀπ-ῆλθον εἰς τὸν σταθ-

μὸν ὄθιν ὥρμηντο, ἔνθα ἤδη δι-επέπρᾱκτο τὰ τῇ προ-
 τεραίᾳ δεδογμένα. 6 ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-ειλημ-
 μένοι⁷ ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχᾶγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ
 συν-επι-σπόμενοι⁸ ἀπ-έθανον, ἐν πολλῇ δὲ⁹ ἀπορίᾳ
 ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι⁷
 ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἱππέᾳ οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε
 δῆλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν ἀπο-κτείνειαν,
 ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη. 7 ὁ σκοπός
 φησι¹⁰ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἤδη προσ-ῆχθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς τοξότᾱς
 καὶ ἀπ-εληλάσθαι,¹¹ ἀλλ' ὕστερόν φησι πάλιν πειράσε-
 σθαι αὐτοὺς. 8 πάντες οἱ τοξόται πλὴν τῶν μεθ'
 ἡμῶν ἐᾶλώκασιν.¹² 9 ἀκούσαντες τοῦ κήρυκος οὐ
 καλὰ ὄντα τὰ ἱερὰ βαρέως ἔφερον¹³ οἱ ἄρχοντες.

- 369 The archers have been drawn up in ranks before the camp.
 2 We have been led into many battles by this commander.
 3 He says¹⁴ that the cavalry have been overtaken by the
 enemy and captured. 4 He has been abandoned by those
 very men who were formerly¹⁵ his friends. 5 Why had
 he not been sent for when¹⁶ we arrived? ¹⁷

370 ¹ ἔστιν: for the accent see 20 e.

² εἰς for.

³ ᾧ by this.

⁴ ἐπ-ετέτακτο: the subject is
 πράττειν.

⁵ μὴ ἀθροῖζεσθαι 572.

⁶ ἤρηντο had been chosen: plu-
 perf. pass. of αἰρέω.

⁷ συν-ειλημμένοι: compare the
 passive perfect and aorist forms of
 λείπω and λαμβάνω.

⁸ συν-επι-σπόμενοι: aor. ptc. of
 συν-εφ-έπομαι.

⁹ δὴ emphasizes πολλῇ. Consult
 671 c (1).

¹⁰ φησι 382.

¹¹ ἀπ-εληλάσθαι: ἀπ-ελαύνω.
 Study the Attic Reduplication in
 291 c.

¹² ἐᾶλώκασιν have been captured:
 ἀλίσκομαι.

¹³ βαρέως ἔφερον took it to heart,
 were troubled. Cp. Latin graviter
 ferō.

¹⁴ Use φησι and infinitive.

¹⁵ πρόσθεν.

¹⁶ ἤνικα.

¹⁷ Use the aorist indicative of
 ἀφικνέομαι.

XLIII VERBAL ADJECTIVES

371 a Review φημι 382 a-e, εἰμι 384 a-d, εἶμι 385 a, b, οἶδα 386 a-d.

b Verbals 352, 353 a, b, 354 ; 526 a-c, 524 b.

c Give the meaning of the following verbals : αἰρετός, ἀπ-ιτέος, δια-βατός, ἀ-διά-βατος, δια-βατέος, διωκτέος, δυνατός, ἀ-δύνατος, πειστέος, ποιητέος, πορευτέος.

372 a See σῖτος 144, εὐελπῖς 146, ὑπ-οπτεύω 438 a, 268 b.

b Ἐπί-σταμαι though beginning with ἐπί is not augmented as a compound 268 c. Check it in the Verb-list and note that the inflection is like that of δύναμαι 365 a ; 164-166, 276 a.

c See ἐπί-σταμαι and φοβοῦμαι in 185 and review all the verbs in that list that have been used.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- | | |
|--|--|
| 373 ἑρμηνεύς -έως ὁ <i>interpreter</i> ; Ἑρμῆς <i>Hermes. hermeneutic</i> | εὐ-ελπῖς -ι <i>of good hope, hopeful</i> ;
ἐλπῖς 222 |
| κωμ-άρχης -ου ὁ <i>village ruler, ko-</i>
<i>march</i> ; κώμη 79 + ἄρχω | ἐν-οράω <i>see therein</i> |
| μάντις -εως ὁ <i>prophet, soothsayer</i> ;
μανθάνω 253. <i>necro-mancy</i> | ἐπί-σταμαι 185, <i>know, understand</i> |
| σῖτος -ου ὁ <i>grain, wheat</i> ; <i>provi-</i>
<i>sions. para-site</i> | ὑπ-οπτεύω Δ, or <i>inf. clause, or μή</i>
<i>clause, suspect, apprehend</i> ; ὕπ- |
| βασιλ-ικός -ή -όν <i>belonging to a</i>
<i>king</i> ; βασιλεύς 326. <i>basilica</i> | οπτος <i>suspicious, ὕψομαι 186 a</i>
* ἄρα <i>conj. adv. 673 a, therefore,</i>
<i>accordingly</i> |

374 Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὅτι ἐγὼ στρατηγὸς ἔσομαι· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν-ορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλθῃ πεῖσομαι¹ ἢ δυνητὸν μάλιστα,² ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπί-σταμαι.³ 2 οἱ δὲ αἰρετοὶ⁴

ἤρουντο τὸν σατράπην τί⁵ βούλοιτο ἑαυτοῖς χρῆσθαι. ὁ δ' ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμα^ν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπ-έχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ὑπ-ώπτενον μὲν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέᾳ, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. 3 ἐκ τούτου⁶ Εὐκλείδῃ ἐδόκει διωκτέον τοὺς Πέρσας· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν οἱ ἔτυχον παρ-όντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατ-ελάμβανον. οὔτε γὰρ ἱππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ⁷ φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο κατα-λαμβάνειν. 4 πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς⁸ ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστον⁹ ἀπό-σχωμεν τοῦ βασιλικῷ στρατεύματος. 5 ὅποσοι στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἐν τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ στρατεύματι πάντες ἦδυσαν ὅτι πειστέον εἴη Κλεάρχῳ. 6 ἡμῖν δὲ ταῦτα εἰδόσι πάντα ποιητέα¹⁰ ὡς μήποτε ἐπὶ¹¹ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. 7 ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα¹² ἡμῖν ἐστι δια-βατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην¹³ ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀ-δύνατον δια-βῆναι κωλυόντων¹⁴ πολεμίων. 8 ἀπιτέον ἡμῖν καὶ πειστέον¹⁵ τούτους τοὺς ἄνδρας συν-έπεσθαι ἡμῖν ἵνα φοβῶμεν τοὺς ἱππέας. 9 οἱ μάντις ἔφασαν τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναί πάντων τούτων ὡς ἀγαθῶν ὄντων. 10 ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἠρωτήσαμεν τὸν κωμάρχην, δια-λεγόμενοι διὰ ἑρμηνέως, πότερον σῖτος εἷη πολλὸς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς ἐγγύς τοῦ ποταμοῦ· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη εἰδέναί, ἴσως φοβούμενος. ἄλλος δ' οὐκ ἔφη οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἐν-εῖναι. τούτοις οὖν οἱ ἄρχοντες βαρέως μὲν ἔφερον· ἐδέοντο γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· εὐέλπιδες δ' ἔτι ἦσαν.

375 We must proceed by night, if we wish to get away without being seen by the enemy.¹⁶ **2** You must cross the river before the others reply. **3** We must go away now, if we intend to reach the city before Eukleides. **4** What use¹⁷ do you suppose he wishes to make of us? **5** He said that he did not know where you could get grain for your horses.

376 ¹ πέσομαι: πείθω.

² ἢ δυνατόν (ἔστι) μάλιστα to the best of my ability.

³ ἐπί-σταμαι know how 588 c.

⁴ αἵρετοί delegates.

⁵ τί βούλοιο ἐαυτοῖς χρῆσθαι what use he wished to make of them; τί: cognate accusative. See 536 b, ex. 3.

⁶ ἐκ τούτου in consequence of this, thereupon.

⁷ ἐκ πολλοῦ with a long start. Compare 347, 2.

⁸ σταθμούς: cognate accusative: make our first marches as long as we possibly can.

⁹ ὥς πλείστον: adverbial, as far as possible.

¹⁰ ἡμῖν . . . εἰδόσι . . . ποιητέα knowing this we must make every exertion.

¹¹ ἐπὶ in the power of.

¹² ἄρα as is likely.

¹³ Εὐφράτην: ahead of its clause.

¹⁴ κωλύόντων try to prevent: co-native 454 c.

¹⁵ πειστέον: with the accusative here cannot mean obey as in 5.

¹⁶ Use λανθάνω and a participle: going away escape the notice of the enemy.

¹⁷ Compare 374, 2 and note.

XLIV MI-VERBS

Δείκνυμι AND THE ROOT-AORIST OF Δύω

377 **Paradigms 360, 367.** Write the tense-stems δεικνυ:ϋ-, δυ:ϋ-.

a Study 243, 355, 356, 358 (1)–(5) very carefully, 359 b, 366, 368.

378 a Compare the principal parts of δείκνυμι with those of παύω and write the synopsis of each tense-system, using the tense-stem. The perfect middle is like ἡλλαγμαί 345: δεδεικ-, δέδειγμαί, δέδειξαι, δέδεικται.

b Review the present and the future system of *παύω* 252-254, writing the forms parallel with those of *δείκνυμι* and note the few differences in the present system. There are none in the other systems.

c Compare the inflection of *δείκνυμι* and *ἔδυν*.

d Review the declension of the participles *δεικνύς* and *δύς* 170.

e In the Verb-list check *ἐθέλω*, *-ῶλλυμι*, *ὄμνυμι*. Review *ἔλαβον* and *ἔβαλον* 350, 1, 4.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 379 *ἔργον -ου τό* *work, deed, result.* *ἀπο-δείκνυμι* *point out; two A ap-*
en-ergy, organ, George 320 *point. apo-deictic*
- ὑπο-ζύγιον -ου τό* *under the yoke,* *ἐπι-δείκνυμι* *point to; D of person*
beast of burden; pl. baggage *show, display. epi-deictic*
animals, baggage train. Latin *ἐθέλω* *am willing, volunteer*
jugum *ἐκ-βάλλω* *throw out, banish*
- αἰτιάομαι* *blame, accuse; αἷτιος 50* *ἐκ-πίπτω* *fall out or down;* am*
ἀναγκάζω *force, compel; ἀνάγκη* *banished, am exiled; used as*
 232 *passive of ἐκ-βάλλω*
- ἀντι-ποιέω* *do in return; mid. D of* *ἐξ-απατάω* *deceive completely*
person, G of thing, contend for, *ὄμνυμι* *swear; D swear to; A*
vie with *swear by*
- ἀπ-όλλυμι* *destroy utterly, lose;* *προσ-όμνυμι* *take an additional*
mid. perish, am lost. Latin ab- *oath*
oleō
- βοηθέω* *run to a cry; D help, come* *ὑπο-λαμβάνω* *take under my pro-*
to the rescue of, rescue; βοηθός *tection; reply; interrupt*
 416 c, 437, 438 b. *ὀρθῶς* *adv. rightly, justly; ὀρθός*
straight, ὄρθιος 320
- δείκνυμι* *point at, show. Latin* *ἡ μὴν* *adv. 671 a, in very truth, on*
doceō, dicō, deictic, para-digm *word and honor*

380 Πολύνικος μὲν οὖν ποτε αἰτιᾱσάμενος τοὺς πόλεως
 τινος πολίτας ἐπι-βουλεύειν αὐτῷ τοὺς μὲν ἀπ-έκτεινε
 τοὺς δὲ ἐξ-έβαλεν. ὁ δὲ σατράπης ὑπο-λαβὼν¹ τοὺς

φεύγοντας συλ-λέξῃς στρατεύμα ἐπολέμησε τῷ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἐπειράτο κατ-άγειν τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας.² 2 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ φίλος ἡμῶν ἀπεδείχθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης³ Λυδίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας, καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε κατα-λίποι ἡμᾶς εὖ αὐτὸν ποιοῦντας. πολλοὶ οὖν αὐτῷ ἦσαν ἐθέλοντες κινδυνεύειν αὐτῷ. 3 ἀπ-ώλλυντο δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ στρατιῶται καὶ ὑποζύγια, ἡνίκα ἡμεῖς ἐβοηθήσαμεν αὐτοῖς ἔχοντες σῖτα καὶ ἄλλα ἐπιτήδεια. 4 καὶ ὤμοσαν οἱ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ⁴ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε⁵ ἀδικήσιν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσ-ώμοσαν ἢ μὴν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι καλῶς. 5 ὑπ-έσχετο ἡμῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς πέμψειν τινα σημανοῦντα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο⁶ ἐξ-ηπατήθημεν. 6 ὁ δὲ λοχαγὸς κρίνῃς ἰτέον εἶναι ὥρμᾶτο· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἔκρινεν· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐδύνατο πράττειν. ὥστε οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν ἡτιῶντο αὐτὸν ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε⁷ ἐκινδύνευσεν καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο κακὸν⁸ ποιεῖν. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ λοχαγὸς ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ τὸ ἔργον οὕτως ἔχει· ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἡναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντι-ποιεῖν δὲ οὐδὲν δυναμένους.

- 38/ You have destroyed the very men to whom you swore to be friends. 2 They swore that they would save them and thus deceived them. 3 He was appointing men to point out the road to us and conduct us to a friendly city. 4 They were being driven⁹ out of the country in large numbers, on the charge¹⁰ of being hostile to the rulers. 5 We

shall appoint him satrap¹¹ instead of his brother, as¹⁰ he is more friendly to us.

382 ¹ ὑπο-λαβών . . . συλ-λέξας . . . ἐπολέμησε *after taking under his protection . . . collected . . . and opened hostilities with.* The idea in ὑπο-λαβών is subordinate to that in συλ-λέξας and ἐπολέμησε.

² τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας *the exiles.*

³ σατράπης 534 b.

⁴ τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ *his attendants, staff.*

⁶ μήτε 579 a. The τε is correlative with the following τε: *both not . . . and.*

⁶ τοῦτο: cognate accusative 536 c end.

⁷ τε: correlative with the following καί.

⁸ κακόν is cognate accusative with ποιεῖν, equivalent to κακῶς ποιεῖν, and τοὺς πολεμίους is the object of the whole expression. οὐδέν probably goes with κακόν, though the οὐ-part affects μάλλον.

⁹ Use ἐκ-πίπτω.

¹⁰ Use ὥς and a participle.

¹¹ Consult 534.

XLV MI - VERBS

Ἰστημι AND ITS COMPOUNDS. THE ROOT-AORIST OF Διδράσκω

383 Paradigms 362, 367. Ἔδρᾱν 369 a.

a Study 357, 361, 363 and a, 366, 368.

b Write the tense-stems ἱστα:η-, στα:η-, δρα:ᾱ-.

c In making the subjunctive and optative of these verbs and the other μι-verbs use the rules in 193 and 275. Read carefully 192 and the note. In ἔδρᾱν after ρ the α is retained as ᾱ and in the contraction of the subjunctive it is not absorbed as in other α-stems.

384 Notice the effect of the rough breathing in making the principal parts of compounds of ἱστημι. The augment is ἐ, the reduplication is ἐ:

ἴσθημι	ἀφ-ίστημι	καθ-ίστημι
στήσω	ἀπο-στήσω	κατα-στήσω
ἔ-στη-σα	ἀπ-έστησα	κατ-έστησα
ἔ-στη-ν	ἀπ-έστην	κατ-έστην
ἔ-στη-κα	ἀφ-έστηκα	καθ-έστηκα
ἐ-στά-θη-ν	ἀπ-εστάθην	κατ-εστάθην

a Remember that the principal parts are made from the *verb-stem* and not from the present *tense-stem*.¹ Compare the principal parts of ἴσθημι with the principal parts of παύω 311 and write the synopsis of each tense-system, using the tense-stem.

385 a Compare the present system of ἴσθημι with the present system of δέικνυμι and 361 with 358.

b Review the σα-aorist system of παύω, writing it parallel with ἔστησα; and the ο:ε-aorist ἔλιπον 348, writing it parallel with ἔστην and ἔδραν, and compare the sets.

c Compare ἔστην throughout with the θη:ε- and η:ε-passives and note that the inflection is the same, the tense-systems being στα:η-, παυθη:ε-, φανη:ε- 368, 254, 336.

d Review the declension of the participles ιστάς, στήσας, στάς, δράς 162 b.

e Εἰκός is the neuter participle of ἔοικα *am like*, 370 (6), declined like the neuter of εἰδώς 172.

f In the Verb-list see καλέω and καθ-έζομαι 268 c. Review ἐγενόμην and ἤγαγον 350, 5, 10.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

386 κεφαλή -ης ἡ *head*. Latin *caput*: τρόπαιον -ου τό *trophy*; τροπή
a-cephalous a- negative turning, τρέπω 253. trope

¹ ἀπ-έστησα is not made from ἀφ-ίστημι. It is made from ἔστησα by prefixing ἀπό. ἀφ-έστηκα is made from ἔστηκα by prefixing ἀπό.

ἄσμενος -η -ον *with pleasure, gladly*. Cp. ἡδέως 344 and see 545, 546

εἰκός -ότος ptc. neut. *natural, reasonable*; ὡς εἰκός *as is natural, probable, naturally*

τελευταῖος -ᾱ -ον *last*; τελευτή *end*, τέλος 338

ψιλός -ή -όν *bare, barren*

καθ-έξομαι *sit down; encamp*; κατά + ἔξομαι. Latin *sedeō*; cathedral

ἵστημι *make stand, set, stop, station*; intr. forms *stand*; mid. *set myself, stand; set for myself*. Latin *sistō*; statics, hydrostatics ὕδωρ 222

ἀν-ίστημι *make stand up, arouse*; intr. forms and mid. *stand up, arise*; ἀνά 178. *anastatio*

ἀφ-ίστημι, G of person, *set off from, cause to revolt*; intr. forms and mid. *revolt, withdraw from*; ἀπό 178. *apostasy*

καθ-ίστημι *set down, settle, station, establish, appoint*; intr. forms *am stationed, take my place, become established*; mid. *take my place, get myself into (εἰς)*; establish for myself, appoint; κατά 178

προ-ίστημι *set at the head of*; intr. forms G *am at the head of, command*; πρό 178

μέχρι adv. *up to, as far as, even to*; equivalent to Latin *usque*; G *as far as, until*; conj. adv. 631, *so long as, until*; equivalent to Latin *dum, quoad*

πάντῃ adv. *in every way, on all sides*

387 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρ-ήλασε,¹ στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης,² ἐκέλευσε τοὺς Ἕλληνας προ-ιέναι. 2 ὥς δὲ ἀν-έβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησά-μενοι κατ-έβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔ-στη-σαν³ οἱ Ἕλληνες. 3 αὐτίκα ἐπείθοντο ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς. 4 οἱ μὲν ἱππεῖς εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔ-στη-σαν⁴ ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ, ὁ δὲ σατράπης ψιλὴν⁵ ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθ-ίστατο κατὰ τὸ μέσον. 5 καὶ οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκ ἐτί ἴστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμητο. 6 οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθριδάτης.

ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν⁶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος
τάδε. 7 κατέστησε⁷ τὴν φάλαγγα πάλιν ὥσπερ τὸ
πρῶτον εἰς τὴν μάχην. 8 ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στρά-
τευμα, ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι⁸ πάντη φάλαγγα,
ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους. 9 ὑπέσχετο⁹ πλήρη τὸν
μισθὸν μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν
πάλιν. 10 ἡθέλομεν Ἀριαῖον βασιλεῖα καθιστάναι.¹⁰
ἄρχοντας κατέστησαν ὁκτώ. 11 ἐπεὶ οὗτος ὁ σα-
τράπης κατέστη εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν, κατέστησε στρατη-
γοὺς τρεῖς. 12 ἐπεὶ κατέστησαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὡς
ἐδόκει ἑαυτοῖς οἱ τριάκοντα, οἱ πολῖται ἀπέστησαν
καὶ κατέστησαν πάλιν τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἀρχήν. 13 οἱ
Ἴωνες ἀπεστήσαντο¹¹ ἀπὸ βασιλείως. 14 οἱ μὲν ἀπο-
στάντες¹² ἐνίκηθησαν ὑπὸ βασιλείως, νεανίας δέ, ἄρχων
κατασταθείς, ἀπέστησεν¹¹ αὐτοὺς πάλιν. 15 ἀπέστη
τούτων¹³ εἰς τὴν πόλιν οὗ προειστήκει τῶν ξένων τῷ
σατράπῃ. 16 εἶδον τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο
διὰ λόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην,¹⁴ οἱ καθ-ἤκον ἀπὸ τοῦ
ὄρους εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. καὶ εἶδον δὴ τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι
οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων.
17 ἐπειρώμεθα ἀνιστάναι αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἔφασαν
ἰέναι. 18 ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐκαθέζετο· Θηραμένης
δὲ ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν· ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν μνησθήσομαι,¹⁵
ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁ τελευταῖον κατ' ἐμοῦ εἶπεν. φησὶ γάρ¹⁶ με
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἀποκτείνειν κτλ.¹⁷

- 388 He set¹⁸ the tent beside the road. Where did you stand?
Where was he standing? 2 They established a govern-
ment of the few. 3 He could not make them get up.
4 The revolutionists were many. The by¹⁹-standers were
few. 5 They revolted and got themselves into a war.

389 ¹ παρ-ήλασε *had driven by all.*

² μέσης *center of*: in predicate position 556.

³ ἔστησαν *stood, halted, root-aorist.* Carefully note ἔστησαν *σα-aorist, transitive* and ἔστησαν *root-aorist, intransitive.* Use 363 and a constantly till the distinctions are fixed.

⁴ ἔστησαν: the accusative with παρά shows that the verb means *went and took a position near.*

⁵ ψιλὴν 552 d, ex. 3.

⁶ ἔστησαν εἰς: compare note 4.

⁷ κατ-έστησε: the *σα-aorist, transitive.*

⁸ καλῶς ἔχειν ὁράσθαι *was good to be seen, presented a fine appearance* 565 and a.

⁹ ὑπ-έσχετο: ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.

¹⁰ καθ-ιστάναι: with two accusatives 534.

¹¹ ἀπ-εστήσαντο *got them to revolt from.* ἀπ-έστησεν αὐτοὺς πάλιν *got them to revolt again.* The *σα-aorist* is transitive in both active and middle and there is practically very little difference in meaning.

¹² οἱ ἀπο-στάντες *the rebels.*

¹³ τούτων: a *from* genitive.

¹⁴ τὴν ὁδὸν . . . γιγνομένην *that the road was.*

¹⁵ μνησθήσομαι *I will mention.* See μέμνημαι 185

¹⁶ γάρ 672 b.

¹⁷ κτλ or κ. τ. λ.: καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ *et cetera.*

¹⁸ Consult 363 constantly throughout this exercise.

¹⁹ Use παρά.

XLVI MI-VERBS

Δίδωμι

390 Principal parts 375. Paradigms 372.

a Study 371, 376, 378, 379, learning the parts that apply to δίδωμι. Use 193 and 275 c, d, e for the subjunctive and optative.

b In studying the paradigms compare the present system, *tense-stem* διδο:ω-, with the present system of ἵστημι 362 and the present system of παύω 252-254.

c Compare the root-aorist system, *tense-stem* δο-, with ἔγνων 367 and ἔλιπον 348. Observe that these three μι-verbs, δίδωμι, ἵημι, and τίθημι, have a middle form in the root-aorist.

d In the Verb-list check ἀλλάττω 341, and καίω for κάω 259 e. Review ἔφυγον and ἔπαθον 350, 2, 3.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 39/ νεκρός -οῦ ὁ *dead body, corpse.* *don, surrender; πρό 178. Latin*
Latin necō; necro-logy, necro-mancy
 373 *prōdō*
 προδοτής -ου ὁ *traitor; προ-δίδωμι*
 τρόπος -ου ὁ *turn, manner, char-*
acter; τρέπω 253, τρόπαιον 386.
kat-allaṭtw change; mid. and
pass. become reconciled; κατά
 178 *kāw burn, consume; καν-. caustio,*
cauterize
 ἀνα-γιγνώσκω *know again, recog-*
nize; read; ἀνά 178
 δίδωμι *give, allow, grant; δῶρον*
 30. *Latin dō; dose, an-ec-dote,*
anti-dote
 ἀπο-δίδωμι *give back, restore, pay;*
mid. sell; ἀπό 178
 δια-δίδωμι *give separately, distrib-*
ute; διά 178
 παρα-δίδωμι *give over to, surren-*
der; παρά 178
 προ-δίδωμι *give forth, betray, aban-*
don, surrender; πρό 178. Latin
prōdō
 κατ-αλλάττω *change; mid. and*
pass. become reconciled; κατά
 178 *kāw burn, consume; καν-. caustio,*
cauterize
 προ-κατα-κάω *burn down in ad-*
vance, lay waste a country with
fire before one
 προσ-ἦκω *have come to, reach; D*
belong to, am related to; impers.
it belongs to, it is proper; πρὸς
 178, ἦκω 148
 συν-ομολογέω *agree upon with, as-*
sent to; ὁμολογέω 350, σύν 178
 αἰθῖς *adv. again, once more; αἶ*
 253
 δῖς *adv. 232, twice*

392 Ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα τοῖς φίλοις ἄσμενος δι-εδίδου πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρώη¹ ἕκαστον δεόμενον. 2 ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τῷ σατράπῃ δίδωσιν. 3 ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Πολύνικος καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς Ἑλλήσι καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 4 ἐὰν δῶμεν ἀργύριον, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται, ὡς καὶ εἰκός, ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. 5 τί οἶει πείσεσθαι,² ἐὰν προ-δῶς σεαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις; 6 ὤμοσαν μηδέποτε προ-δώσειν ἡμᾶς τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἡμῶν. 7 ἀνάγκη δὴ μοί ἐστιν ἢ ὑμᾶς προ-δοῦναι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψεύσασθαι.

8 ἄρα οὐκ ἐπί-στασθε³ τοῦτον ὑμᾶς προ-δόντα; 9 νῦν δὲ προ-δεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς καὶ⁴ οἱ μετὰ τοῦ σατράπου ἀνα-βάντες βάρβαροι. 10 καὶ Νίκαρχος δι-ελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπ-ήτει. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀπο-δώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ⁵ μὴ κᾶειν τὰς οἰκίᾱς. συν-ωμολόγει ταῦτα Νίκαρχος. 11 οὐκ ἦν πρὸς⁶ τοῦ Νικάνδρου τρόπου ἔχοντα τὰ χρήματα μὴ ἀπο-διδόναι. 12 λέγουσί τινες ὅτι οὐδ' ⁷ εἰ βούλοιο δύναιο ἂν ἀπο-δοῦναι ὅσα ὑπ-ισχνεῖ. 13 τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα-διδόασιν αὐτοῖς καὶ οὗτος κελεύει αὐτοὺς κατα-λαμβάνειν τὰ ἄκρα. 14 Πολύνικος δὲ αὐτὸς⁸ ὁμόσᾱς ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιᾶς δούς, αὐτὸς ἐξ-απατήσᾱς συν-έλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν καὶ οὕτως ἐξ-απατήσᾱς τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπο-ολώλεκεν. 15 Ἀριαῖος δὲ ὃν ἡμεῖς ἡθέ-λομεν βασιλέᾱ καθ-ιστάναι, καὶ⁹ ἔδομεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ¹⁰ μὴ προ-δώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος,¹¹ οὐδὲ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐδὲν¹² δείσᾱς, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἡμῶν ἀπο-στὰς ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 16 ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ τῖμωρήσαιντο.¹³ ἡμᾶς¹⁴ δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὀρώντας μήποτε ἐξ-απατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο¹⁵ ὃ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.

ΠΡΟΔΟΤΗΣ

393 Ὅρόντᾱς μὲν δὴ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ ἦν γένει¹⁶ τε βασιλεῖ προσ-ήκων καὶ τῶν¹⁷ περὶ τὸν Λυδίας σατράπην καὶ¹⁸ πρόσθεν μὲν ἤδη δις τῷ σατράπῃ πολεμήσᾱς αὐθις δὲ κατ-αλλαγεῖς. ἐδεήθη δὲ τοῦ σατράπου χιλίους ἱππέας ὑπο-σχόμενος τούτοις¹⁹ ἢ ἀπο-κτενεῖν ἢ ζῶντας λήψε-σθαι τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων στρατιώτᾱς οἱ τῷ στρατεύ-

ματι προ-κατ-έκᾱον. ὁ μὲν οὖν σατράπης ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων, ἐκείνος δὲ ἔπειτα ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλεῆ ὅτι ἄξιοι παρ' αὐτὸν μεγάλην δύναμιν ἱππέων, εἰ βασιλεὺς κελεύσοι²⁰ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέας μὴ μαχέσασθαι αὐτῷ ἥκοντι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔδωκέ τις τῷ σατράπῃ, ὁ δὲ αὐτίκα²¹ ἀνα-γνοὺς αὐτὴν συν-έλαβε τὸν προδότην.

394 Let us immediately arrest the traitor and hand him over to the authorities²² for execution.²² 2 If we surrender our arms we shall have no hope of safety. 3 He can pay now all that he promised then. 4 He exchanged pledges with the Greeks that they would not betray their friends. 5 They made an agreement to give up the dead under²³ a truce.

395 ¹ ὁρώη: pres. opt. act. of ὁράω.

² πείσεσθαι: πάσχω.

³ ἐπί-στασθε: ἐπί-σταμαι.

⁴ καί also.

⁵ ἐφ' ᾧ 567

⁶ πρὸς according to.

⁷ οὐδέ not even.

⁸ αὐτός . . . αὐτός . . . αὐτός: this triple αὐτός with the omission of conjunctions is exceedingly emphatic. We may say *the very man who . . . the very man who . . . this very man deceived and arrested*.

⁹ καί 615 a: the relative construction abandoned. Instead of saying *to whom . . . and from whom*, we may unite and say *with whom we exchanged pledges*.

¹⁰ πιστά: neut. acc. from πιστός, here equivalent to δεξιός.

¹¹ καὶ οὗτος *this man too*.

¹² οὐδέ . . . οὐδέν not even in any way.

¹³ τιμωρήσαιντο 476.

¹⁴ ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ . . . πάσχειν *while for ourselves we must never again . . . but must endure*.

¹⁵ τοῦτο ὅτι . . . θεοῖς *whatever the gods decree*.

¹⁶ γένει . . . προσ-ήκων *a relative of the king*. γένει 527 b.

¹⁷ τῶν περὶ τὸν σατράπην *one of the satrap's attendants*.

¹⁸ τε . . . καὶ . . . καί connect the three groups προσ-ήκων, τῶν περὶ, and πολεμήσας and κατ-αλλαγείς. The latter pair are connected by μὲν . . . δέ. We may translate *a relative of the king, one of the satrap's staff, who had . . . fought against . . . but had come to terms*.

¹⁹ τούτοις *with these*.

²⁰ εἰ κελεύσοι represents an original εἰ κελεύσεις 648 b.

²¹ αὐτίκα 592.

²² Use participle and infinitive.

²³ κατά and accusative.

XLVII MI-VERBS

Τίθημι AND Κεῖμαι

396 Principal parts 375. Paradigms 373, 387 a, b, c.

a Study 371, 376-379, learning the parts that apply to τίθημι. Use 193 and 275 c, d, e for the subjunctive and optative.

b In studying the paradigms compare the present of τίθημι with the present of παύω and of δίδωμι. Compare the active present and aorist forms with the θη:ε- passive, and the present and aorist systems with each other, writing the three in parallel columns with the tense-stems at the top, τιθε:η-, θε-, παυθη:ε-. Remember that the root-aorists of three verbs, δίδωμι, ἵημι, and τίθημι, do not lengthen the stem-vowel.

c Review the κα- and α-perfects 252, 336. δέδωκα, τέθηκα, and εἶκα are the same. Write the synopsis of all the tense-systems, using tense-stems.

d In the Verb-list see μέλω for ἐπι-μέλομαι 185 and διδράσκω for ἀπο-διδράσκω. Review εἶδον and εἶπον 350, 7, 8.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 397 γνώμη -ης ἡ *opinion, judgment*; τόπος -ου ὁ *place, region*. topic, γνώσκω 199. *gnome* topo-graphy, U-topia
- δική -ης ἡ *custom, justice*; δίκαιος ἀπο-διδράσκω *run away, withdraw*; 72, ἀδικέω 362. Latin *jūdex* draw; cp. ἔδραμον fr. τρέχω 355 judge and δρόμος
- δρόμος -ου ὁ *a running, run; race* ἀπο-θύω *pay a vow by sacrifice* course. dromedary, hippo-drome 2/ sacrifice; ἀπό 178 + θύω 367

ἐπι-μέλωμαι 185, G <i>take care of</i> ; ἐπιμελῶς 156	ἐπι-τίθημι D <i>put on</i> , as in δίκην ἐπι-τιθέναι <i>inflict punishment</i> ; mid. <i>fall upon, attack</i>
κατα-πίπτω <i>fall down, fall off</i>	κατα-τίθημι <i>put down</i> ; mid. <i>lay</i> <i>away, lay up, deposit</i>
κείμαι <i>am laid, lie, am stationed</i> ; used also as pass. of τίθημι	προσ-τίθημι D <i>add to</i> ; mid. <i>join</i> <i>in, agree with, agree to</i>
παρα-σκευάζω <i>get ready, prepare</i> ; mid. <i>make preparations, pro-</i> <i>cure, provide</i> ; ἀ-παράσκευος 355, σκευο-φόρος 304, συ-σκευάζω 362	συν-τίθημι <i>place together</i> ; mid. D <i>make an agreement with, con-</i> <i>tract</i> ; σύνθημα 298. <i>synthesis</i>
τίθημι <i>put, place</i> ; <i>get ready</i> ; mid. <i>arrange. thesis, hypo-thesis, theme</i>	εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω <i>am well disposed</i> ; equivalent to εὖνους εἰμί.
δια-τίθημι <i>set in order, dispose, treat</i>	

398 Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἃ θῦσαι εὗξαντο¹ παρ-εσκευάζοντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθα κατ-έστη-σαν καὶ εἶλοντο μὲν Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὢν οἰκοθεν παῖδα ἄκων² ἀπο-κτείνᾱς, δρόμου τ' ἐπι-μεληθῆναι καὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα τιθέναι. ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἀπ-έθυσαν ἃ εὗξαντο. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοὺς ἵππους παρ-έδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ καὶ ἡγέισθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκῶς εἴη. ὁ δὲ δείξᾱς οὐπερ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον, οὗτος ὁ λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται τρέχειν οἱ ἵπποι ἐν τόπῳ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε, κάκιόν τι πείσεται³ ὁ κατα-πεσών. 2 μάλιστα δὲ τράπεζαι κατὰ τινος τῶν ξένων αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο, καὶ καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο οὗτοι ἐν μεγάλῃ τῖμῃ ἐδόκουν εἶναι. 3 ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο, ἀλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπι-θῦμίτε, θέσθε⁴ τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς παρ-ήγγειλε τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο τὰ ὄπλα, συγ-καλεῖ ὁ ἄρχων τὴν στρα-τιὰν καὶ λέγει τάδε. 4 ὁ δὲ Σιλᾶνός ἔλεγε ὡς δίκαιον

εἶη ἀπ-ιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἦν-είχοντο⁵ ἀλλ' εἶπον αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀπο-διδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην⁶ ἐπι-θήσοιεν. **5** ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρ-ἦν Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλᾶνός ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης ἤδη ἀπ-εδεδράκει πλοῖον λαβὼν ἐξ Ἡρακλείας. **6** ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπ-ιοῦσαν νύκτα ἰσχυρῶς ἐπ-ετίθεντο αὐτοῖς ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. **7** τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐ κατ-εθέμην ἐμοὶ ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων. **8** ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσ-θέσθαι. **9** ὅστις δ' ἀφ-ικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως⁷ πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω δια-τιθεῖς ἀπ-επέμπετο ὥστε⁸ αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτῷ⁹ δὲ βαρβάρων¹⁰ ἐπ-εμέλετο ὅπως πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔξουσιν αὐτῷ.¹¹ **10** συν-τίθενται τοῖς νεανίαις τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἂν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν.

- 399 He ordered them to ground arms where they were standing. **2** If we attack them by night, they cannot run away. **3** He is making his preparations carefully, that he may catch you unprepared. **4** They were laying aside many things for themselves. **5** When they saw us approaching, they ran away up the mountain.

400 ¹ ἀ θῆσαι εὐξαντο the offerings they had pledged themselves to make.

² ἄκων unintentionally.

³ κάκϊόν τι πείσεται the one that falls will be hurt somewhat more: translate all the worse for the one that falls.

⁴ τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα is to order arms, or ground arms, halt under arms. The passive is κείσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. See the general vocabulary.

⁵ οὐκ ἦν-είχοντο would not put up with it. ἀν-έχουαι restrain myself, endure. For the double augment see 268 d.

⁶ τὴν δίκην: note the article: *the proper punishment.*

⁷ τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως *of the attendants at the court of the king.* Here again we have the genitive of the point of departure where the English would lead us to expect *παρὰ βασιλεῖ.*

⁸ ὥστε . . . εἶναι 566 b.

⁹ παρ' ἐαυτῷ *at his own court.* Note the position of δέ.

¹⁰ τῶν . . . βαρβάρων ὅπως ἔσονται: by anticipation for ὅπως οἱ . . . βάρβαροι ἔσονται 638 a. For the genitive see 511 c.

¹¹ αὐτῷ: compare 271.

XLVIII MI - VERBS

Ἰημι

40/ Principal parts 375. Paradigms 374.

a Review and complete 375-379. In studying Ἰημι compare throughout with τίθημι. Be careful not to confuse the aorist active forms with the forms of εἶμι *am* 384. Notice that Ἰημι has the rough breathing throughout, ἴε:η-, ἴσο:ε-, ἐ-, εἰκα-, εἰ-, ἐθη:ε-.

b Write synopses of the different tense systems, using tense-stems, and compare with the corresponding tenses of any verb.

c Locate the following forms :

ἔσ- <i>am away</i>	ἔ- <i>send away</i>	ἱ- <i>go away</i>
ἀπ-εἶναι	ἀφ-εἶναι	ἀπ-ιέναι
ἀπ-ών	ἀφ-εἰς	ἀπ-ιών
ἀπ-ῶσι	ἀφ-ῶσι	ἀπ-ίωσι
ἀπ-εἶη	ἀφ-εἶη	ἀπ-ίοι
ἀπ-ῆσαν	ἀφ-εἶσαν	ἀπ-ῆσαν
	ἀφ-ίεσαν	

d See στερέω, στέρομαι in the Verb-list. Review ἔσχον and εἶλον 350, 6, 9.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 402 **δεσπότης** -ου ὁ *master, lord*; 72 d. *myself up, entrust, surrender*;
despot *πρό* 178
- θεράπων** -οντος ὁ *servant, attendant*; *θεραπεύω* *attend to. therapeutie*
- νάπη** -ης ἡ *glen, ravine*
- τόξον** -ου τό *bow*; **τόξευμα** 222, **τοξότης** 367
- ἀπο-στέλλω** *send off, send away, despatch*; *send back*; **στέλλω** 173. *apostle*
- δια-πέμπω** *send in different directions*; *διὰ* 178
- ἐξ-αγγέλλω** *bring word out, report, make known*; *ἐξ* 178
- ἔημι** *send, throw*; *mid. rush, charge*
- ἀφ-ἔημι** *send away, let go, let escape*; *ἀπό* 178
- προ-ἔημι** *send forth*; *mid. D give*
- ὑφ-ἔημι** *put under, concede, admit*; *mid. D yield, surrender*; *allow*;
ὑπό 178
- πρό-κειμαι** *am laid before*; *am prescribed*; *used as pass. of προτίθημι*
- προσ-τάττω** *assign to a duty, give an order to*; *cp. ἐπι-τάττω* 367
- στερέω**, G of thing and A of person, *rob, deprive of*
- στέρομαι** G *am deprived of, am without*
- ἄνω** *adv. G above, up*
- ἐκάστο-τε** *adv. each time, every time*; *ἐκαστος* 355; *cp. -τε in ὅ-τε, τό-τε, πό-τε, ἄλλο-τε*
- πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ** *and besides too*
- τρίς** *adv. 232, thrice, three times*

403 Λίθοις ἔεσαν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ¹ ἐπεὶ πειρῶτο προ-ιέναι. 2 οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δέισαντες εἶσαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην. 3 εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ² τὴν φανεράν οδόν. 4 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο κατα-βαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο, ἔπειτα δὴ ἔεντο οἱ πολέμιοι πολλῶ πληθῆι καὶ θορύβῳ.³ 5 πολλοὶ ἀντ-έλεγον ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον⁴ εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφ-εῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. 6 τούτῳ ἤθελον καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα

404 ¹ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ 510 d: *threw stones at.*

² ἄνω κατὰ *up along.*

³ πληθῆι 525 a, θορύβῳ 526 b.

⁴ ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη *that it was not right.*

προ-έσθαι. 7 καὶ μὴν εἰ ὑφ-ησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ⁵ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἴομεθα πείσεσθαι; 8 ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρ-όντα, ὅποτε στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον,⁶ οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες, προ-δεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ⁷ ἐκ τῶν παρ-όντων ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς ἵεναι καὶ μὴ ὑφ-ίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως⁸ ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα καλῶς νικῶντες σωζόμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν,⁹ ζῶντες δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα¹⁰ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν. 9 αἰρεῖσθαι οὖν ἡμᾶς ἐάσομεν ὅτι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι. 10 ἦγον δὲ ὅθεν ὦμην¹¹ τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσιᾶν δια-βῆναι.

MEMNHΣΟ ΤΩΝ ΑΘΗΝΑΙΩΝ

405 Βασιλεῖ δὲ Δᾱρείῳ ὥς ἐξ-ηγγέλθη Σάρδεις ἁλῶναι¹² ὑπὸ τε Ἀθηναίων καὶ Ἰώνων, πρῶτον μὲν λέγεται¹³ αὐτόν, ὥς ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, Ἰώνων οὐδένα λόγον ποιησάμενον ἐρέσθαι οἷτινες εἶεν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι· πυθόμενον

⁵ ἐπὶ . . . γενησόμεθα *fall into the power of.*

⁶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον *Ariaios and his men*, a common expression.

⁷ δεῖ extends its force to πειρᾶσθαι.

⁸ ὅπως . . . σωζόμεθα *strive how we may save ourselves by an honorable victory* is simply *strive to* etc. ἦν is for ἔάν.

⁹ ἀλλὰ . . . ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν *yet let us meet death* 472.

¹⁰ τοιαῦτα οἷα . . . ποιήσειαν

such treatment as may the gods inflict upon our enemies 476.

¹¹ ὦμην: for φόμην impf. of οἶομαι.

¹² Σάρδεις ἁλῶναι *that Sardeis had been captured*: an infinitive instead of a *ῥτι* clause.

¹³ λέγεται αὐτόν *it is related that he*: the impersonal where before we have had the personal construction. αὐτόν is the subject of the infinitives ἐρέσθαι, αἰτῆσαι, ἀφ-εῖναι, εἰπεῖν, and προσ-τάζει and of the six participles that go with them.

δὲ ἔπειτα αἰτῆσαι τὸ τόξον, λαβόντα δὲ καὶ ἐπιθέντα τόξευμα ἄνω ἀφ-εῖναι καὶ αὐτὸ ¹⁴ βάλλοντα εἰπεῖν, ὦ Ζεῦ, δός μοι Ἀθηναίους τιμωρήσασθαι. εἰπόντα δὲ ταῦτα προσ-τάξαι ἐνὶ τῶν θεραπόντων, δείπνου προ-κειμένου αὐτῷ, εἰς τρὶς ἐκάστοτε εἰπεῖν, Δέσποτα, μέμνησο τῶν Ἀθηναίων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπειράτο ὁ Δᾶρεῖος τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὅ τι μέλλοιεν ποιήσκειν, πότερον πολεμεῖν ἑαυτῷ ἢ παραδιδόναι ἑαυτούς. δι-έπεμπε οὖν κήρυκας, ἄλλους ἄλλη ¹⁵ τάξας ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα κελεύων αἰτεῖν βασιλεῖ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ. ¹⁶ οἱ μὲν δὴ πολλοὶ εἰς οὓς ἀφ-ίκοντο οἱ κήρυκες ἔδοσαν ὅσα ἀπ-ήτησε ὁ Πέρσης, οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐκ ἔφασαν ἀπο-δώσειν. χαλεπῶς οὖν ἔχων ¹⁷ Δᾶρεῖος ἀπ-έστελλε ἐπὶ Ἀθηνᾶς Δάτιν τε καὶ Ἀρταφέρνην πολὺν στράτευμα ἔχοντας. τούτοις δὲ Μαραθῶνι ¹⁸ μαχεσάμενοι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καλῶς ἐνίκων καὶ τρόπαιον ἐστήσαντο. οὕτως οὖν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐμέμνητο ὁ Δᾶρεῖος.

- 406 When they saw the cavalry they rushed down the hill and attacked them fiercely. 2 He asked the general to let him go and capture the place for them. 3 We must never again yield but must fight as best we can. 4 They will pay the sacrifice they have vowed when they reach a friendly country. 5 If the soldiers had caught Silānos when ¹⁹ he ran away, they would have punished him.

¹⁴ αὐτὸ βάλλοντα and as he let it fly.

¹⁵ ἄλλους ἄλλη τάξας assigning them to different sections. Cp. Latin *aliōs aliam in partem*. For ἄλλη compare 236 end.

¹⁶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ: the tokens of submission.

¹⁷ χαλεπῶς ἔχων being angry. Cp. χαλεπῶς φέρω 365, 18.

¹⁸ Μαραθῶνι: consult 527 a.

¹⁹ Express by a participle.

A SLAVE FROM THE MAKRŌNES

VOCABULARY

- 407 λόγχη -ης ἡ *spearhead, spear*
 φωνή -ης ἡ *voice; dialect, lan-*
guage. phonetic, phono-graph, tele-
phone
 βαρβαρ-ικός -ή -όν *not Greek, for-*
eign, barbarian; βάρβαρος 39
 ἀντι-τάττω *set against; mid. array*
my forces against
 δουλεύω *am a slave; δοῦλος 48*
- ἐπι-μαρτύρομαι¹ *call upon to wit-*
ness, invoke; ὁ μάρτυς -υρος wit-
ness. martyr
 ὁδο-ποιέω *make a road; ὁδός 72*
 παρ-άγω *lead alongside, conduct;*
παρά 178
 συν-εκ-κόπτω¹ *help cut out, we say*
cut down. CHOP, syn-copate
 Ἀθήνησι *adv. 228, at Athens*
- 408 Ἐνθα δὴ προσ-έρχεται Νικομάχῳ τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ
 Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκoi
 τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν² ταύ-
 την πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς
 δια-λεχθῆναι. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ δια-λέγου
 καὶ μάθε³ πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτή-
 σαντος⁴ ὅτι Μάκρωνες. ἐρώτᾳ τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς τί
 ἀντι-τεταγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ βούλονται ἡμῖν πολέμιοι εἶναι.
 οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι⁵ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν
 χώρᾳν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ
 κακῶς γε⁶ ποιήσונτες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπ-
 ερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλό-
 μεθα ἀφ-ικέσθαι. ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων
 τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν.
 ἐντεῦθεν διδοᾶσιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην
 τοῖς Ἑλλήσι, οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· ταῦτα
- 409 ¹ See the Verb-list for μαρτύρο-
 μαι and κόπτω 258.
² ἐμὴν . . . πατρίδα *this is my*
native land.
³ μάθε: aor. impv. of μανθάνω.
- ⁴ ἐρωτήσαντος 590 a.
⁵ ὅτι *because.*
⁶ κακῶς γε: [*we are come ἐπὶ upon*
but not ἐπὶ against]: *not to do any*
harm at least (γε).

γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπ-εμαρτύροντο ἀμφότεροι. μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συν-εξ-έκοπτον τήν τε ὁδὸν ὠδοποιοῦν καὶ ἀγο-
ρὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο παρ-εἶχον, καὶ παρ-ήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως εἰς τὴν Κόλχων χώρᾱν κατ-έστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας.

THE RUINS OF CALAH AND NINEVEH

VOCABULARY

- 4/0 βίᾱ -ās ἡ *force, violence*; βίᾱ *as* *adv. by force, by assault*
 βροντή -ης ἡ *thunder*
 κρηπίς -ιδος ἡ *foundation*
 κύκλος -ου ὁ *circle, circumference.*
cycle, bi-cycle, en-cyclo-pedia
 νεφέλη -ης ἡ *cloud.* Latin *nebula*
 περί-οδος -ου ἡ *way around, cir-*
cuit. period
 πλίνθος -ου ἡ *brick. plinth*
 πύραμις -ιδος ἡ *pyramid*
 λίθ-ινος -η -ον *of stone, stone*;
lithos 173, 426
- λοιπός -ή -όν *left, remaining*; οἱ *λοιποί* *the rest*; τὸ *λοιπὸν* *for the future*; λείπω 66
 πλίνθ-ινος -η -ον *of brick, brick*;
πλίνθος, 426
 ἀφανίζω *make unseen, hide, de-*
stroy; ἀ-φανής *unseen, a- neg.*
 + φαίνω 173, 418
 κατα-πλήττω¹ *strike down, terrify.*
 Latin *plangō*; ἀπο-plexy ἀπό
 πολι-ορκέω *besiege*; πόλις 326
 ὑπ-εἶναι *be under*
 ἀσφαλῶς *adv. safely*; ἀ-σφαλής 333

4/1 Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες² ἀπ-ῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφ-έκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη³ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα·⁴ ὥκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ ἀρχαῖον Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν

4/2 ¹ See πλήττω in the Verb-list.

² οὕτω πράξαντες *faring thus, with this result.*

³ ἐρήμη *deserted.*

⁴ Λάρισσα: Calah, eighteen miles

south of Nineveh. The site is now called Nimrud. Genesis x 11, 12. The pyramid was originally a truncated pyramid, with inclined planes for ascent.

τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν. τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· πεποιημένον δ' ἦν πλίνθοις· κρητὶς δ' ὑπ-ἦν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς⁵ ὁ Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον⁶ δὲ νεφέλῃ ἠφάνισε μεχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πῦραμις λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἑνὸς πλέθρου τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίων κωμῶν πεφευγότες. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ἐξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα.⁷ Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾤκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ κρητὶς λίθου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἦν πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ περίοδος ἐξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μῆδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως⁸ καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ⁹ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐν-οικοῦντας καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.

⁵ βασιλεὺς: Cyrus the Great, B. C. 549.

⁶ ἥλιον νεφέλῃ ἠφάνισε: an eclipse.

⁷ Μέσπιλα: part of Nineveh, capital of the Assyrian empire. This part of Nineveh, the north-west side, extended along the Tigris river for two and a half miles. The Assyrian empire was overthrown by the Medes and Babylo-

nians before 600 B. C. The Median empire was overthrown by Cyrus the Great. Excavations on these sites have disclosed splendid palaces; also works of art of great value, many of which are deposited in the British Museum.

⁸ βασιλέως: Astyages was the last king of Media.

⁹ χρόνῳ: that is by siege.

WHEN GREEK MEETS GREEK

VOCABULARY

4/3 **πρεσβεύω** *act as envoy or ambassador* * **τοί** *adv. 671 e, really, of course*
don't; πρέσβυς 344

4/4 Μετὰ τὴν μάχην τὴν πρὸς Κουνάξῃ οἱ Ἕλληνες συνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο· ἀκούσαντες δὲ τεθνηκότα τὸν σατράπην βαρέως ἔφερον· ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος τοῖς ἀγγέλοις εἶπεν· ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, νικῶμέν τε βασιλεῖα καὶ ὡς ὁράτε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται. Ἀριαῖον¹ δέ, ἔαν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, τοῦτον καταστήσομεν βασιλεῖα· τῶν γὰρ μάχῃ νικῶντων² καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστίν. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ ἦλθον παρὰ βασιλέως κήρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δὲ αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἰς Ἕλληνα ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ³ βασιλεῖ ὦν· οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας ἔλεγον ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπέκτονε, παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως⁴ μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων εἶναι τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὃ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε.⁵ ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτόν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερά· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος. ἔνθα δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάωρ ὁ Ἀρκὰς πρεσβύτατος ὦν ὅτι πρόσθεν⁶ ἂν ἀπο-

4/5 ¹ **Ἀριαῖον** : first for emphasis, repeated in **τοῦτον**.

² **τῶν νικῶντων** : cp. 363, 8, 15.

³ **παρά** *in the service of*.

⁴ **βαρέως** *with indignation*.

⁵ **ἔχετε** *hold, consider*.

⁶ **πρόσθεν** ἢ *sooner than*.

θάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὄπλα παρα-δοῖεν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλῖνε, θαυμάζω πότερα ὡς⁷ κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλιᾶν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ⁸ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐ⁸ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας⁹ βούλεται λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, εἴαν αὐτῷ ταῦτα παρα-δῶσιν. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος εἶπεν, βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγείται,¹⁰ ἐπεὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπ-έκτονε τὸν ἄρχοντα ὑμῶν. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔτι τῆς ἀρχῆς¹¹ ἀντι-ποιεῖται; ¹² νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ¹³ εἶναι, ἔχων¹⁴ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πλήθος ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος¹⁴ ἀγαγεῖν ὅσον¹⁵ οὐδ' εἰ παρ-έχοι ὑμῖν δύναισθε ἂν ἀπο-κτεῖναι.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· ὦ Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὀράς, ἡμῖν οὐδέν ἐστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο¹⁶ εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παρα-δόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωματῶν στέρηθῇναι. μὴ οὖν οἷον¹⁷ τὰ μόνα

⁷ ὡς κρατῶν *because he thinks he is the victor.* The suggestion of cause is in the participle, not in ὡς 593 e. So too the next ὡς does not mean simply *as gifts*. That would be expressed by δῶρα alone. The idea is *as gifts on the pretext of friendship*.

⁸ δεῖ belongs in construction to λαβεῖν but in meaning only to αἰτεῖν. We can say τί δεῖ αἰτεῖν, ἀλλὰ τί οὐ μᾶλλον ἐλθὼν λαμβάνει; or ἀντὶ τοῦ ἐλθόντα λαβεῖν. οὐ: to be taken with δεῖ: *why should he not come and get them?*

⁹ πείσας *by persuasion.*

¹⁰ ἡγείται *considers.*

¹¹ τῆς ἀρχῆς 510 d.

¹² ἀντι-ποιεῖται *asserts a rival claim.*

¹³ ἑαυτοῦ 508 a.

¹⁴ ἔχων, δυνάμενος *since he has you, and is able.*

¹⁵ ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ *so great that not even if he should put them into your hands.* There are too many for the mere labor of killing.

¹⁶ οὐδέν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ *no advantage except: no other if not does not suit the English idiom.*

¹⁷ μὴ οἷον: μὴ shows that οἷον is imperative.

ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις¹⁸ καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπεν· ἀλλ' ἴσθι οὐ σοφὸς ὢν, εἰ οἶε τὴν ὑμετέρᾳν ἀρετὴν περι-γενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως. ἄλλους δέ τινας ἔφασαν λέγειν ὅτι καὶ τῷ σατράπῃ πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιντο εἰ βούλοιο φίλος γενέσθαι. ἐν τούτῳ¹⁹ Κλέαρχος ἦκε καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀπο-κεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπο-λαβὼν²⁰ εἶπεν· οὔτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα²¹ λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπὲ τί λέγεις.²² ὁ δ' εἶπεν· ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἐώρᾳκα,²³ οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἑλλήν εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι²⁴ ὄντες ὅσους σὺ ὀράς· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμβουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὃ σοι τῆμην οἴσκει εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον ἀεὶ λεγόμενοι,²⁵ ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως κελεύσων τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὰ ὅπλα παρα-δοῦναι συμβουλευομένοις συν-εβούλευσεν²⁶ αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἴσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἅ ἂν συμβουλεύσης. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα εἶπε βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα²⁷ συμβουλευ-

¹⁸ σὺν τούτοις: where we should write τούτοις with these or ταῦτα ἔχοντες.

¹⁹ ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile.

²⁰ ὑπο-λαβὼν taking up the talk.

²¹ ἄλλος ἄλλα some one thing, some another: cp. 404, 15.

²² λέγεις have to say, think.

²³ ἄσμενος ἐώρᾳκα 546.

²⁴ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι . . . ὀράς and so are we all whom you see.

²⁵ ἀεὶ λεγόμενον every time it is told.

²⁶ συμβουλευομένοις συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς advised them when they asked his advice.

²⁷ καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν . . . πρεσβεύοντα that even the very envoy.

σαι μὴ παρα-δοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μάλλον εἶεν οἱ Ἑλληνες. Φαλῖνος δὲ παρὰ τὴν δόξαν²⁸ αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μῦρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστὶ σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας²⁹ βασιλεῖ, συμ-βουλεύω μὴ παρα-διδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι³⁰ μηδεμία³¹ σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμ-βουλεύω σώζε-σθαι³² ὑμῖν ὅπῃ³³ δυνατόν.

Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· ἀλλὰ³⁴ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπ-άγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἴομεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες³⁵ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παρα-δόντες ἄλλῳ, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν,³⁶ ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλῳ παρα-δόντες. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπ-αγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε³⁷ ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεὺς, ὅτι ἔὰν μὲν μένητε αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν,³⁸ ἔὰν δὲ προ-ίητε³⁹ καὶ ἀπ-ίητε πόλεμος. εἴπατε⁴⁰ οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπονδαὶ εἰσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος⁴¹ παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπ-αγγελῶ. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἔλεξεν· ἀπ-άγγελλε τοῖνυν καὶ

²⁸ παρὰ τὴν δόξαν *contrary to his expectation.*

²⁹ πολεμοῦντας *by continuing the war*: agrees with the implied subject of σωθῆναι.

³⁰ εἰ δέ τοι *but if, you know.*

³¹ μηδεμία: in emphatic position.

³² σώζεσθαι *to try to save yourselves.*

³³ ὅπῃ *in any way you can.* Notice the position of ὑμῖν before ὅπῃ.

³⁴ ἀλλὰ *well.*

³⁵ ἔχοντες, παρα-δόντες *while possessing, after giving up.*

³⁶ πολεμεῖν *to continue at war.*

³⁷ ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε *but the king bade us also say this to you.*

³⁸ εἴησαν *there is.* Do not translate *would be*; that would require ἔσονται or εἶεν ἂν.

³⁹ προ-ίητε καὶ ἀπ-ίητε *advance or withdraw*: καὶ *or.*

⁴⁰ εἴπατε *tell us*: impv. from an α-aoist εἶπα; more common in the second plural than εἶπετε from εἶπον 351.

⁴¹ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος *to the effect that there is, with the understanding that, nearly equivalent to ὅτι πολέμος ἐστίν.*

περὶ τούτου ὅτι καὶ⁴² ἡμῖν ταῦτα⁴³ δοκεῖ ἅπερ καὶ⁴² βασιλεῖ. τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο⁴⁴ Κλέαρχος· εἰ μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, εἰ δὲ ἀπ-ιώμεν καὶ προ-ιώμεν, πόλεμος. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώ-τησε, σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπ-αγγελῶ; Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτα⁴³ πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο· σπονδαὶ μὲν εἰ μὲν μένωμεν, εἰ δὲ μή, πόλεμος. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι⁴⁵ οὐκ εἶπεν.

⁴² καὶ . . . καὶ: one καὶ is need-
less in the English idiom; render
we are of precisely the same mind
as the king: ἅπερ 216.

⁴³ ταῦτά = τὰ αὐτά: crasis 35.
Do not confuse ταῦτα and ταῦτά.

⁴⁴ ἀπεκρίνατο: asyndeton 600 a.

⁴⁵ ποιήσοι was going to do.

MENTION OF THE ANABASIS AND THE TEN THOUSAND IN THE HELLENIKA

VOCABULARY

4/6 ἄρμοσ-τής -οῦ ὁ organizer; har-
most, a Spartan governor. har-
mony

ἐφ-οροι -ων οἱ overseers; the Spar-
tan officers called ephors; ἐπί,
δράω 362

στάσις -εως ἡ a standing; fac-
tion; discord; ἵστημι 386.

Latin *statiō*; apo-stasy

Ἑλληνίς -ίδος ἡ Greek, Grecian;
Ἕλλην 257

ναυτ-ικός -ή -όν naval; ναύ-αρχος
288. nautical

ἀπο-σάξω lead back in safety

ἐν-αντιόμαι /85, 268 b end, D
withstand, oppose; ἐναντίος op-
posite; ἀντί /78, 438 a

ἐπι-στέλλω D send to, send word,
send a message (by letter), com-
mand; ἐπιστολή /14. epistle

ἵππεύω serve in the cavalry; ἵππεύς
326, 417 a

περι-πλέω sail around

προσ-λαμβάνω take besides; re-
ceive to myself; take part in

συμ-μείγνυμι¹ D mix with; unite
with; μίγν- Latin *misceō*

τελευτάω bring to an end; come
to an end, die; τελευτή end 386,
τέλος 338

ὑπ-ηρετέω D serve, help

προθύμως adv. readily, zealously;
πρό-θυμος eager; προ-θύμομαι 4/9,
ἐπι-θύμέω /79

¹ See μέγνυμι 356 (1) in the Verb-list.

417 Ἡ μὲν δὴ Ἀθήνησι στάσις² οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πέμψας Κῦρος ἀγγέλους εἰς Λακεδαίμονα ἡξίου, οἷόςπερ³ αὐτὸς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἦν ἐν τῷ πρὸς Ἀθηναίους πολέμῳ, τοιούτους καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους αὐτῷ γίγνεσθαι. οἱ δ' ἔφοροι δίκαια νομίσαντες λέγειν αὐτὸν Σαμίων τῷ τότε ναυάρχῳ ἐπ-έστειλαν ὑπ-ηρετεῖν Κύρῳ, εἴ τι δέοιτο. κακείνος⁴ μέντοι προθύμως ὅπερ ἐδεήθη ὁ Κῦρος ἔπραξεν. ἔχων γὰρ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ναυτικὸν σὺν τῷ Κύρῳ περι-έπλευσεν εἰς Κιλικίαν, καὶ ἐποίησε τὸν τῆς Κιλικίας ἄρχοντα Σύννεσιν μὴ δύνασθαι⁵ κατὰ γῆν ἐν-αντιοῦσθαι Κύρῳ πορευομένῳ ἐπὶ βασιλεύᾳ. ὥς⁶ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος στρατευμά τε συν-έλεξε καὶ τοῦτ' ἔχων ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, καὶ ὥς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὥς ἀπ-έθανε, καὶ ὥς ἐκ τούτου ἀπ-εσώθησαν⁷ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπὶ θάλατταν, Θεμιστογένει⁸ τῷ Συρᾶκοσίῳ γέγραπται.

Ἐπεὶ μέντοι Τισσαφέρνης, πολλοῦ ἄξιος βασιλεῖ δόξας⁹ γεγενῆσθαι ἐν τῷ πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν πολέμῳ, σατράπης¹⁰ κατ-επέμφθη ὧν τε αὐτὸς πρόσθεν ἦρχε καὶ ὧν Κῦρος, εὐθὺς ἡξίου τὰς Ἰωνικὰς πόλεις ἀπάσας ἑαυτῷ πείθεσθαι. αἱ δὲ ἅμα¹¹ μὲν ἐλεύθεραι βουλό-

418 ² στάσις *discord*: the rule of the Thirty, οἱ τριάκοντα, and the consequent disturbances 404, 403 B. C. ἐκ δὲ τούτου: in 401 B. C.

³ οἷόςπερ αὐτὸς . . . τοιούτους καὶ *as he himself had treated . . . so also.*

⁴ κακείνος: καὶ ἐκεῖνος: *crasis*, cp. 415, 43.

⁵ μὴ δύνασθαι *made it impossible for.*

⁶ ὥς *how.*

⁷ ἀπ-εσώθησαν *got back in safety.*

⁸ Θεμιστογένει: he is otherwise unknown. See 524 b, c.

⁹ δόξας γεγενῆσθαι *who was considered to have been.*

¹⁰ σατράπης ὧν *as satrap of the cities which he himself had formerly governed as well as of those which Cyrus had governed.*

¹¹ ἅμα μὲν . . . ἅμα δέ *not only . . . but at the same time.*

μεναι εἶναι, ἅμα δὲ φοβούμεναι τὸν Τισσαφέρην, ὅτι Κῦρον, ὅτ' ἔζη, ἀντ' ἐκείνου ἡρημέναι ἦσαν,¹² εἰς μὲν τὰς πόλεις οὐκ ἐδέχοντο¹³ αὐτόν, εἰς Λακεδαιμόνα δὲ ἔπεμπον πρέσβεις καὶ ἡξίου, ἐπεὶ πάσης τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἄρχοντές εἰσιν,¹⁴ ἐπι-μεληθῆναι¹⁵ καὶ σφῶν¹⁶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ Ἑλλήνων, ὅπως ἡ τε χώρα μὴ δι-αρπάζοιτο αὐτῶν καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐλεύθεροι εἶεν. οἱ οὖν Λακεδαιμόνιοι πέμπουσιν αὐτοῖς Θίβρωνα ἄρμωστήν, δόντες στρατιώτᾱς εἰς πεντακισχιλίου. ἡτήσατο¹⁷ δ' ὁ Θίβρων καὶ παρ' Ἀθηναίων τριακοσίους ἱππέας, εἰπὼν ὅτι αὐτὸς μισθὸν παρ-έξει. οἱ δ' ἔπεμψαν τῶν¹⁸ ἐπὶ τῶν τριάκοντα ἱππευσάντων. ἐπεὶ δ' εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ἀφ-ίκοντο,¹⁹ συν-ήγαγε στρατιώτᾱς καὶ ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων· πᾶσαι γὰρ τότε αἱ πόλεις ἐπεΐθοντο ὅ τι Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀνῆρ²⁰ ἐπι-τάττοι. καὶ ἔχων μὲν ταύτην τὴν στρατιὰν Θίβρων εἰς τὸ πεδίον οὐ κατ-έβαιεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ σωθέντες οἱ ἀνα-βάντες²¹ μετὰ Κύρου συν-έμειξαν αὐτῷ, ἐκ τούτου ἤδη καὶ²² ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις ἀντ-

¹² ἡρημέναι ἦσαν *had taken up the cause of, had sided with.*

¹³ οὐκ ἐδέχοντο *refused to admit him.*

¹⁴ εἰσιν *were.*

¹⁵ ἐπι-μεληθῆναι *assume the protection of, take them also under their protection.*

¹⁶ σφῶν· ἐαυτῶν 197, 203.

¹⁷ ἡτήσατο: the middle here hardly differs from the active: *he asked for them to use in this undertaking.*

¹⁸ τῶν . . . ἱππευσάντων *some of the men that had served in the cav-*

alry in the time of the Thirty. The genitive is predicate and partitive. Compare 507 a, 510 a. Xenophon adds in this connection νομίζοντες κέρδος τῷ δήμῳ εἰ ἀποδημοῦεν καὶ ἐναπόλουντο *thinking it a gain for the state if they should go abroad and perish there.*

¹⁹ ἀφ-ίκοντο: early in 399 B. C.

²⁰ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀνῆρ *any Lacedaemonian.*

²¹ οἱ ἀνα-βάντες: the Ten Thousand now reduced to less than five thousand.

²² καὶ . . . *not only withstood.*

ετάττετο τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ²³ πόλεις πολλὰς προσ-
έλαβε καὶ Πέργαμον ἐκοῦσαν.

²³ καὶ . . . προσ-έλαβε καὶ . . . cities, including (καὶ) Pergamos,
ἐκοῦσαν but also (καὶ) secured many which surrendered voluntarily.

XENOPHON THE AUTHOR OF THE ANABASIS

VOCABULARY

419 ἀνά-βασις -εως ἡ going up, march
up or inland; ἀνα-βαίνω 179.

Anabasis

ἀριθμός -οῦ ὁ number, enumera-
tion, extent. arithmetic

ἐνιαυτός -οῦ ὁ any long period of
time, year, as a period of twelve
months; ἔτος 338, a chrono-
logical year; ἔτος ἦλθε περιπλο-
μένων ἐνιαυτῶν as times rolled on
the year came, volventibus annis

κατά-βασις -εως ἡ going down,
march down or to the coast;

κατα-βαίνω 179. Katabasis

στόλος -ου ὁ equipment, expedi-
tion, army; στέλλω 173. apo-stle

στρατεῖα -ās ἡ expedition, cam-
paign; στρατεύομαι 406 a

ἀν-αιρέω take up; of an oracle an-
swer, direct; mid. undertake

ἀνα-κοινώω D make common cause,
confer with, consult; κοινός 264;
ἀνά 178

ἐκ-πλέω sail out or off

ἐπ-ερωτάω ask in reference to, ask,
inquire, demand; ἐπί 178

ἐπι-νοέω set my mind on, purpose,
intend; ὁ νοῦς mind; γνώμη 397

προ-θυμέομαι 185, desire, wish ear-
nestly; προθυμῶς 416; ἐπι-θυμέω
179

συν-προθυμέομαι unite earnestly
with in desiring or urging

συν-ίστημι bring together, intro-
duce; intr. forms and mid. stand
together; combine. system

420 Ὅστις μὲν οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ἦν καὶ οἶος, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ
Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς πρὸς
Κουνάξῃ μάχης καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ καταβάσει τῇ μέχρι
ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ καὶ ὅσα μετὰ
ταῦτα ἐγένετο μέχρι εἰς Πέργαμον τῆς Ἀσιᾶς ἀφ-
ίκοντο, Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ Ἀναβάσει γέγραπται.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἦν Ἀθηναῖος ἐν τῇ Κύρου στρατιᾷ οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετ-επέμψατο¹ οἴκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπ-ἰσχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀνα-γνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν συν-εβουλεύσατο Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπ-οπτεύσας μή τι αἰτιῶτο² ἢ πόλις Ξενοφῶντα, εἴαν Κύρῳ φίλος γένηται, ὅτι ἐδόκει³ ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθηνᾶς συμ-πολεμῆσαι, συμ-βουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφούς ἀνα-κοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπ-ήρето τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι⁴ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπι-νοεῖ καὶ⁵ καλῶς πράξῃς σωθεῖη. καὶ ἀν-εἶλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς⁶ οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε λέγει τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἤτιᾱτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο⁷ πρῶτον ἡρώτᾳ πότερον βέλτιον εἴη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνῃς⁸ ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθεῖη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως⁹ ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη,¹⁰ χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.

42/ ¹ μετ-επέμψατο *had sent for*.

² ὑπ-οπτεύσας μή τι αἰτιῶτο *apprehending that the state might have some ground for censuring him*. αἰτιῶτο: αἰτιόμαι; so ἤτιᾱτο below.

³ ἐδόκει . . . συμ-πολεμῆσαι *was reputed to have aided in the war*.

⁴ τίνι ἂν . . . ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν *to what god he should offer sacrifice and prayer that he might make the journey*. ὁδόν: cognate accusative.

⁵ καὶ καλῶς πράξῃς σωθεῖη *and attain a safe and successful result*.

⁶ θεοῖς οἷς: for τοὺς θεοὺς οἷς or οἷς ἔδει θεοῖς θύειν 613 c.

⁷ τοῦτο: here refers forward to πότερον . . . ἢ.

⁸ αὐτὸς κρίνῃς *deciding for himself*.

⁹ οὕτως ἤρου *since you put the question in this way*. ἤρου: ἡρό-μην, ἐρωτάω.

¹⁰ ἔφη Σωκράτης.

Ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος οἷς ἀν-εἶλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξ-έπλει καὶ κατα-λαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη¹¹ ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδὸν καὶ συν-εστάθῃ¹² Κύρῳ. προ-θυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμ-πrouθυμείτο μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα¹³ ἡ στρατείᾳ τελευτηθῇ, εὐθὺς ἀπο-πέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισιδᾶς. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως¹⁴ ἐξ-απατηθείς¹⁵—οὐχ ὑπὸ¹⁶ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἦδαι ἐπὶ βασιλεῖᾳ Κῦρον ἰόντα οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέν-τοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλεῖᾳ. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες¹⁷ ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ συν-επορεύθησαν· ὧν εἷς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.

Ἀριθμὸς¹⁸ μὲν συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως σταθμοὶ διᾱκόσιοι δεκαπέντε, παρα-σάγγαι χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα πέντε, στάδια τρισ-μύρια τετρακισχίλια ἑξακόσια πενήκοντα. χρόνου δὲ πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.

¹¹ ἤδη *immediately*.

¹² συν-εστάθῃ *was introduced to*.

¹³ ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα *just as soon as*.

¹⁴ οὕτως *in this way he came to go on the expedition: οὕτως with ἐστρατεύετο*.

¹⁵ ἐξ-απατηθείς *because he was deceived*.

¹⁶ οὐχ ὑπὸ *though not by*.

¹⁷ φοβούμενοι καὶ ἄκοντες *though they feared and were reluctant*.

¹⁸ ἀριθμός *computation, 'estimate*.



Obol and half-obol.



THE ANABASIS

DAREIOS II was King of Persia 425–405 B. C. and was succeeded by his son Artaxerxes II. A younger son Cyrus had aspired to the throne, and in his disappointment schemed to dethrone his brother. In 407 B. C. Cyrus, at the age of seventeen, had been appointed satrap of a large part of Asia Minor and displayed marked administrative talents. He zealously aided Sparta in the latter part of the Peloponnesian war, 431–404 B. C., and at the end of the war was able to command the services of many Greek troops to aid him in his plans against the king. As he had received several provinces formerly under the control of Tissaphernes, the latter, now satrap of Karia only, was his bitter enemy.

The Anabasis is Xenophon's account of the fortunes of the fourteen thousand Greeks, commonly called The Ten Thousand, who marched inland with Cyrus to aid him in wresting the throne of Persia from his brother.

Xenophon was an Athenian, born probably about 431 B. C., a friend and pupil of the philosopher Sokrates. As already told in 420, he joined Cyrus in his expedition to Babylon. After the death of Cyrus and the chief Greek generals, he became the virtual leader of the Greeks in their long retreat from Babylon to the Pontos Euxeinos and thence to Asia Minor. This retreat showed what a band of hardy Greeks could do with the hitherto dreaded Persians. It was the incentive to Issos and Arbēla.

The thirty following pages contain the first three chapters of Book I of the *Anabasis*. The text and headings are substantially the same as used in Professor Smith's *Anabasis* in the Twentieth Century Series. In these chapters all new words are spaced. The notes with the references therein are to be studied as part of the daily lesson. These references to the Grammar are very important, and in many instances give not only the necessary explanation but also the translation of the passage in hand. They must not be neglected. So, too, if a passage fails to yield sense, consultation of the vocabulary may remove the difficulty by disclosing the full explanation of the expression that causes the trouble.



The Temple of Athēna Niké.

ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

Α

CYRUS SUMMONED TO HIS FATHER'S DEATHBED. ARTAXERXES
KING AND CYRUS'S LIFE IN DANGER

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, **I**
πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος·
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ
βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν 2

Time : 405–402 B. C.

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος . . .
δύο *Dareios and Parysatis* had
two sons. The *from* genitive de-
notes *origin* **509 a**.—**γίνονται** :
historical present **454 b** ; very com-
mon in lively narration for the
aorist. Translate it regularly as
if aorist.—**δύο** : notice the posi-
tion of the numeral **679 b (2)**.
There were thirteen children, four
sons, but these two only are con-
cerned in this story.

2. πρεσβύτερος μὲν . . . νεώτερος
δέ *an elder . . . a younger*. Ἀρτα-
ξέρξης was called *μνήμων* *having a*
good memory. Κῦρος is known as
Cyrus the Younger, thus distin-
guished from *Cyrus the Great*.

3. ἡσθένει *was ill*. See *ἀσθενέω*
in vocab. Learn the references
there on the derivation and forma-
tion of this denominative verb,
and see **399, 415**. In general with
all new words study carefully
the references in the vocabulary,
as also with any other words for
which the vocabulary is consulted.

There are fewer than one hundred
and fifty new words in these three
chapters.—**Δαρείος** : the more im-
portant, here the predicate, precedes.
Study **675, 677** and **a** and keep it in
mind. The line of Persian kings
was Cyrus the Great, Kambyses,
Dareios I, Xerxes I, Artaxerxes I,
Dareios II, Artaxerxes II. This is
Dareios II, B. C. 424–405.—**ὑπό-**
πτευε *apprehended* : see *ὑποπτέω* in
vocab.—**τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου** *death*.
In such compound expressions the
dependent genitive only takes the
article regularly, as *his life's end* ;
cp. *his lifetime*.

4. τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω *both his*
sons : dual acc. subject of *παρεῖναι*.
For the dual forms see **61, 62, 99** ;
they are very infrequent in the
Anabasis.—**ἀμφοτέρω** **554**.—
παρεῖναι **570 d**.—**ὁ μὲν οὖν πρε-**
σβύτερος : note the position of *μὲν*
and *οὖν*, both postpositive, both
between the article and its noun,
and *μὲν* preceding.—**μὲν** : looks
forward to the following **δέ** : cp.
102.

5 οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μετα- I
 πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε·
 καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς
 Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος
 λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων
 10 ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν
 Παρράσιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη 3

5. οὖν *now*: here continuative, connects this statement with the preceding.—παρὼν 585 a.—Κῦρον δέ: emphatic position 677.—μεταπέμπεται *sent for, summoned*: translate as if aorist: cp. γίγνεται in 1 and 454 b.

6. ἧς *of which*.—αὐτὸν σατράπην 534.—ἐποίησε, ἀπέδειξε 463.

7. καὶ . . . δέ: the conjunction is δέ *and*; καὶ is an adverb *also*, emphasizing the word after it.—αὐτόν: here as frequently the relative construction, ὃν καὶ στρατηγὸν ἀπέδειξε, is abandoned for the independent 615 a.—πάντων ὅσοι *all who*: note ὅσοι instead of οἱ.

8. ἀθροίζονται εἰς *muster in*: note the middle *gather themselves*, and εἰς w. acc. after the idea of motion. We say *in*. The present is not historical.—ἀναβαίνει οὖν *accordingly Cyrus went up*: to Babylon, 405 B. C. ἀνα-βαίνω is the regular word for going from the coast to the interior. Its opposite is κατα-βαίνω. Notice that the predicate here precedes its subject.—οὖν: here inferential.

9. λαβὼν *taking, with*: ptc. of attendant circumstance. So also

ἔχων in 9: see 583 a end.—ὡς φίλον *as he would a friend, on the pretext of friendship*. Cyrus now held much of the power formerly given to Tissaphernes and was probably afraid to leave his enemy behind.—τῶν Ἑλλήνων: emphatic position.

10. ὀπλίτας: see vocab. and 347, 2.—ἀνέβη: note the aorist with the historical present ἀναβαίνει in 8; note also the repetition of the verb and the inverted order 682 a.—τριακοσίους: position 680 a.—ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν *as their leader*: an appositive of Ξενίαν 502 or 534.

11. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε καὶ κατέστη *after the death of Dareios, when Artaxerxes had ascended the throne*: get the meaning of τελευτάω, καθίστημι, βασιλεῖα in the vocabulary.—ἐπεὶ 629.—δέ *but*: better omitted in translation. It connects this section with the preceding.—Note that the aorists are here best translated by the pluperfect: cp. ἐποίησε and ἀπέδειξε in 6.—Note the position of both subjects after their verbs, while Τισσαφέρνης, a new element, comes prominently first.

εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης δια-
βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει
αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ λαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτε-
15 νῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει
πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

CYRUS IN REVENGE PLOTS HIS BROTHER'S OVERTHROW

Ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμασθεις, 4
βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ,

12. εἰς: the Greek regards the action while we think of the resulting state.

13. διαβάλλει *falsely accused*. The story was that he intended to kill Artaxerxes at the time of the coronation. Xenophon evidently disbelieved the story.—τὸν Κῦρον 551 a.—τὸν ἀδελφόν 551 d.—ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει: ὡς *how* is here not fully equivalent to *ὅτι* 635, 624 b. The idea of saying is implied in διαβάλλει.

14. ὁ δέ *and he*: Artaxerxes 549 b. Notice the change of subject. In this demonstrative use the article is printed with an accent in these chapters.—πείθεται καὶ λαμβάνει 603.—ὡς ἀποκτενῶν 593 c, 583 b: the ptc. denotes purpose or intention. ὡς indicates that this was the purpose that was inferred from the king's actions. Translate *apparently intending to put him to death*.

15. ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει *begged him off and sent him back*: ptc. and verb translated by two verbs connected by *and* 583. The

force of the middle, *for herself*, is lost in translation. Cp. the other compounds of αἰτέω: ἀπ-αιτέω, προσ-αιτέω.—αὐτόν: the common object expressed but once. English repeats *him*.

17. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε *when he went away*: ὁ δέ is the subject: cp. ὁ δέ in 14. In this meaning, *and he, but he*, it must begin its clause and so precedes ὡς.—ὡς *as, when*: we frequently use *as* for *when* 633 c.—κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμασθεις *after being in danger and disgrace* 583. See ἀτίω in vocab. Note that these participles are aorist, rather than present or perfect. Observe everywhere the flexibility of the aorist.

18. βουλεύεται ὅπως . . . ἐκείνου *he began to plan how he might never again be in the power of his brother but, if possible, might be king in his place*.—ὅπως . . . ἔσται 638 a.—ἐπὶ *in the power of*: in this figurative use ἐπὶ takes the dative; in the literal sense *on*, more frequently the genitive, but the dative is not uncommon.

ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. Παρύ- I
 20 σατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα
 αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. ὅστις 5
 δ' ἀφίκνείτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας
 οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους
 εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων
 25 ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς
 ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς 6
 μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπα-
 ρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλεῖ.

19. ἣν: for ἑάν.—δύνηται 365 a, 276 a; 650.

20. μὲν δὴ: μὲν looks forward to ὅστις δέ: his mother's support contrasted with his own efforts. δὴ now: continuative: cp. μὲν οὖν in 5.—ὑπῆρχε: see ὑπάρχω in the vocab.—φιλοῦσα because she loved him 583. Note the tense.

22. ὅστις ἀφίκνείτο 618 c: cp. 398, 9. Observe that the relative clause precedes the antecedent.—τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως of those at court: as frequently, the from idea where we make prominent the at idea 400, 7. οἱ παρὰ βασιλεῖ came παρὰ βασιλέως.—βασιλεύς usually omits the article when designating the king of Persia.—πάντας: plural, as ὅστις is singular in form only. Translate ὅστις . . . πάντας all of the attendants at the king's court who came to him.

23. οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε . . . εἶναι he so treated that when he dismissed them they were. See 566 b, ex. 6.—διατιθεὶς: δια-

τίθημι: observe the tense.—αὐτῷ: like ἑαυτῷ 271.

24. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων and too of the Persians at his own court: καὶ is here also, too and δέ is so far from the beginning of the clause in order to allow the καὶ to contrast the οἱ παρ' ἑαυτῷ with the οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως above.

25. ἐπεμελείτο: ἐπιμελέομαι: we have before used ἐπιμέλομαι. It governs the genitive.—ὡς how, that, somewhat like ἵνα 636. But the regular form would be ἐπεμελείτο ὅπως οἱ βάρβαροι ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται 638 a. Cp. ἔσται in 18 and 398, 9.—πολεμεῖν ἱκανοὶ ready for carrying on war 565 and a.

26. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν . . . ἐπικρυπτόμενος . . . βασιλεῖ while collecting his Greek force he concealed his movements as much as he could that he might catch the king as unprepared as possible; he collected with the utmost secrecy.—δύναμιν: emphatic position 677, 679 b (1), (4).

27. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο 633 f: so

CYRUS, UNDER COVER OF WAR WITH TISSAPHERNES, COLLECTS GREEK MERCENARIES. HIS MOTHER CONNIVES AND THE KING IS HOODWINKED

ᾧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὅπόσᾱς εἶχε φυ- I
 30 λακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρ-
 χοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους
 ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισ-
 σαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ
 πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδο-
 35 μέναι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν
 Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθό- 7
 μενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστήναι πρὸς
 Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ

ὅτι with ἀπαρσκευότατον: cp. ὡς τάχιστα that we have frequently met.—*ὅπως*: for *ἵνα*.

29. ᾧδε in the following manner.—*ἐποιεῖτο* made his 500 b: cp. mid. *ἐξαιτησαμένη* in 15.—*ὅπόσᾱς φυλακὰς . . . λαμβάνειν* he sent word to the several commanders of the garrisons that he had in the cities to enlist.—*φυλακὰς*: antecedent in the relative clause. Again we have the relative clause preceding; but as many garrisons as he had he ordered the several commanders is not the English idiom. That would be *τοῖς φρουράρχοις πᾶσων τῶν φυλακῶν ὅσας εἶχε*.—*φυλακὰς* from *φυλακή* not *φύλαξ*.

31. ἐκάστοις 554.—*ὅτι*: cp. ὡς and *ὅτι* in 27.

32. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος asserting that Tissaphernes was plotting against their cities 593 c: ὡς with ptc. here nearly equivalent to λέγων ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύει. For the genitive

absolute see 590 and 255. Cyrus could readily get trained Greek soldiers, as at the close of the Peloponnesian war, B. C. 404, large bodies of men whose only occupation had been war were without employment. Greek soldiers were superior to the Persians in all points.

33. καὶ γὰρ and in fact 672 d.—*ἦσαν* had belonged to: with the genitive *Τισσαφέρνους* 508.

34. ἐκ: from emphasizing the source. Translate as if *ὑπό* by.

35. ἀφειστήκεσαν 457.

36. προαισθόμενος discovering beforehand that they were forming this same plan.

37. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα: cognate object of *βουλευομένους*, which is pred. ptc. object of *προαισθόμενος*.—*ἀποστήναι*: appositive to τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα.

38. τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δέ some of them . . . others.

δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στρα- I
 40 τευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
 θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας.
 καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν
 στρατευμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾳ πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς 8
 ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ
 45 Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπράττειν
 αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπι-
 βουλὴν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολε-
 μοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε
 οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος

39. ὑπολαβὼν: subordinate to the pair συλλέξας ἐπολιόρκει: *taking the exiles under his protection he collected an army and laid siege to Milētos.*

41. ἐκπεπτωκότας: another term for *exiles*; perfect participle of ἐκπίπτω. Compare in the vocabulary ἐκβάλλω, φεύγω, ἐκπίπτω, κατάγω.

42. πρόφασις: as there is no article, this is predicate. The subject is αὕτη, for τοῦτο, attracted to the gender of the predicate.—αὐτῷ: dat. of possessor.—τοῦ ἀθροίζειν: with πρόφασις 575. Translate and in this again he had another pretext for collecting an army. Cp. 75, 11.

43. ἡξίου he demanded: note the tense here and in πέμπων. See 328, 330 and notes throughout the section.

44. οἱ: equivalent to αὐτῷ 197: accented because emphatic in contrast to Tissaphernes.

45. συνέπράττειν αὐτῷ ταῦτα *co-operated with him in this*: see 328.

46. ὥστε . . . ᾔσθάνετο 639 a. —τὴν μὲν . . . ἐπιβουλὴν *the plot against himself.*

47. Τισσαφέρνει δὲ πολεμοῦντα: placed first as contrasted by μὲν and δέ with τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν. The English idiom would naturally put these phrases each at the end of its clause 677 a.—πολεμοῦντα *because he was engaged in war with Tissaphernes*: ptc. of cause. *He thought his war with Tissaphernes was the reason for his expending money on his armies.*

48. ἀμφί: more commonly εἰς. —ὥστε οὐδὲν and so he was not at all displeased at their being at war.—οὐδὲν: cognate accusative 540, 536 b.

49. αὐτῶν πολεμούντων: causal 509 c. It may also be taken under 590.—καὶ γάρ *besides* 672 d.

50 ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν ἰ
πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

KLEARCHOS IN THE CHERSONESE

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρο- 9
νῆσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.
Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενό-
55 μενος ὁ Κῦρος ἡγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
μυρίους δᾶρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῦσιον
στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ
ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς
ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἑλληνας·
60 ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν
τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις

50. τοὺς γιγνομένους *the accruing tribute.*

51. ὧν . . . ἔχων *which he happened to have that belonged to Tissaphernes.*—ὧν: ᾧ attracted to the case of its antecedent 613 b. —Τισσαφέρνους: poss. gen. with ὧν. It would naturally be ἐκ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους πόλεων ᾧ.

52. αὐτῷ *for him.*—συνελέγετο 459.

53. τῇ *that part of.*—τόνδε τὸν τρόπον *in the following manner* 540: cp. ᾧδε in 29.

54. Κλέαρχος: the chief officer of the Greeks in this expedition. In the Peloponnesian war he commanded the Spartans in Byzantium, but was so severe that the people surrendered the town to the Athenians. Sent to protect the Greek colonies in Thrace but recalled before he got away, he

refused to obey and was banished.

55. ἡγάσθη *came to admire* 464: see ἀγαμαι.

55. δ 8é 549 b. Probably there was an understanding between them that Klearchos was to assemble this army and hold it in readiness.

57. ἀπό *from these means*: for τοῖς τοῖς χρήμασι. The Greek emphasizes the *from* relation. We say *with these means*.

58. καὶ ἐπολέμει *and was now carrying on war making his headquarters in the Chersonese.*—ἐκ . . . ὁρμώμενος: note the tense: *setting out from* repeatedly, each time.—Θραξί: with ἐπολέμει 525: cp. Τισσαφέρειν in 47.—τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι 552 b.

60. καὶ *also, too.*—συνεβάλλοντο *contributed*: συμβάλλω.—αὐτῷ 520.—εἰς *for*.

έκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν ἡ αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

ARISTIPPOS IN THESSALY

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν ¹⁰
⁶⁵ αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστα-
 σιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς
 δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὥς οὕτως
 περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
 δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν,
⁷⁰ καὶ δέεται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς
 ἀντιστασιωτᾶς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευέσῃται. οὕτω
 δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον
 στράτευμα.

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λα- ¹¹

62. έκούσαι *willingly*.—τοῦτο δ' αὖ . . . τὸ στράτευμα *in this way again this army was secretly supported for him*.—τρεφόμενον 585 a.

63. τὸ στράτευμα: needed to make τοῦτο clear but left for the least prominent place, the end, as wholly without emphasis.

64. ξένος *guest-friend*. The word means *stranger*; then *guest* or *host*. Below ξένοι is used euphemistically, as frequently, for μισθοφόροι *hired troops, mercenaries*, as if bound by ties of hospitality.

65. ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν *by his opponents at home*.—οἴκοι 555 a.

66. αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν . . . μισθόν *asked him for three months' pay for two*

thousand troops. εἰς . . . ξένους and τριῶν μηνῶν, 506 a, both modify μισθόν and are connected by καί, which is better omitted in translation.

67. ὥς οὕτως . . . ἂν *saying that thus he would* 595, 479.—οὕτως 481.

68. ἀντιστασιωτῶν 509 b.

70. δέεται αὐτοῦ 509 a.—πρὸς: see vocab.: translate *with*.—πρόσθεν: anticipates πρὶν and need not be translated separately.

71. πρὶν ἂν 644 b.

72. τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ στράτευμα *the army in Thessaly*.

74. ὄντα *who was*.—λαβόντα . . . παραγενέσθαι *to enlist . . . and come*: participle and verb equivalent to two verbs with *and*.

75 βόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς I
Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρ-
εχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν
'Αχαιοῖν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας
80 λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσα-
φέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μίλησίων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν
οὕτως οὗτοι.

PRETENSE OF ATTACKING THE PISIDIANS. MUSTER OF THE
TROOPS AT SARDEIS

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν II
πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
παντάπασις ἐκ τῆς χώρᾳς· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τού-

75. ὡς . . . βουλόμενος *saying that he wished* 593 c: the reason he gave for his order.—*εἰς into the territory of, against.*

76. ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων *asserting that the Pisidians were making trouble* 590.

80. λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν: λαβεῖν καὶ ἐλθεῖν *to enlist and come.*—ὡς πολεμήσων *telling them that he was going to make war on:* fut. ptc. of an intended act.

Notice these uses of ὡς with the participle: with ὡς the participle states the cause, reason, purpose, or fact *subjectively*, as held or alleged by the agent; without ὡς, *objectively*, as stated by the writer. The truth or falsity of the statement is implied by the context, not indicated by ὡς; nor does ὡς imply a condition or a purpose in

the participle. Compare ὡς πολεμήσων 80, ὡς παρεχόντων 76, ὡς βουλόμενος 75, ὡς περιγενόμενος ἔν 67, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος 32, and ὡς ἀποκτενῶν 14 with ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι 13.

81. σὺν *with the aid of:* Xenophon uses the poetical σὺν and the dative very frequently for the regular μετὰ and the genitive.—τοῖς Μίλησιων 552 b: cp. τοῖς οἰκοῦσι in 59.

II

1. αὐτῷ 520 b.—ἤδη *finally:* early in 401 B.C.—ἄνω *inland:* cp. ἀνὰ in ἀναβαίνω.—μὲν: the contrasted idea is not expressed: τῷ δ' ὄντι ἐπὶ βασιλεῖᾳ ἐπορεύετο.

2. ὡς βουλόμενος *that he wished:* cp. on I 80.

3. ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους *ostensibly against these.*

- τους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα II
 5 καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἦκειν ὅσον
 ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συναλλα-
 γέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε
 στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει
 τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἦκειν παραγγέλλει λα-
 10 βόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὅπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς
 ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον 2
 πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ
 στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς κατα-
 πράξειεν ἐφ' ᾧ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσα-
 15 σθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπέ-
 θοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα
 παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίᾱς μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν 3

4 βαρβαρικόν *Persian*. — ἐν-
 ταῦθα: with ἦκειν: *there at Sar-*
deis.

5. καί: correlative to καὶ in 8.
 — τε: correlative to καὶ in 6. —
 λαβόντι ἦκειν *to come with*: λα-
 βόντι: dat. with Κλεάρχῳ instead
 of λαβόντα agreeing with the im-
 plied subject of ἦκειν 571 c. —
 ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα *all the*
force he had: for πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα
 ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ 613 d: cp. ὁπόσας φυλα-
 κάς I 29 and ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα in 7.

6. συναλλαγέντι πρὸς *to come to*
terms with . . . and. Aristippos
 sent Menon.

8. προειστήκει 457. — αὐτῷ *for*
him: see 271.

10. λαβόντα 571 c: cp. λαβόντι
 in 5. — πλὴν ὁπόσοι: for πλὴν
 τοσοῦτων ὅσοι 518 c.

11. φυλάττειν 565 a. — ἐκάλεσε,

ἐκέλευσε *summoned, urged*: chias-
 mus 682 a.

13. ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς *promis-*
ing them: aor. ptc. time coincident
 with ἐκέλευσε. — εἰ καλῶς κατα-
 πράξειεν . . . ἐστρατεύετο *if he*
should successfully accomplish the
object for which he was making the
expedition: the original thought
 was: εἰὰν καταπράξω . . . στρατεύο-
 μαι. See 651 (3): quoted condition.

14. ἐφ' ᾧ: for ταῦτα ἐπὶ ᾧ 614.
 — ἐστρατεύετο: tense changed as
 in the English idiom. The more
 common Greek form would retain
 the tense and use στρατεύεται or
 στρατεύοιτο 624 a, b, c. — μὴ παύ-
 σασθαι: μὴ is the regular negative
 after verbs of promising.

15. πρὶν 644 c.

16. αὐτῷ 520 a.

17. παρῆσαν εἰς *came to*. — δὴ

πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς **II**
 τετρακισχίλους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν
 20 εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χίλους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντα-
 κοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων
 χίλους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεν-
 τακοσίους, Πᾶσιών δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν
 ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο·
 25 ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον
 στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

TISSAPHERNES WARNS THE KING

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανόησας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα **4**
 ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρα-
 σκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλεῖα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα
 30 ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ **5**
 ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντι-
 παρσκευάζετο.

accordingly.—τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πό-
 λεων: the *from* idea again promi-
 nent: translate *taking the men in*
the cities: cp. οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως I 22.
 But we may say *came with the men*
from the cities.

19. εἰς τετρακισχίλους *to the*
number of, about.—Note care-
 fully μὲν and δέ throughout this
 section.—ἔχων 583 a end.

22. ὡς *about*: note that ὡς is
 an adverb and does not affect the
 case, while εἰς, so ἀμφὶ in 70, is a
 preposition and requires the accu-
 sative: ἄνδρες ὡς χίλιοι, ἄνδρες εἰς
 χίλους.

23. τριακοσίους μὲν 682 c end.

25. ἦν: agrees with the nearer

subject.—τῶν . . . στρατευομένων
 508.—ἀμφὶ: the regular prose
 word is περί.

26. οὗτοι μὲν: in contrast with
 those who came later.—αὐτῷ *for*
him, at his orders.

27. μείζονα . . . ἢ ὡς *greater*
than as: in English becomes *too*
great to be 566 a.

29. ὡς βασιλεῖα: prep. *to*. Re-
 view the uses of ὡς in the vocabu-
 lary.—ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα: cp.
 the frequent ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα.
 ἦ, for ταύτη τῇ ὁδῷ ἦ, is equivalent
 to ὡς.

30. μὲν δὴ 671 c (2).

31. ἤκουσε: with gen. and acc.
 511 a.

DEPARTURE FROM SARDEIS. MARCH THROUGH LYDIA AND PHRY- **II**
GIA. ROYAL PALACE AT KELAINAI. MYTH OF MARSYAS. RE-
VIEW AND ENUMERATION OF TROOPS

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων
καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρα-
35 σάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν.
τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶ ἦν ἐπτά
ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. τούτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ 6
Φρυγίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσ-
σάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐν-
40 ταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων Θετταλὸς
ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους,
Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξε- 7
λαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κε-
λαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ
45 εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδει-
σος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκείνος ἐθή-
ρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε
καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ
Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν
50 βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι 8
δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυ-
μνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ

33. οὓς εἶρηκα *those whom I have mentioned*: see φημι.—ὠρμάτο: perhaps March 9, 401 B. C.

35. Μαίανδρον: the common position for the name of a river, between the article and noun.

36. ἐπὶ ἦν: imperf. of ἐπ-εἶναι.

37. ἐξευγμένη: perf. pass. ptc. of ζεύγνυμι. See vocab. — τούτον 600 (2).

39. οἰκουμένην *inhabited*: many cities in this region were deserted.

40. Μένων: sent by Aristippos.

45. Κύρῳ 524 a.

47. ὁπότε βούλοιτο 627 end.

48. διὰ μέσου *through the middle of*.

49. ἐκ: we say *in*. Cp. 339, 1, 34/, 3-6.

50. ἔστι 20 e.

ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμ- II
 βάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὖρος
 55 ἔστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλ-
 λων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ
 σοφίᾳς, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
 ὄθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρ-
 σύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς 9
 60 τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταυτὰ τε
 τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα
 ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ
 Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελ-
 ταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας δια-
 65 κοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων
 ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων
 ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ
 ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ
 ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελ-
 70 τασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

55. λέγεται . . . ἐκδεῖραι *Apollo is said to have played*: personal construction, more common in Greek than the impersonal. Translate as best suits the English. The impers. form is λέγεται Ἀπόλλωνα ἐκδεῖραι *it is said that etc.* 574 a, 578 a.

56. ἐκδεῖραι: aor. act. inf. of ἐκδέρω.—ἐρίζοντα *in a contest*: ptc. —οἱ: for ἐαυτῶ, unaccented because unemphatic.

57. σοφίᾳς *skill in music*. See under Μαρσύας for the story.

59. ὅτε . . . ἀπεχώρει 627.—ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ *after his defeat in the (well known) battle of Salamis*, 480 B. C.

60. μάχῃ: the Greek regards this as means 526 a, and omits the preposition.

62. ἔμεινε: perhaps March 20 to April 19, 401 B. C.

66. Σοφαίνετος: had already joined at Sardeis, II 21: probably a slip for Ἀγίᾱς.

68. ἐποίησεν: usually middle in this use: cp. ποιεῖται 99.

69. σύμπαντες: see under σύμπας in vocab.—Notice μέν . . . δέ. The position of μέν shows that ὀπλίται is not taken with οἱ σύμπαντες, but is predicate, with οἱ σύμπαντες as subject, of ἐγένοντο.

70. τοὺς: the article is common

CELEBRATION OF THE LYKAIA. VISIT OF EPYAXA. ARREARS PAID II
TO THE TROOPS

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα 10
εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
τρεις· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ
ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες
75 χρῦσαί· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐν-
τεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα
εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην
πρὸς τῇ Μυσιᾷ χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς 11
τρεις παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίου,
80 πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ
τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μη-
νῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ
ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιῶμενος·
οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀπο-

in approximate numbers. The exact number as already enumerated was heavy-armed 11,600, light-armed 2,300. The *πελτασταί* here include the *τοξόται* and the *γυμῆτες*.

71. ἐντεῦθεν κτλ.: see the whole passage in 679 c.

73. ἐν αἷς *at this time*: supply *ἡμέραις*.—τὰ Λύκαια 536 a.

74. ἦσαν: pl. with the predicate *στλεγγίδες* instead of the regular *ἦν* with the neut. pl. *ἄθλα*.

75. χρῦσαί: see 87-90.

77. Κεράμων ἀγοράν: the march from Kelainai has been northwest while before it had been southeast. Cyrus here strikes the main road and continues east.

79. παρασάγγας τριάκοντα: the longest marches recorded in the *Anabasis*.

81. πλέον ἢ: adverbial for *πλείονος ἢ*.—τριῶν μηνῶν: measure 506; cp. I 67.

82. ἀπήτουν: ἀπ-αιτέω: note ἀπό in comp. Cp. ἀπο-διδόναι in 84.

83. λέγων διῆγε *kept expressing hopes* 585 a: but see also 583, ex. 3. διάγω has both meanings *put off* and *continue*.—ἀνιῶμενος *troubled* 585 a: ἀνιάω.

84. οὐ γὰρ ἦν . . . μὴ ἀποδιδόναι *it was not like Cyrus not to pay when he had the money*.—πρός: see vocab.—ἔχοντα: with the understood subject of ἀποδιδόναι.—μή 564.

85 διδόναι. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνέεται Ἐπύαξα ἢ Συεννέσιος II
 γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο 12
 Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ
 τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ
 ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπεν-
 90 δίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.

MIDAS AND THE SATYR. GENERAL REVIEW AT TYRIÆION. MOCK
 CHARGE OF THE GREEKS. FRIGHT OF EPYAXA AND THE BAR-
 BARIANS

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας 13
 δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν
 παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἢ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυ-
 γῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον
 95 θηρεῦσαι οἶνω κεράσας αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 14
 σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν
 οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέ-
 γεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στρα-
 τευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖ-
 100 ται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.
 ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην 15

87. δοῦναι 578 a. Syennesis and Epyaxa played a double part, helping both sides.—οὖν at any rate.

88. ἀπέδωκε 462. At this time the pay was a daric a month.

90. ἐλέγετο . . . Κῦρον: impersonal for the common personal construction. Κῦρον is subject of the infinitive and the whole clause the subject of ἐλέγετο. See 574 and 404, 13.

93. παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν: we might

expect παρὰ τῇ ὁδῷ.—καλουμένη 582 b.

95. οἶνω 525: we reverse the Greek: by mixing wine with it.—κεράσας: aor. ptc. of κεράν-νυμι.

98. δεηθῆναι . . . Κῦρου: cp. δεῖται αὐτοῦ I 70.—ἐπιδεῖξαι: aor. inf. of ἐπι-δείκνυμι.

99. ποιεῖται held.

101. ὡς νόμος 633 a: again the relative preceding: οὕτω . . . ὡς in the manner in which.

οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς II
 ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν
 δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρ-
 105 χος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί·
 ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ 16
 δὲ παρήλαντον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἰλᾶς καὶ κατὰ τάξεις·
 εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, παρελύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ
 ἢ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες
 110 κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινϊκοῦς καὶ
 κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾶς.
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς 17
 φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἐρμηνεῖα παρὰ
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέ-
 115 σθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φά-
 λαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις·
 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπῆ-

102. συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ *and each (commander) to arrange his own men together.*

103. ἐπὶ τεττάρων *four deep*: 10,600 hoplites arranged thus would extend over a mile and a half. The usual arrangement ἐπὶ φάλαγγος was eight deep, though sometimes twelve. This whole display was intended to impress the Kili-
 kians with the strength of the army.—εἶχε: agrees with the nearest subject: cp. ἦν in 25.

104. τὸ δεξιόν: the post of danger, and therefore of honor, as the shield was carried on the left arm and the right side was unprotected. —οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ: Xenophon's frequent expression for οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ

or οἱ περὶ αὐτόν.—τὸ εὐώνυμον: see vocab.

109. εἶχον: translate twice: *they all wore . . . and carried their shields uncovered*, that is without the leather case in which they were kept on the march.

110. χαλκᾶ, φοινϊκοῦς: see 87-90.

115. ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα *the whole line to advance*: ὅλος regularly takes the predicate position; but we may say *the line to advance in a body*. The usual word for *advance* is ἐπιέναι: see ἐπῆσαν in 117.

117. ἐσάλπιγξε: a subject σαλπικτής is understood; see vocab. σαλπίζω.

σαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάπτον προΐόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ II
 τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις
 120 ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναῖς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ 18
 ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ
 τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ
 Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναῖς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ
 Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν
 125 τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν
 ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών.

EPYAXA RETURNS HOME

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγᾳ 19
 εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίᾳς πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐν-
 ταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς
 130 Λυκαονίᾳς σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγᾳ τριάκοντα.
 ταύτην τὴν χώρην ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν
 ὥς πολεμίαν οὔσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν 20

118. ἐκ δὲ τούτου . . . σκηναῖς
*thereupon, as they were advancing
 more and more rapidly, the sol-
 diers of their own accord raised
 a shout and began to run toward
 their tents.* — προΐόντων 590 a.
 — σὺν κραυγῇ: the dative with-
 out σύν, or a participle, is the regu-
 lar Attic prose usage. Compare
 also on I 81.

119. δρόμος ἐγένετο: *running
 arose for the soldiers* is not the
 English idiom: cp. *ἔρις ἐγένετο*
 340, 341, 22 and 524 a.

120. τῶν βαρβάρων 506 a, *subjec-
 tive*: for ἐν τοῖς βαρβάροις. — καὶ
 connects the τε . . . καὶ clauses
 with what precedes.

121. ἔφυγεν, ἔφυγον: note the

repetition 681 c. — οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγο-
 ρᾶς: for οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.

123. σὺν γέλωτι: for γέλωτι or
 γελῶντες: cp. on σὺν κραυγῇ in
 118.

124. ἰδοῦσα, ἰδών: aor. ptc., time
 coincident with the main verbs.
 Note the chiasmic arrangement
 ἰδοῦσα . . . ἐθαύμασε, ἦσθη . . . ἰδών
 682 a.

125. τὸν . . . φόβον *the fright
 which the Greeks had given the
 Orientals*: note both prep. phrases
 in *attributive position*, and what
 prepositions are used.

131. διαρπάσαι 565.

132. ὥς . . . οὔσαν 593 c: cp. on
 I 80. He had passed the borders
 of his own satrapy.

εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ II
 συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ
 135 αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καπ-
 παδοκίᾳς σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ
 πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐ-
 δαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος
 ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρην, φοινῖκι-
 140 στήν βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων
 δυνάστην, αἰτιᾶσάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

CYRUS PASSES THE KILIKIAN GATES AND REACHES TARROS

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ 21
 δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθιᾷ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμή-
 χανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυν. ἐλέγετο
 145 δὲ καὶ Σύννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν
 εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δὲ
 ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Σύν-
 νεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ᾔσθητο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα

133. τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν 540.

138. ἐν ᾧ: χρόνος is understood: at this time: notice that ᾧ is a relative pronoun. Cp. ἐν αἷς 73.

140. ἕτερόν τινα another: 217, 219. τινα merely makes ἕτερον more indefinite.

141. αἰτιᾶσάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ accusing them of plotting against him 578.—αὐτῷ: like ἑαυτῷ: see 271.

143. εἰσβολὴ pass: the so-called Kilikian gateway, Κιλικίαι πύλαι. See Πύλαι in Proper Names.

144. εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι for an army to enter: both depend on

ἀμήχανος 565 a, 523: both are datives.—ἐκώλυν: attempted to prevent 459 a.

147. ἦκεν: consult 664, ex. 2. In subordinate clauses, as ἐπεὶ ᾔσθητο, past tenses usually retain the indicative when quoted. See also 662 and references. This is the first mention of the term indirect discourse; but we have used its principles in quotations from the very beginning and they should all be perfectly familiar now, except the statement in 662 and 663. See this passage in 254, 8 and 322, 12.

ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἶσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις II
 150 ἤκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾳς εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν
 ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κῦρον. Κῦρος 22
 δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε
 τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
 κατέβαιναν εἰς πεδῖον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον,
 155 καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμ-
 πέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ
 κέγχρον καὶ πῦρους καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος
 δ' αὐτὸ περιεῖχεν ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ
 θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ 23
 160 πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε
 καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίᾳς πόλιν μεγάλην

149. ἦν: for the regular *ἔστι* or *εἶη*. This change of tense in quotation is the common English idiom, but is to be avoided in writing Greek. More regular with *αἰσθάνομαι* would be: *ἤσθετο τὸ Μέωνος . . . στράτευμα ὅν* 586, 588. —*καὶ ὅτι . . . ἤκουε* and *because he heard*. The attempt to emphasize *τριήρεις* by its position causes a momentary ambiguity. When we reach *περιπλεούσας* it seems to be a pred. ptc. with *τριήρεις* as subject, but further reading shows that *ἔχοντα* is pred. ptc. with *Ταμῶν* as subject, and that *τριήρεις* is object of *ἔχοντα*. The English order is: *ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις περιπλεούσας* heard that Tamos had triremes sailing around or more freely that Tamos was sailing around from Ionia to Kilikia with the triremes from the Spartans as well as Cy-

rus's own. See 4/7 for another account of this in which the name Samios has been substituted for Tamos.—*τριήρεις*: see vocab. and 154, 151.

150. Ταμῶν 91-93.

151. τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων 680 a.

152. οὖν: usually taken at any rate, as *οὖν* in 87; perhaps better accordingly, like *οὖν* I 8: there was no question as to whether or why Syennesis had left the heights.—*οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος* 589.

153. ἐφύλαττον had been on guard: cp. ἤσαν I 33.

154. κατέβαιναν: cp. ἀνέβη in 152 and see 466.

155. σύμπλεων 91-95.

157. φέρει bears, produces: not historical present.—*ὄρος*: Mt. Tauros.—*αὐτό* it: τὸ πεδῖον.

161. Ταρσοὺς Tarsoi or Tarsos: the birthplace of St. Paul.

καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλί- II
 κων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς
 Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν 24
 165 ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον
 ὄχυρόν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες·
 ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν
 Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἴσσοις.

TWO COMPANIES OF MENON'S FORCE LOST IN CROSSING THE MOUN-
 TAINS. FRIENDLY MEETING OF CYRUS AND SYENNESIS

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρᾳ Κύρου πέντε 25
 170 ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 τῶν ὁρῶν τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος
 στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἳ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς
 τι κατακοπήναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν, οἳ δὲ ὑπο-

163. διὰ μέσου *through the middle of*: neut. of μέσος used as a substantive, as in μέσον ἡμέρας *mid-day* 4/4 l. 9.

164. ὄνομα 537. — πλέθρων: with ποταμός: measure 506.

165. ἐξέλιπον . . . εἰς: . . . ἐπὶ *had abandoned for a stronghold on the mountains*: notice ἐξ in comp. and the acc. with prep. all implying motion.

166. πλὴν *except*: here a conjunction equivalent to πλὴν . . . οὐκ ἔφυγον. Compare πλὴν in 10. πλὴν τῶν . . . ἐχόντων would be proper. English freely uses *except* both as a preposition and as a conjunction.

167. παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν *along the sea-shore*: in such cases with παρὰ and the accusative, as here and in παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν in 93, there is

the idea of *extension*; any idea of antecedent motion is lost sight of, as also in ὑπὲρ Ἑλλάσποντον I 59.

169. προτέρᾳ 546.

170. ἡμέραις 526 c.

171. τῇ: introducing another attributive of ὑπερβολῇ 552 b.

172. ἀπώλοντο: aor. mid. of ἀπόλλυμι.—οἳ μὲν . . . οἳ δέ 549: cp. τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δέ I 38. For the lack of conjunction see 600 a.—ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπήναι *had been cut down while committing some act of depredation*: κατακοπήναι: aor. pass. of κατακόπτω *cut down*.

173. οἳ δέ . . . ἀπολέσθαι *and others (said) that, falling behind and being unable to find the rest of the army or the roads either (οὐδέ), they then perished while wandering about*.

- λειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο II
 175 στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπο-
 λέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' 26
 ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπα-
 σαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀρ-
 γιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος
 180 δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν
 Σύννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὃ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω
 κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κῦρῳ
 ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει-
 ἔλαβε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, 27
 185 Σύννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κῦρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν
 στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ

175. οὐδέ *and not, nor . . . either*: the regular negative for continuing a negative; just above καὶ οὐ introduced the negative after an affirmative. See 667.

176. δ' οὖν *but at any rate, however that was*: cp. on οὖν in 87 and 152. Two full companies would make two hundred men.

177. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον: emphatic position of subject before ἐπεὶ. — Ταρσοὺς: appositive to πόλιν. — διήρπασαν: note διὰ in comp.

179. τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ 552 b. — Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ: cp. on 177.

180. μετεπέμπετο: cp. 459, ex. 2.

181. πρὸς ἑαυτόν *to come to him*. — δ δ' οὔτε . . . ἤθελε *but he declared that never yet had he got into the power of any one stronger than himself and at this time he refused to come into Cyrus's power*.

— οὔτε . . . οὔτε *both not . . . and not*: *both* is better omitted in translation. — οὐδενί: probably a *with* dative 525, with εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν: cp. εἰς λόγους ἔλθειν αὐτῷ *come to a conference with him*. εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν also means *come to close quarters with, fight hand to hand*. οὐδενί is also taken as a *for* dative 523, equivalent to a genitive. Κῦρῳ in 182 is used like οὐδενί with εἰς χεῖρας understood. — For the repeated negative in οὐδενί see 487. — οὐ . . . πρότερον . . . πω *not . . . before . . . as yet*: simply *never yet*. — ἔλθειν is quoted after οὐκ ἔφη *negavit*: he said οὐκ ἤλθον. — οὐκ ἤθελε *he refused* is the statement of the historian.

183. πρὶν . . . ἔλαβε: consult 644 a.

186. ἃ νομίζεται: see vocab. — παρὰ βασιλεῖ *at court*.

βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρῦσοχάλινον καὶ στρε- II
 πτόν χρῦσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρῦσοῦν
 καὶ στολὴν Περσικήν, καὶ τὴν χώρᾱν μηκέτι διαρ-
 190 πάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἥρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν πον ἐν-
 τυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

THE GREEKS REFUSE TO ADVANCE. KLEARCHOS IN DANGER OF
 BEING STONED TO DEATH

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας III
 εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ
 πρόσω· ὑπώπτειον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλεῆ ἰέναι·
 μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ
 5 Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιωτᾶς ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι·
 οἱ δ' αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου,
 ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προῖεναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μῆκρον 2
 ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ
 ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκ κλη-

189. καὶ . . . διαρπάζεσθαι : sup-
 ply and the promise that.

190. τὰ δὲ . . . ἀπολαμβάνειν :
 supply and permission. Both in-
 finitives are objects of ἔδωκε.

1. ἔμεινεν : cp. on ἦν II 25. Per-
 haps from June 3 to June 23, 401
 B. C.

2. οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι refused to go,
 said they would not go : they said
 οὐκ ἔμεν we are not going, with a
 future sense 385 b. In such uses
 ἰέναι is future ; so with ὑπώπτειον
 ἰέναι in 3.—τοῦ πρόσω : the ad-
 verb would have been sufficient.
 See 515 end.

4. οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ not for this :
 the position of οὐκ indicates that

the meaning is : they said that this
 was not the purpose for which they
 had been hired.—πρῶτος was the
 first who : the adverb πρῶτον would
 mean he first, before doing any-
 thing else. See 546 and ex. 6.

5. ἐβιάζετο 459 a : cp. ἐκώλυεν II
 144.

7. ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο 629 end : cp.
 ὁπότε βούλοιο II 47. The context,
 here ἔβαλλον, indicates that the
 time is universal as regards the
 main verb : whenever they began.
 —μῆκρον 540, 536 b.

8. μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι 572 : note
 κατά in comp. : cp. κατακοπῆναι II
 173.

9. ἐκκλησίαν : regularly of citi-
 zens ; here the army is the state.

- 10 σίᾱν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδά- III
κρῦε πολὺν χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον
καὶ ἐσιώπων. εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

SPEECH OF KLEARCHOS. HE WILL STAND BY HIS COUNTRYMEN

- Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς 3
φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος
15 ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα
ἐτίμησε καὶ μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν
οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυνά-
θησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν 4
πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος
20 ἐτίμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς
ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας
Ἑλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν
ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ'

10. καὶ . . . ἐστῶς : see 583.—
ἐστῶς 370 (1), 173.

13. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται *fellow-soldiers*.—μὴ θαυμάζετε : see 485,
360 a.—ὅτι . . . πράγμασιν
622 b.

14. πράγμασιν 526 a.

15. ἐγένετο *became*.—φεύγοντα
when in exile.—τά τε ἄλλα . . .
καὶ . . . δᾶρεικούς : we may reverse
the order : *he not only gave me ten
thousand darics but honored me in
other ways too ; or better besides
honoring me in other ways he gave
me ten thousand darics too*.—τὰ
ἄλλα 536 b and c.

16. μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς : for
the order see 680 a.—οὓς *this
money*.

17. ἐμοὶ *for myself* : reflexive.

18. ἔδαπάνων : note change from
aorist to imperfect.

19. ἐπολέμησα *began a war* 464.
—ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος : a subtle
appeal to their sympathy through
their patriotism.—καὶ ἐτίμωρού-
μην *and was taking vengeance on
them*.

21. ἐξελαύνων *driving them out*.
—βουλομένους *because they
wished*.

22. ἐπειδὴ . . . ἐπορευόμην : see
629, ex. 3.—ἐκάλει : imperf. He
was urgent.

23. ἵνα . . . ἐκείνου : see 642 b.
—εἴ τι δέοιτο 651 (3) : *his thought
was ἂν τι δέηται μου*.—τι 536 b.
—ἀνθ' ὧν : for ἀντὶ τούτων ᾧ.

ὦν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε III
25 συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ 5
Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον μεθ'
ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰ-
ρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πεί-
σομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὥς ἐγὼ Ἕλληνας ἀγα-
30 γῶν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν
τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ 6
οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὅτι
ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ
35 πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν
ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὦν
οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὗτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι

24. ἐπεὶ *since*.—*ὑμεῖς*: these pronouns in nominative are emphatic.

25. ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι *I must of course*.—προδόντα 571 c: cp. λαβόντα II 9, λαβόντι II 5: *either betray you and avail myself of Cyrus's friendship or prove false to him and stay with you*.

27. εἰ μὲν δὴ . . . οἶδα *now whether*: see 655.

28. δ' οὖν *but at all events*: cp. on II 176.—δ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι 618 a. Note the order: οἶδα at the end; then αἰρήσομαι at the beginning and πείσομαι at the end: cp. 682 a.

29. οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς 487: cp. οὐδενί II 181.—ὥς . . . εἰλόμην 635.—"Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν . . . προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας *after leading Greeks . . . abandoned the Greeks and*: note the order and the omis-

sion of the article with the first "Ἕλληνας. The participles are used like ὑπολαβὼν and συλλέξας I 39.

31. ἐπεὶ . . . ἔψομαι: see 629, ex. 2.—σὺν ὑμῖν: instead of the usual simple dative.

32. οὐ θέλετε: οὐκ ἐθέλετε: θέλω for ἐθέλω.

33. νομίζω γὰρ . . . φίλους: see 678, ex. § 2, 1.

34. καὶ . . . τίμιος: see 579, ex. § 2, 1.—For the position of ἂν see 296.

35. ὅπου ἂν ᾧ: see 620, ex. 2.—ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὦν: for εἰ δὲ ὑμῶν ἔρημος εἴην: it corresponds better with σὺν ὑμῖν *with you*, to say simply *but without you*.—ὑμῶν: with ἔρημος by 512.

36. οὗτ' ἂν . . . οὗτ' ἂν: strengthen and distribute the negative οὐκ ἂν 487. Our idiom requires *either . . . or*.

οὗτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὥς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπη III
 ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.

KLEARCHOS OPENLY REFUSES TO GO TO CYRUS, BUT SECRETLY
 REASSURES HIM

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου 7
 40 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βα-
 σιλεᾶ πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ
 Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ
 τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.
 Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος
 45 μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, 8
 λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον
 ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὥς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ
 δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ
 ἔφη ἰέναι.

37. ὥς . . . ἔχετε: ὅτι ἐγὼ οὖν
 εἶμι ὅπη ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε οὕτω γινώ-
 σκετε *you may be fully assured*
therefore that I am going which-
ever way you go. ὥς with the geni-
 tive absolute represents a ὅτι clause
 and οὕτω repeats and emphasizes
 that idea.—τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε is an
 emphatic γινώσκετε.—καί: also.

39. ταῦτα εἶπεν *thus he spoke*:
 as usually in the historical writers
 ταῦτα refers to what has preceded,
 τάδε to what is to follow. See
 100 b.—αὐτοῦ *self*: emphasizes
 ἐκείνου. Translate the two by *his*
own or *Klearchos's*.

40. ὅτι οὐ φαίη . . . πορεύεσθαι:
 explanatory of ταῦτα which here
 looks forward: *that he said that*
he was not going to the king. If
 ταῦτα refers to what precedes, ὅτι

is to be translated *because*, giving
 the reason for ἐπήνεσαν. In either
 case πορεύεσθαι has a future sense
 like ἰόντος in 37 and ἰέναι in 2.—
 Note παρὰ with βασιλεᾶ here, not
 emphasizing the hostile relation, for
 πρὸς or ἐπὶ. παρὰ is common with
 names of persons: note it also with
 genitive and dative in this section:
 παρὰ Ξενίου, παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.

45. μετεπέμπετο *kept sending*
after; imperf.—οὐκ ἤθελε *re-*
fused, would not.

46. λάθρᾳ 518 b.—πέμπων *kept*
sending: present stem.

47. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν *told him to*
keep up courage: pres. inf. Only
 in the sense of *bid* does λέγω ac-
 tive regularly take the infinitive.
 —ὥς . . . δέον 593 c.

48. μεταπέμπεσθαι *to keep send-*

- 50 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρα- 9
τιώτᾱς καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ
μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ
τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι
55 στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος
ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομί-
ζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ 10
οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος
ὅτι σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα
60 καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ'

ing for him.—αὐτὸς . . . ἰέναι but for himself he said he would not go: αὐτός strengthens the subject of ἰέναι: cp. αὐτός in 200, 15, 202, 10.

50. θ': for τε.

52. τὸν βουλόμενον 582 b: any one who wished.—τοιιάδε: here as frequently the Greek gives prominence to the idea of quality when English rarely makes the distinction. τοιάδε (such) as follows hardly differs in translation from τάδε as follows. Compare τοιάδε in 12.—τὰ μὲν . . . πρὸς ἐκείνον 507 b.

53. δὴ νῦν, you see.—δῆλον ὅτι: for δῆλόν ἐστι ὅτι: here used parenthetically, equivalent to δῆλως evidently.

55. ἐπεὶ γε since (indeed): γε is hardly to be translated here. It emphasizes ἐπεὶ but in speaking the ε would be elided and the word

would not even make a separate syllable.

56. ὅτι μέντοι that however 522 c: note the pres. inf.

57. ὥστε and so.—καὶ even: followed by a genitive absolute of concession though 590, 670 a.

58. τὸ μὲν μέγιστον chiefly 540.—αἰσχυρόμενος from a sense of shame.

59. ὅτι σύνοιδα 622 b.—πάντα in all respects, completely 536 b.—ἐψευσμένος: cp. 587 last two examples.—ἔπειτα καὶ then too: correlative to μέν 58. See 669 a.

60. δεδιὼς μὴ for fear that: see 370 (5).—μὴ . . . ἐπιθῇ 611 b.—ὧν . . . ἡδικῆσθαι for the wrongs which he thinks he has received at my hands: note the perf. inf.—ὧν: for τούτων ᾧ: τούτων gen. with δίκην: ᾧ cog. acc. with ἡδικῆσθαι.—ὑπ' ἐμοῦ by me: really the genitive is agent.

ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι ἡμῖν III
11
καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βου-
λεύεσθαι ὅτι χρή ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἔως γε μένο-
μεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλές
65 στατα μενούμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ὡς
ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν.
ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφε-
λος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ᾧ ἂν φίλος 12
ᾧ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾧ, ἔχει δὲ
70 δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες
ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ
πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθήσθαι. ὥστε ὥρᾱ
λέγειν ὅτι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν
ἐπαύσατο.

PROPOSALS AND COUNTER PROPOSALS OF AGENTS OF KLEARCHOS
AGGRAVATE THE SITUATION

75 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου,
λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέ-

61. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ *therefore I think*.—ὥρᾱ: really the subject of δοκεῖ on which εἶναι depends, quoted as after a verb of thinking. The negatives are retained, οὐχ, οὐδέ, as in such quotations. See 578 a, 564.

62. καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν 565. —ἀλλά . . . ἐκ τούτων *but (it is time) to be planning what we must do next*.

63. καὶ ἔως . . . εἶναι: see 631.

64. σκεπτέον 596 b.—ὅπως . . . μενούμεν: see 638 a.

67. οὔτε . . . οὔτε . . . οὐδέν *neither general nor private is of any use*.

68. μὲν: note the position.—ᾧ ἂν . . . ᾧ: see 616 a.

71. καὶ γὰρ . . . καθῆσθαι: see 574 a and 578 a end.

73. λέγειν: cp. καθεύδειν in 62. —τις: translate as if subject of λέγειν.—γιγνώσκει *judges*.

75. ἐκ τούτου: cp. ἐκ τούτων in 63.—ἀνίσταντο: note the imperf. —οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ: distribute the subject of ἀνίσταντο.—ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου: cp. ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου II 118.

76. λέξοντες 583 b.—ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον *what they (really) thought*: γιγνώσκω sometimes means *feel, think*.

λευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορίᾳ ἄνευ τῆς **III**
 Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε ¹³
 προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύε-
⁸⁰σθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους
 ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ¹⁴
 ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι—ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρ-
 βαρικῷ στρατεύματι—καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας
 δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἔαν δὲ μὴ διδῶ
⁸⁵ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίᾳς τῆς
 χώρας ἀπάξει. ἔαν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττε-
 σθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους
 τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ
 Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα
⁹⁰ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε.

77. οἷα: the *quality* here emphasized of *what sort*, where we should say *how great* or merely *what*.

78. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε and *one man in particular proposed*: in this sense εἶπε takes the infinitive: cp. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν in 47. For the whole passage consult 664, last paragraph.

81. εἰ μὴ βούλεται: if this had been changed to optative, it would be ambiguous, 662.

82. ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν: thrown in parenthetically to show the intentional absurdity of the proposal.

83. ἐλθόντας δὲ . . . αἰτεῖν and *that men go and ask*: see 535, 583.

85. ὅστις . . . ἀπάξει *who* 619: see 552 d with examples.

87. πέμψαι . . . ἄκρα: see 583 b.

88. φθάσωσι . . . καταλαβόντες *might seize them first* 585 a.

89. ὧν . . . ἀνηρπακότες *many of whom they held as prisoners together with much of their property that they had carried off; or many of whose men together with much property they had carried off and still retained*. Notice that the Greek retains the first person, where our idiom continues the indirect quotation to the end. See 663. If we prefer to put part in the direct form we should begin at the first of the sentence in 86 and say *and he also proposed that, if Cyrus should not give a guide either (the δέ in μηδέ), we array ourselves etc*. We may also start from the beginning with *one man in particular proposed that we should choose*.

90. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε *such were his proposals*.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον· Ὡς μὲν III
15
στρατηγήσουντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν
μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ
τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὥς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πεί-
95 σομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι
ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ 16
τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν
τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στό-
λον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὥς εὐήθες εἶη
100 ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λῦμαινόμεθα τὴν
πράξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν
Κῦρος διδῶ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν
Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν 17

91. τοσοῦτον *only so much*: here looks forward.—ὥς . . . λεγέτω: see 594. For the order see 680.

92. στρατηγίαν 536 a.

93. λεγέτω 584.—πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ *for I see in-that-course (ἐν) many reasons why*.—ἐμοὶ . . . ποιητέον 524 b, 596 a.

94. ὥς δέ: ὥς equivalent to *ὅτι*, depending on *ἴστε* or *λεγέτω* implied: *but be assured* or *but he may say*.—ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε 616 a.

95. ἵνα εἰδῆτε 642 a.

96. ὥς . . . ἀνθρώπων *just as well as any other man*: μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων *most of men* is unnecessary. The common expression is *εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος*. καὶ is *also*, but is better not translated.

97. ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν, ἐπιδεικνὺς δέ: see 682 c.

98. τοῦ . . . κελεύοντος *of the man who urged* 582 a. Notice the

position of τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν between τοῦ and κελεύοντος.—ὥσπερ . . . ποιουμένου: see 593 d.

100. ᾧ . . . πράξιν *whose enterprise they were ruining*: note the change to direct form. The Greek says *for whom we are ruining the enterprise*. In translation reserve the first person till the next sentence. It may be well there, and in other such cases, to insert *said he: and if, said he*.

101. εἰ . . . πιστεύσομεν *if we are going to trust*: cp. 648 a.

102. τί κωλύει: see 572 b.—ἡμῖν 523.

103. ἐγὼ γάρ: ἐγὼ is emphatic 557. γάρ introduces the reason for the statement that it was foolish to ask such favors under these circumstances. We may translate: *why! for myself*: cp. 672 a.—ὀκνοίην ἂν: see 579.

εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς 111
 105 αὐταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ
 ἡγεμόνι ὃν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ
 ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου
 λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
 φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυνᾶρίᾳς εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄν- 18
 110 δρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οἵτινες ἐπιτήδαιοι σὺν Κλε-
 ἀρχῷ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνους τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ
 εἰ μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησίᾳ οἷ᾽ ἄπερ καὶ πρό-
 σθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ
 κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων·
 115 εἰ δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ 19
 ἐπιπονωτέρᾳ καὶ ἐπικινδυνωτέρᾳ, ἀξιούν ἢ
 πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίᾳν ἀφίεναι·
 οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι

104. ἃ . . . δοίη: see 616 b, ex.
 § 2, 1.—μὴ . . . καταδύσῃ 611 b.

105. αὐταῖς 525 a.

106. ὃν δοίη: cp. ἃ δοίη in 104.
 —ἔπεσθαι 570 a.—ὅθεν . . .
 ἐξελθεῖν a place from which it will
 be impossible to get out. For οὐκ
 ἔσται cp. the common οὐκ ἔστι.

107. ἄκοντος 589 a.

108. ἀπελθών 585. For the or-
 der see 680, § 2.

109. εἶναι 578.—δοκεῖ δέ μοι it
 seems best to me that; my idea is
 that; I propose that: logically
 equivalent to εἶπε in 78. Upon it
 as subjects depend the infinitives
 ἐρωτᾶν, ἔπεσθαι, εἶναι, ἀξιούν, ἀπαγ-
 γείλαι, βουλεύεσθαι.

110. οἵτινες ἐπιτήδαιοι such as
 are friends; or suitable men.

111. τί . . . χρῆσθαι 536 b.—
 οἷ᾽ ἄπερ: for ἐκέλευε οἷ᾽ ἄνπερ: the lat-
 ter being cognate accusative like τί.

112. καὶ also: better left un-
 translated. Cp. ὅπῃ . . . καὶ in 37,
 ὥς τις καὶ in 96.

114. ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς that we
 also follow.

116. ἀξιούν that they ask: the
 subject is found in ἄνδρας in 110.
 So also with ἀπαγγεῖλαι in 120.

117. πείσαντα, πεισθέντα: the
 subject is αὐτὸν Cyrus: that he
 either win our consent and lead us
 on or let us go in friendship with
 his consent. The means of per-
 suasion was higher pay.—οὕτω:
 suggests the circumstances to which
 the statements apply 481.

118. ἐπόμενοι, ἀπionτες if we

ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅτι δ' III
 120 ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ'
 ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι.

EMBASSY TO CYRUS, WHO EVADES THE TRUTH, BUT PROMISES
 MORE PAY

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ 20
 πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμῃν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα
 125 ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθ-
 μούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· καὶ μὲν
 ἦ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δε
 φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκού-
 σαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἵρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώ-
 130 ταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέᾳ,
 ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ
 δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ
 πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δᾶρικοῦ τρία ἡμιδᾶρεια
 τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ ἄγοι
 135 οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερώ.

follow, if we return: for εἰ ἐποί-
 μεθα, εἰ ἀπίοιμεν.

123. τὰ δόξαντα 582 a: the ques-
 tions agreed upon.

124. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο . . . βου-
 λευσόμεθα: see 664, § 3.

125. καὶ and if: for καὶ ἔάν 35.

130. τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία ἦν: ὑπώ-
 πτεον.

132. οὐ: for τούτου δ: gen. after
 the comparative force in ἡμιόλιον a
 half more 517.

134. τοῦ μηνός 515.

135. οὐδεὶς 587.—ἐν τῷ γε φα-
 νερώ openly at least: evidently
 some understood what the real
 purpose was. Cp. 420 end: πλὴν
 Κλεάρχου.

APPENDIX I

THE following list of words is given to help some pupils in gaining the idea that Greek consonants have the same duties as the corresponding letters in Latin and English, and to prevent, if possible, such absurdities as *exenos* ξένος, *eskole* σχολή, *emneme* and *muneme* μνήμη, *eximaira* χίμαιρα. The complete list should be used in class and repeated for several lessons. The instructor can assist by pointing out the similarities and insisting upon the clear enunciation of the letters that represent sounds that differ from the sound of the corresponding English letters.

Always give the hard sound to γ as *g* in *get*. There are no silent letters: sound ζ as *dz*; ξ as *x* in *tax* even at the beginning of a word, Ξέρξης *Xerxes*, not as *z*; ψ as *ps* in *tops*. Never give the *z* sound to σ. Roughen the sound in initial ρ and always in χ. This is not an exercise on the vowels, but the pupil must remember to give the Greek sounds to the vowels and diphthongs (1-8) in the Greek words and the English sounds in the English words.

ἀ-νά-θη-μα	<i>anathema</i>	χα-ρα-κτήρ	<i>character</i>
ἀν-τα-γων-ίζο-μαι	<i>antagonize</i>	ῥη-το-ρι-κή	<i>rhetoric</i>
ἀν-τα-γων-ιστής	<i>antagonist</i>	ἀ-νά-λυ-σις	<i>analysis</i>
ἀ-θλη-τής	<i>athlete</i>	σύν-θε-σις	<i>synthesis</i>
βι-ο-γρα-φί-α	<i>biography</i>	δρα-στι-κός	<i>drastic</i>
γε-ω-γρα-φί-α	<i>geography</i>	δρᾶ-μα	<i>drama</i>
γε-ω-με-τρί-α	<i>geometry</i>	ἡ-μι-σφαί-ρι-ον	<i>hemisphere</i>
ἀν-θρῶ-πο-λο-γί-α	<i>anthropology</i>	κρι-τή-ρι-ον	<i>criterion</i>
ῥᾶ	<i>hōra</i>	κρι-τι-κός	<i>critic</i>
ἀκ-μή	<i>acme</i>	κρί-σις	<i>crisis</i>
θε-ᾶ-τρον	<i>theater</i>	σφί-γξ	<i>sphinx</i>
πα-λίν-δρο-μος	<i>palindrome</i>	δε-σπό-της	<i>despot</i>
τρα-γω-δί-α	<i>tragedy</i>	πολ-ι-τι-κός	<i>political</i>
ί-στο-ρί-α	<i>history</i>	ἀν-αρ-χί-α	<i>anarchy</i>
μη-χα-νι-κά	<i>mechanics</i>	μον-αρ-χί-α	<i>monarchy</i>
σχολή	<i>school</i>	ὀ-λιγ-αρ-χί-α	<i>oligarchy</i>

τη-λε-φω-νή	<i>telephone</i>	έξ-ά-γω-νον	<i>hexagon</i>
φω-νο-γρα-φή	<i>phonograph</i>	φωσ-φό-ρος	<i>phosphorus</i>
σχ-ο-λα-στι-κός	<i>scholastic</i>	ἀ-γνω-στι-κός	<i>agnostic</i>
σχό-λι-ον	<i>scholion</i>	γνώ-μη	<i>gnome</i>
σχ-ο-λι-α-στής	<i>scholiast</i>	κό-σμος	<i>cosmos</i>
εὐ-φω-νί-α	<i>euphony</i>	ρό-δό-δεν-δρον	<i>rhododendron</i>
σφαῖ-ρα	<i>sphere</i>	ή-λι-ο-τρό-πι-ον	<i>heliotrope</i>
χι-μαι-ρα	<i>chimera</i>	δι-ά-με-τρος	<i>diameter</i>
χρο-νό-με-τρον	<i>chronometer</i>	παιδ-α-γω-γός	<i>pedagogue</i>
θερ-μό-με-τρον	<i>thermometer</i>	ἀρ-χαῖ-κός	<i>archaic</i>
ὄρ-γα-νον	<i>organ</i>	ἀρ-χέ-τυ-πος	<i>archetype</i>
πα-ρά-δει-σος	<i>paradise</i>	γραμ μα-τι-κή	<i>grammar</i>
ἀ-πο-στο-λι-κός	<i>apostolic</i>	ῥῖ-νο-κέ-ρως	<i>rhinoceros</i>
τε-χνι-κός	<i>technical</i>	μνη-μο-νι-κός	<i>mnemonic</i>
φι-λο-σο-φί-α	<i>philosophy</i>	ζεῦγ-μα	<i>zeugma</i>
βι-βλι-ο-πώ-λης	<i>bibliopole</i>	ζή-λος	<i>zeal</i>
ἀ-στε-ρί-σκος	<i>asterisk</i>	ζέ-φυ-ρος	<i>zephyr</i>
ἐμ-φα-σις	<i>emphasis</i>	ψεύ-δω	<i>pseudo-</i>
φαι-νό-με-νον	<i>phenomenon</i>	ξι-φί-αs	<i>xiphias</i>
γυ-μνά-σι-ον	<i>gymnasium</i>	ξύ-λο-γραφ-	<i>xylograph</i>
ὑ-πο-κρι-τι-κός	<i>hypocritical</i>	ξύ-λο-φω-νή	<i>xylophone</i>
σύν-ο-ψις	<i>synopsis</i>	ξύ-στόs	<i>xystos</i>
κλί-μαξ	<i>climax</i>	ξύ-στήρ	<i>xyster</i>
λά-ρυγξ	<i>larynx</i>	ξάν-θιον	<i>xanthion</i>
συν-α-γω-γή	<i>synagogue</i>	ψευ-δο-γρα-φί-α	<i>pseudography</i>
δι-ά-γνω-σις	<i>diagnosis</i>	ψευ-δό-δο-ξος	<i>pseudodox</i>
σύν-τα-ξις	<i>syntax</i>	ψαλ-μός	<i>psalm</i>
χρῦ-σαλ-λίς	<i>chrysalis</i>	ἰ-δι-ο-συγ-κρά-σί-α	<i>idiosyncrasy</i>

APPENDIX II

DERIVATIVES

IN using the following lists of derivatives, look up in the general vocabulary such words as are not given in the paragraph referred to in the *Grammar*.

VERBAL NOUNS

Suffix -ο 403

τρόπος	νόμος	φόβος	λόχος
στόλος	δρόμος	σκοπός	λόγος

Suffix -ᾱ 404

ἀρχή	ἐπιβουλή	εἰσβολή	μάχη
συλλογή	τροφή	ὑπερβολή	στολή
φυλακή	ἀγορά	τροφή	ἐπιστολή
βουλή	κραυγή	δίκη	

Suffix -τᾱ 405

πελταστής	δυνάστης	προδότης	ἄρμοστής
-----------	----------	----------	----------

Suffixes -σι, -τι, and others 406 and a

ἀνάβασις	πρᾶξις	πίστις	στρατεία
κατάβασις	στάσις	ἐκκλησίᾱ	
ἐξέτασις	πρόφασις	ὑποψία	
τάξις	μάντις	βασιλείᾱ	

Suffix -μᾱ 406

γνώμη	τῆμη	κώμη
-------	------	------

Suffix -ματ 407

στράτευμα	πρᾶγμα	ἄρμα	σύνθημα
χρῆμα	δέρμα	ὄνομα	τόξευμα

VERBAL ADJECTIVES

Suffix -ο 410; cp. 446 a

λοιπός στρατ-ηγός λοχ-ᾱγός ναύ-αρχος σκευο-φόρος

Suffix -το 411

πιστός	αἰρετός	ἐγκέλευστος	ἄπρᾱκτος
δυνατός	διαβατός	ἐπίρρυντος	
ἀδύνατος	ἀδιάβατος	στρεπτός	

Suffix -ρο and others 412

ἐχθρός	ὀχυρός	δεινός
ἰσχῦρός	ἱκανός	φανερός

DENOMINATIVE VERBS

Verbs in -όω 416 a

ἀξιόω μισθόω καταπετρόω δηλόω δουλόω

Verbs in -άω 416 b

τελευταίω	ἡττάομαι	σιωπάω	αἰτιάομαι
ὀρμάω	πειράομαι	τίμάω	
νικάω	πλανάομαι	δαπανάω	

Verbs in -εω 416 c

ἀσθενέω	ὠφελέω	θεωρέω	ἀδικέω
φιλέω	πολιορκέω	τιμωρέω	στρατηγέω
πολεμέω	ἐπιθῦμέω	ἀπορέω	ἀμελέω
οἰκέω	κατανοέω	λύπέω	κρατέω

Verbs in -εύω 417 a

βασιλεύω	κινδυνεύω	βουλεύω	θηρεύω
ἱππεύω	πιστεύω	πορεύομαι	παιδεύω
ὑποπτεύω			

Verbs in -ίζω 418

ἐρίζω ὀργίζομαι ἄθροίζω νομίζω σαλπίζω

Verbs in -άζω 419

ἀτῖμάζω γυμνάζω ἀρπάζω βιάζομαι θανατάζω

Verbs in -αίνω 420

σημαίνω χαλεπαίνω

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES

Suffix -ιο 424

ἀρχαῖος	βασίλειος	πολέμιος	σχολαῖος
Βοιώτιος	τίμιος	ὄρθιος	τελευταῖος
φίλιος	δίκαιος	Μιλήσιος	
ἄγριος	ἄξιος	Ἀθηναῖος	

Suffix -ικο 425

βαρβαρικός	δᾶρεικός	Περσικός	ἵππικός
Ἑλληνικός	ξενικός	Ἰωνικός	ναυτικός

Suffix -εο 426

χρῦσοῦς χαλκοῦς φοινικοῦς

DENOMINATIVE NOUNS

Suffix -ιᾶ 429 b

ἀπορίᾶ	εὐθήτεια	σοφίᾶ	ἀπιστίᾶ
φιλίᾶ	φλυαρίᾶ	στρατιᾶ	σωτηρίᾶ
στρατηγίᾶ			

Suffix -ευ 430 a

ἵππεύς ἑρμηνεύς

Suffix -τᾶ 430 b

πολίτης	ὀπλίτης	ἀντιστασιώτης
στρατιώτης	τοξότης	ιδιώτης

Suffix -ιον 431 a

πεδῖον χρῦσιον θηρίον χωρίον

APPENDIX III

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

A

- 'Αβροκόμας -ου or -ᾱ *Abrokomas, Abrocomas*, satrap of Syria and Phoinikia. I. iii. 20.
- "Αβυδος -ου ἡ *Abȳdos, Abȳdus*, a city of the Troad on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont opposite Sestos. Here Xerxes built his bridge. I. i. 9.
- 'Αγαμέμνων -ονος *Agamemnon*, king of *Mykēne, Mykēnai, Mycēnae*, leader of the Achaians in the Trojan war.
- 'Αγασιάς -ου *Agasias; ἄγαμαι*.
- 'Αγιάς -ου *Agias; ἄγω*.
- *Αγίς -ιδος *Agis*.
- 'Αθήναι -ῶν *Athens*, the city of Attica; 'Αθηνᾶ *Athēna*.
- 'Αθηναῖος -ᾱ -ον *Athenian; 'Αθῆναι* 424.
- 'Αθήνησι adv. *at Athens* 228.
- Αινιάν -ᾱνος ὁ *an Ainianian, Aenianian*, of southwest Thes-saly. I. ii. 6.
- "Αλυσ -υος ὁ *the Halys*, principal river of Asia Minor, flowing into the Euxine; ἅλς *salt*, named from the salt works on its banks.
- 'Αμβρακιώτης -ου *an Ambrakiot, Ambraciot*, of *Ambrakia*, a colony of Corinth in Epiros.
- 'Ανάβασις -εως ἡ *the Anabasis*, the title given to Xenophon's history of the Greeks in their march with Cyrus against Artaxerxes at Babylon; ἀνά, βαίνω 406, 440 a.
- 'Απόλλων -ωνος *Apollo*, son of Zeus and Leto, twin brother of Artemis. He was god of the sun and light, φοῖβος *gleaming*, of health, of music (see under Μαρσύας), of archery. As the god of prophecy he had his most famous oracle at *Delphoi, Delphi*.
- "Αραψ "Αραβος ὁ *an Arab, Arabian*.
- 'Αρβάκης -ου *Arbakes, Arbaces*.
- 'Αρηξίων -ωνος *Arexion*, an Arkadian soothsayer; ἀρήγω *help*.
- 'Αριαῖος -ου *Ariaios, Ariaeus*.
- 'Αρίστιππος -ου *Aristippos, Aristippus*, a Thessalian, gathered an army for Cyrus and sent it under command of Menon. I. i. 10; ii. 1; ἄριστος, ἵππος *having the best horses* 447.
- 'Αρκάς -άδος *an Arkadian, Arkadian, of Arkadia, Arcadia* in central Peloponnēsos. I. ii. 1, 10.
- 'Αρμενιά -ᾱς ἡ *Armenia*, a lofty table-land of Western Asia.
- 'Αρταξέρξης -ου *Artaxerxes II*, called Μνήμων *the mindful*, from his good memory. It was said

that he could remember the names of all his soldiers. He was the eldest son of Dareios II and Parysatis and was king of Persia 404-359. It was against him that Cyrus made the expedition recorded in the *Anabasis*. I. i. 1, 3, 4.

Ἀρτάοξος -ου *Artaozos, Artaozus*.

Ἀρταφέρνης -ους *Artaphernes*.

Ἀσιᾶ -ᾱς ἡ *Asia*.

Ἀσπένδιος -ου *an Aspendian*, from Aspendos, an Argive colony in Pamphylia. I. ii. 12.

Ἀστυάγης -ους *Astyages*, last king of the Medes.

Ἀχαιοί -ῶν the *Achaïans, Achaeans*, the Greeks that fought against Troy.

Ἀχαιοί -οῦ *an Achaian, Achaeian, of Achaia*, the northern district of Peloponnēsos. I. i. 11.

Ἀχιλλεύς -έως *Achilles*, son of Peleus and Thetis, the mightiest warrior before Troy, the hero of the *Iliad*.

B

Βαβυλών -ῶνος ἡ *Babylon*, one of the oldest and most famous cities of antiquity; *Babili, Babel, the Gate of Il or God*.

Βοιωτῖα -ᾱς ἡ *Boiotia, Boeotia*, a state of central Greece.

Βοιώτιος -ᾱ -ον *Boiotian, Boeotian*. I. i. 11.

Δ

Δάνα -ων τά *Dana*, a city of Kap-padokia. I. ii. 20.

Δαρείος -ου *Dareios I, Darius I*, king of Persia 521-486 B. C., ex-

tended and consolidated the empire of Cyrus the Great. His army under Datis and Artaphernes was defeated by the Athenians at Marathon 490 B. C.

Dareios II, Darius II, king of Persia 424-405 B. C., father of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. I. i. 1; Persian *darā king*.

Δάτις *Datis*.

Δελφοί -ῶν οἱ *Delphoi, Delphi*, a town of Phokis at the south base of Mt. Parnassos, the seat of the celebrated oracle and temple of Apollo.

Δεξιππος -ου *Dexippos, Dexippus*; *δεξιός, ἵππος*: handy with horses.

Δημοκράτης -ου *Demokrates, Democrates*; *δῆμος* people, *κράτος*.

Δία accusative of *Ζεύς*.

Δόλοψ -οπος ὁ *a Dolopian*, of southwest Thessaly. I. ii. 6.

Δρακόντιος -ου *Drakontios, Dracontius*; *δέρκομαι*, aor. *ἔδρακον* see clearly: keen-eyed.

Ε

Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ *Hellas*, in Homer a city in southern Thessaly; afterward the name of *Hellas, Greece*. I. ii. 9.

Ἑλλην -ηνος ὁ *a Greek*. I. i. 2.

Ἑλληνικός -ῆ -όν *Greek, Grecian*. I. i. 6; **Ἑλλην** 425. Hellenic.

Ἑλληνίς -ίδος ἡ fem. adj. *Greek, Grecian*; **Ἑλλην** 434 a.

Ἑλλησποντιακός -ῆ -όν *lying on the Hellespont*. I. i. 9; **Ἑλλήσποντος**.

Ἑλλήσποντος -ου ὁ the *Hellespont, Dardanelles*. I. i. 9; **Ἑλλη, πόν-**

- τος *Helle's sea* 436 b. In the myth, Helle is drowned here while riding with her brother Phrixos on the ram of the golden fleece, Χρυσόμαλλος *Chrysomallos*.
- *Επύαξα -ης *Epyaxa*. I. ii. 12.
- Εὐκλείδης -ου *Eukleides, Euclides, Euclid*; εὐκλεής *famous*, -ίδης 433 b, c: *son of a famous one*.
- Εὐξεινος πόντος -ου ὁ *the Euxine, the Black Sea*; originally called ἄ-ξεινος *inhospitable*, changed to avoid a word of ill omen to εὖ-ξεινος *kind to strangers, hospitable*; cp. εὐάννυμος and *Cape of Good Hope* for *Stormy Cape*; εὖ, ξεῖνος for ξένος 441.
- Εὐφράτης -ου ὁ *the Euphrātes*, the great river of western Asia.

Z

- Ζεὺς Διὸς *Zeus, Jupiter*, father of men and of gods, πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν τε θεῶν τε, giver of victory, protector of kings, guardian of oaths and the rights of hospitality.

H

- *Ηγήσανδρος -ου *Hegesandros, Hegesander*; ἡγέομαι, ἀνὴρ 442: *leader of men*.
- *Ηράκλεια -ās ἡ *Herakleia, Heraclēa*, a colony of Megara in Bithynia on the Pontos; Ἡρακλῆς *Herakles, Heracles, Hercules*.

Θ

- Θεμιστογένης -ους *Themistogenes*.
- Θεόπομπος -ου *Theopompos, Theopompus*; θεός, πέμπω 446 a: *God-send*.

Θερμῶδων -οντος ὁ *the Thermōdon*, a river of Kappadokia flowing into the Pontos. Here lived the Amazons.

Θέτις -ιδος *Thetis*, a sea goddess, wife of Peleus, and mother of Achilles. She is called *silver footed* ἀργυρό-πεζα.

Θετταλῖα -ās ἡ *Thessaly*, the most northern state of Greece. On its northern boundary was Mt. Olympos, the home of the gods. I. i. 10; Θετταλός 424.

Θετταλός -οῦ ὁ *a Thessalian*. I. i. 10; ii. 6.

Θηβαῖος -ου ὁ *a Theban*, of Thebes in Boiotia.

Θηραμένης -ους *Theramenes*.

Θίβρων -ωνος *Thibron*, a Spartan commander.

Θράξ Θρακός ὁ *a Thrakian, Thracian*. I. i. 9; ii. 9.

Θύμβριον -ου τό *Thymbrion, Thymbrium*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 13.

Θύνοι -ῶν οἱ *the Thynoi, Thyni*.

I

*Ικόνιον -ου τό *Ikonion, Iconium*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 19.

*Ιρίς -ιος ὁ *the Iris*, a river of Pontos.

*Ισσοί -ῶν οἱ for *Ισσός -οῦ ὁ *Issos, Issus*, a city of Kilikia; the plural forms only, *Issoi, Issi*, are used by Xenophon. Near it Alexander the Great defeated Dareios III, 333 B. C. I. ii. 24.

*Ιων -ωνος ὁ *an Ionian*.

*Ιωνία -ās ἡ *Ionía*, a district on the coast of Asia Minor. Its chief cities were Milētos and Ephesos. I. ii. 21.

Ιωνικός -ή -όν *Ionian*; **Ἴων** 425.
 Ionic.

K

Καππαδοκία -ᾱς ἡ *Kappadokia*,
Cappadocia, a country in central
 Asia Minor. I. ii. 20.

Καρδοῦχοι -ων οἱ *the Kardouchoi*,
Cardūchi, *Carduchians*, the
 modern Kurds.

Καστωλός -οῦ ἡ *Kastōlos*, *Castō-*
lus, a place near Sardeis. Near it
 was a plain that was used as the
 mustering place for the soldiers
 of the Persian army from a large
 area including Lydia, Phrygia
 Major, and Kappadokia. I. i. 2.

Καῖστρου πεδῖον -ου τό *Kaijstrou-*
pedion, *Caijsterfield*, a city of
 Phrygia; cp. Springfield. I. ii. 11.

Κελαιναί -ῶν αἱ *Kelainai*, *Celae-*
nae, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 7, 8.

Κεράμων ἀγορά -ᾱς ἡ *Keramon-*
agora, *Ceramonagora*, *Tile-mar-*
ket, a town in Phrygia. I. ii. 10.

Κιλικία -ᾱς ἡ *Kilikia*, *Cilicia*, a
 district in southeast Asia Minor.
 I. ii. 20; **Κίλιξ** 424.

Κίλιξ -ικος ὁ *a Kilikian*, *Cilician*.
 I. ii. 12, 22; iii. 14.

Κίλισσα -ης *Kilikian*, *Cilician*
woman, applied to Epyaxa. I. ii.
 12.

Κλεαγόρας -ου *Kleagoras*, *Cleago-*
ras; κλέος *fame*, ἀγορά: *famous*
speaker.

Κλεᾶνωρ -οπος *Kleānor*, *Cleānor*;
 κλέος *fame*: *man of renown*.

Κλέαρχος -ου *Klearchos*, *Clearchus*,
 a Spartan general, exiled, joined
 Cyrus and became the chief leader
 of the Greeks. I. i. 9; ii. 1; iii. 2;

κλέος *fame*, ἀρχός 446 b: *famous*
ruler.

Κλονίος -ου *Klonios*, *Clonius*.

Κολοσσαί -ῶν αἱ *Kolossai*, *Colos-*
sae, a city of Phrygia; one of
 Paul's Epistles is addressed to the
 Colossians. I. ii. 6.

Κόλχοι -ων οἱ *the Kolchoi*, *Colchi*,
Colchians, of *Kolchis*, *Colchis* on
 the Pontos, the home of Medeia,
 Medea, and the scene of the quest
 of the Golden Fleece.

Κουνάξη -ης ἡ *Kounaxa*, *Cunaxa*,
 a village on the Euphrātes near
 which the Greeks under Klear-
 chos defeated the Persian army
 of Artaxerxes II. Cyrus was
 killed.

Κρής Κρητός ὁ *a Kretan*, *Cretan*,
 of the island of Crete, the largest
 of the Greek islands. The best
 archers in the army of Cyrus
 came from Crete. I. ii. 9.

Κύδνος -ου ὁ *the Kydnos*, *Cydnus*,
 a river of Kilikia. I. ii. 23.

Κύρος -ου *Cyrus*, son of Dareios II
 and Parysatis, called *Cyrus the*
Younger. In 407 B. C. he was
 made military commander of
 western Asia Minor and aided
 the Spartans against Athens. His
 story is told in the *Anabasis*.
 I. i. 1.

Λ

Λακεδαιμόνιος -ᾱ -ον *Lakedaimo-*
nian, *Lacedaemonian*, *Spartan*.
 I. i. 9; **Λακεδαίων** 424.

Λακεδαίων -ονος ἡ *Lakedaimon*,
Lacedaemon, the country in the
 southeast part of Peloponnēsos.
 Its capital is Sparta.

Λάκων -ωνος ὁ *a Lakonian, Laconian, Spartan.*

Λάρισσα -ης ἡ *Larissa*, the ruins of an Assyrian city, Calah or Resen, the southwest corner of Nineveh.

Λυδία -ās ἡ *Lydia*, a country in the western part of Asia Minor, capital Sardis. I. ii. 5.

Λύκαια -ων τά *the Lykaia, Lycaea*, a festival celebrated by the Arkadians. I. ii. 10.

Λυκαῶνιā -ās ἡ *Lykaonia, Lycaonia*, a district of central Asia Minor. I. ii. 19.

Λυκομήδης -ους *Lykomēdes, Lycomēdes.*

M

Μαίανδρος -ου ὁ *the Maiandros, Maeander*, a large river rising near Kelainai, proverbial for its winding course. I. ii. 5; *maander*.

Μάκρωνες -ων οἱ *the Makrōnes, Macrōnes*, a warlike people of Pontos.

Μαραθῶν -ῶνος ὁ *Marathon*, a plain in Attica where, 490 B. C., the Athenians under Miltiades defeated the army of Dareios I sent to punish Athens for aiding the Ionians in burning Sardis.

Μαρσύας -ου ὁ *the Marsyas*, a river of Phrygia flowing into the Maiandros. I. ii. 8.

The satyr *Marsyas*. I. ii. 8. "The story is often alluded to, and parts of it are told in several works of art that have come down to us. It is said that Athēna invented the flute (αὐλός, more like our clarinet);

but catching sight of her own image in the water as she played, she determined never again to distend her cheeks in such an ugly manner, and threw the pipe away. The satyr Marsyas, who had been listening with delight, at once caught it up, and soon was so proud of his own music thereon that he challenged Apollo himself, the god of music, to a contest, Apollo to use his lyre. The victor might punish the vanquished as he pleased, and the Muses were to be the judges. Of course Apollo won, and he punished the presumptuous satyr in the way described in the text."

Μεγαρεύς -έως ὁ *a Megarian, of Megara*. I. ii. 3; **Μέγαρα** 434 a.

Μεγαφέρνης -ου *Megaphernes*. I. ii. 20.

Μένων -ωνος *Menon, Meno*, a Thesalian, sent to Cyrus by Aristippos. I. ii. 6, 20 ff.

Μέσπιλα -ης ἡ *Mespila*, a name applied to part of the ruins of Nineveh, the northwest corner.

Μήδεια -ās *Medeia, Medea*, wife of Astyages, last king of the Medes.

Μηδία -ās ἡ *Media*, a district of central Asia. In the *Anabasis* the name is applied to Assyria; **Μῆδοι** 424.

Μῆδοι -ων οἱ *the Medes*; cp. *Madai* Gen. x. 2.

Μίδας -ου *Midas*, mythical king of Phrygia, is the hero of many legends. He caught the satyr, Silēnos, who frequented his rose garden. I. ii. 13. As he treated his captive well, Dionysos rewarded him by granting any

wish he proposed. Foolishly requesting that all he touched be turned to gold he died of hunger. In a musical contest between Pan and Apollo, he awarded the prize to Pan. The indignant Apollo gave him ass's ears.

Μιθριδάτης -ου *Mithridātes*.

Μιλήσιος -ᾱ -ον *Milesian*. I. i. 11; *Μίλητος* 424.

Μίλητος -ου ἡ *Milētos*, *Milētus*, once the Greek metropolis of western Asia, in Ionia. I. i. 6, 7; ii, 2.

Μῦσιᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *Mysia*, a province in northwest Asia Minor.

Μύσιος -ᾱ -ον *Mysian*. I. ii. 10.

N

Νίκανδρος -ου *Nikandros*, *Nican-der*; *νίκη*, *ἀνήρ* 446 a: *man of victory*.

Νίκαρχος -ου *Nikarchos*, *Nicar-chus*; *νίκη*, *ἄρχος* 446 a: *leader to victory*.

Νικόμαχος -ου *Nikomachos*, *Nico-machus*; *νίκη*, *μάχομαι* 446 a: *victorious in battle*.

Ξ

Ξανθικλῆς -οὺς *Xanthikles*, *Xanthicles*; *ξανθός* *yellow*, *κλέος* *fame*: *famed for his yellow locks*.

Ξενίᾱς -ου *Xenías*, an Arkadian, general in Cyrus's army. I. i. 2; ii. 1, 3; iii. 7: *ξένος*: *hospitable*.

Ξενοφῶν -ᾶντος *Xenophon*, an Athenian, author of the *Anabasis*, see 420; *ξένος*, *φάων*: *bringing light to guest-friends, joy of guests*.

Ξέρξης -ου *Xerxes I*, king of Persia 485-465 B. C., defeated in the battle of Salamis 480 B. C. I. ii. 9.

O

Ὀδυσσεύς -ῆς *Odysseus*, *Ulysses*, king of Ithaca, hero of the *Odyssey*, husband of Penelope, father of Telemachos, one of the wisest of the Achaian leaders before Troy.

Ὀλύνθιος -ου ὁ an *Olynthian*, of *Olynthos*, a city of the Chalkidian peninsula, destroyed by Philip 347 B. C. I. ii. 6.

Ὅμηρος -ου *Homer*, the poet of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*.

Ὀρόντας -ου or -ᾱ *Orontas*.

Π

Παρθένιος -ου ὁ the *Parthenios*, *Parthenius*, a river of Paphlagonia.

Παρράσιος -ου ὁ a *Parrhasian*, of *Parrhasia*, a district of southwest Arkadia.

Παρύσατις -ιδος *Parysatis*, mother of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. I. i. 1, 4. Through her influence all the leaders who opposed Cyrus were put to death.

Πᾶσιων -ωνος *Pasion*. I. ii. 3; iii. 7.

Πελοποννήσιος -α -ον *Peloponnesian*. I. i. 6; *Πελοπόννησος* 424.

Πελοπόννησος -ου ἡ *Peloponnēsos*, *Peloponnēsus*, peninsula of southern Greece; *Πέλοψ*, *νῆσος* *island*: *Pelops's Island*.

Πέλται -ῶν αἱ *Peltaí*, *Peltae*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 10.

Πέργαμος -ου ἡ *Pergamos, Pergamus*, a city of Mysia.

Περικλῆς -έους *Perikles, Pericles*; περί, κλέος *fame: far-famed*

Πέρσης -ου ὁ *a Persian*. I. ii. 20.

Περσικός -ή -όν *Persian*. I. ii. 27; Πέρσης 425.

Πηλεὺς -έως *Peleus*, father of Achilles.

Πίγρης -ητος *Pigres*, an interpreter to Cyrus. I. ii. 17.

Πισιδαι -ῶν οἱ *the Pisidians*, a people of Asia Minor, south of Phrygia, who did not acknowledge the sovereignty of Persia. I. i. 11; ii. 1.

Πισιδία -ās ἡ *Pisidia*, see above.

Πολυκράτης -ους *Polykrates, Polycrates*; πολὺς, κράτος: *very mighty*.

Πολύνικος -ου *Polynikos, Polynicus*; πολὺς, νίκη: *of many victories*.

Προκλῆς -έους *Prokles, Procles*; πρό, κλέος *fame: far-famed*.

Πρόξενος -ου *Proxenos, Proxenus*, a friend of Xenophon. I. i. 11; ii. 3; πρό, ξένος: *public guest*.

Πύλαι -ῶν αἱ *Pylai, Pylae, Gates*, a common name for mountain-pass fortifications; cp. Θερμοπύλαι *Hot Gates*. The εἰσβολή in I. ii. 21 was the Κιλικίαι Πύλαι, the great highway from Asia Minor into the valley of the Euphrates. It is a narrow gorge between two lofty mountains and commands the entrance into Asia Minor. Crossing the central ridge at an elevation of only 3,300 feet between two mountains of 11,000 feet in height, it is of great military importance.

Σ

Σάμιος -ου *Samios, Samius*.

Σάρδεις -εων αἱ *Sardeis, Sardis*, capital of Lydia, the rendezvous of Cyrus's troops, formerly the capital of the kingdom of Κροίσος, *Croesus*. I. ii. 2, 3.

Σάτυρος -ου ὁ *a satyr*. In I. ii. 13 *Silēnos, Silēnus*, is meant, the fat, jolly attendant of Dionysos. Satyrs were woodland divinities that revelled in wine, music, and dancing. In art they are represented with thick lips, flat nose, pointed ears, long coarse hair, and a horse's tail.

Σίλᾶνος -ου *Silānos, Silānus*, a soothsayer.

Σκύρος -ου ἡ *Skyros, Seyros*, an island in the Aegēan.

Σόλοι -ων οἱ *Soloi, Soli*, a Greek city of Kilikia. It is said that from the corruption of the Attic dialect at Soloi arose the term σολοικισμός *solecism*. I. ii. 24.

Σοφαίνετος -ου *Sophainetos, Sophraenetus*, of Stymphālos in Arkadia. I. i. 11; ii. 3; σοφή, αἰνέω 446 a: *praised for his skill*.

Σπαρτιάτης -ου ὁ *a Spartan*; Σπάρτη *Sparta*, cp. 434 b.

Σπιθριδάτης -ου *Spithridātes*.

Στυμφάλιος -ου ο *a Stymphalian, of Stymphālos, Stymphālus* in Arkadia. I. i. 11; Στύμφαλος 424.

Συέννεσις -ιος ὁ, the hereditary title of the kings of Kilikia, used as a proper name, *Syennesis*. I. ii. 12, 21, 26.

Συράκόσιος -ου ὁ *a Syracusan, of Syracuse*, a Greek city on the

east coast of Sicily. I. ii. 9;

Συράκουσαι Syracuse 424.

Σωκράτης -ους *Sokrates, Socrates*, the great Athenian philosopher, by the oracle at Delphoi pronounced the wisest of men, condemned to death in 399 B. C. His teachings are known to us chiefly through the writings of Plato and Xenophon.

Sokrates, Socrates, an Achaian friend of Cyrus. I. i. 11; ii. 3;

σῶς, κράτος 446 b: of safe strength.

Σώσις -ιος *Sosis*, of Syracuse. I. ii. 9; *σφῶω 406: deliverer.*

T

Ταμός -ώ (91-94) *Tamos*, an Egyptian. I. ii. 21.

Τάοχοι -ων οἱ *Taochoi, Taochi, Taochians*, a tribe of Pontos.

Ταρσοί -ῶν οἱ for **Ταρσός -οῦ ὁ** *Tarsos, Tarsus*, chief city of Kilikia, birthplace of St. Paul. Xenophon alone uses the plural *Tarsoi, Tarsi*. I. ii. 23, 25, 26.

Τηλεβόας -ου or **-ᾶ ὁ** *the Teleboas*, a river of Armenia; *τῆλε afar, βοᾶω shout, roar 446 b: roaring afar.*

Τίγρης -ητος ὁ *Tigres, Tigris*, a large river flowing from Armenia into the Euphrātes in Babylonia.

Τιμᾶσιων -ωνος *Timasion*; *τιμῆ: bestowing honor.*

Τιρίβαζος -ου *Tiribazos, Tiribazos.*

Τισσαφέρνης -ους *Tissaphernes*, a Persian noble, satrap of Karia and Ionia, and of Lydia till 407 B. C., when it became a part of Cyrus's satrapy. After his Ionian cities had revolted to Cy-

rus, he watched Cyrus's movements and reported to the king. I. i. 2, 3, 6, 7; ii. 4. He was well known in Greece for the double part he played in the Peloponnesian war. He was put to death through the influence of Parysatis.

Τολμίδης -ου *Tolmides*, an Elēan, herald in the Greek army.

Τροῖα -ᾶς ἡ *Troy*, the Trojan city *Ilios.*

Τυριάειον -ου τό *Tyriāeion, Tyriāeum*, a city of southern Phrygia. I. ii. 14.

Φ

Φαλίνος -ου *Phalinos, Phalīnus*, a Greek serving with Tissaphernes, sent as an envoy by the king to demand the surrender of the Greeks under Klearchos.

Φᾶσις -ιος or **ἰδος ὁ** *the Phasis*, a river of Kolchis, home of *ὄρνις φᾶσιανός the pheasant.*

Φιλήσιος -ου *Philesios, Philesius*; *φιλέω, φίλησις 406, 424: affectionate.*

Φίλιππος -ου *Philippos, Philip*; *φίλος, ἵππος: fond of horses.*

Φοῖβος -ου *Phoibos, Phoebus*, epithet of Apollo; perhaps *shining.*

Φρυγῖα -ᾶς ἡ *Phrygia*, a province in central Asia, *Phrygia Major*. I. ii. 6, 7; *φρύξ 424.*

Φρύξ *Phrygós ὁ a Phrygian.* I. ii. 13.

Χ

Χάλυβες -ων οἱ *the Chalybes, Chalybians*, a warlike tribe of Pontos. *Chalybeate.*

Χειρίσοφος -ου *Cheirisophos*, *Chirisophus*; χείρ, σοφός 446 a: *skilful with the hand*.

Χερρόνησος -ου ἡ *the Chersonēsos*, *Chersonese*, the Thracian penin-

sular north of the Hellespont. I. i. 9; iii. 4; χέρρος, older χέρσος *land*, νῆσος *island*.

Χρομῖος -ου *Chromios*, *Chromius*.



The "Theseium" from the northwest.

GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THIS vocabulary is intended to include all words contained in the exercises except the proper names. Much attention is paid to word-derivation by means of references to the Grammar. It can readily be seen how much can be made of this point if one will start, for example, with **στρατείᾱ** and notice the different words, simple and compound, that are connected with **στρατός**.

A = used with the accusative. D = used with the dative. G = used with the genitive. V = for the principal parts consult the Verb-list in the *Grammar*, page 299.

A

ἀ-, ἀν- inseparable, called **α-** *negative*, prefix to a word gives a negative force as *in-* in Latin and *un-* in English; see 436, 441, 444, 447 a, 75, 12.

ἀ- or **ἀν-**, a prefix called **α-** *copulative*, denoting union, is related to **ἅμα** *together*; cp. **ἅπας**, **ἅθρός** or **ἁθρός**; see 444 a.

ἀγαγεῖν, **ἀγάγη**, **ἀγαγών**, aor. of **ἄγω** 350, 10.

ἀγαθός -ή -όν *good, brave, upright*; **τὰ ἀγαθὰ** *blessings*; **καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός** *noble and good, an honorable man*; compared 182.

ἄγαμαι *admire*. V.

ἀγγέλλω, pred. ptc., *bring news, announce, report*; **ἄγγελος** 422. V.

ἄγγελος -ου ὁ *messenger, envoy*. angelus, angel, εν-angel εὔ.

ἀγορά -ᾱς ἡ *gathering, assembly; market place, market*; **ἀγοράν**

παρέχειν *furnish a market*; **ἀγείρω** *gather* 404.

ἀγοράζω *buy in the market, purchase*; **ἀγορά** 419.

ἄγριος -ᾱ -ον *in the fields, wild*; **ἄγρός** *field* 424. Latin *ager*.

ἄγω *drive, lead* A; *bring, carry*; *march*. Latin *agō, āgmen*. V.

ἄγών -ῶνος ὁ *gathering; contest, struggle, games*; **ἄγωνα ποιεῖν** or **τιθέναι** *hold games*; **ἔγω**. *agony, ant-agonist*.

ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ *brother*. Adelphi, Philadelphia φίλος.

ἀδιάβατος -ον *not fordable*; α- neg. **διαβαίνω** 441.

ἀδικέω *am wrong; do wrong*; A of person, A of thing, *harm, injure*; **ἄδικος** *unjust* 416 c.

ἀδύνατος -ον *unable, impossible*; α- neg. **δύναμαι** 441.

ἀεί adv. *always, constantly, repeatedly*. Latin *aeuum*; AYE.

ἄθλον -ου τό *prize*; **ὁ ἄθλος** *contest*. athlete ἄθλητής.

ἀθροίζω also **ἀθροίζω** *collect*; mid. *assemble, muster*; **ἀθρόος** *in a crowd* 418, *a-cop.* **θρόος** *noise of a crowd* 444 a.

αἰρετός -ή -όν *chosen*; **οἱ αἰρετοί** *the delegates*; **αἶρεω** 353.

αἰρέω *take, capture*; mid. *choose*. di-aeresis **διά** 178, *heretic*. V.

αἰσθάνομαι, ptc. or **ᾔτι** clause 588 a, b; *perceive, learn*. *an-aesthetic*, *a-neg.* V.

αἰσχύνω *shame*; mid. as pass. dep. *am ashamed*; **αἰσχος** *shame* 421. V.

αἰτέω, *A of person, A of thing, ask for, demand*; mid. sometimes *obtain by entreaty*.

αἰτιάομαι *blame*; inf. clause, *accuse of, charge with*; **αἰτιά** *blame* 416 b.

αἴτιος -ᾱ -ον *G causing, cause of, to blame, responsible*; **αἰτιά** *blame* 424, **αἰτέω** 406.

ἀκινάκης -ου ὁ *short, straight sword, dagger*; a Persian weapon worn at the right side attached to the belt.

ἀκούω, *G of person*; *G or A of thing*; ptc., **ᾔτι**, or inf. clause 588 a, b; *hear, learn, listen to, obey*. *acoustic*. V.

ἄκρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *summit*; *citadel*; **ἄκρος**. **ἄκρος -ᾱ -ον** *pointed*; *highest, topmost*; **τὰ ἄκρα** *the heights*. Latin *acīēs, ūcer*; *acme* **ἀκμή**, *acro-bat* **βαίνω**.

ἀκρόπολις -εως ἡ *upper city, acropolis, citadel*; **ἄκρος, πόλις** 446 b.

ἄκων -ουσα -ον *unwilling, reluctant*; translate as adv. *unwillingly, accidentally, unintentionally*; *without permission or consent*; *a-neg.* **ἐκῶν** 589 a.

ἀλέξω *ward off*; usually mid. *repulse*; *requite*. V.

ἄλiscoμαι *am captured, taken*; used as pass. of **αἶρέω**. V.

ἀλλά conj. *otherwise*; *but, yet, still*; *well, however*; **ἀλλὰ γάρ** *but then, but really*; **ἄλλος**.

ἀλλάττω *make other, change, exchange*; **ἄλλος**. V.

ἄλλη adv. *in another way*; *elsewhere*; **ἄλλος ἄλλη** *one in one way, another in another*; *in different directions*; **ἄλλος** 236 end; *cp.* 343 c.

ἀλλήλων *of one another, each other*; **ἄλλος** 202.

ἄλλοθεν adv. *from another place*; **ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν** *from different points*; **ἄλλος, -θεν** 228.

ἄλλος -ῃ -ον *other, another*; **ὁ ἄλλος** *the rest of*; **τὰ ἄλλα** *in other respects*; **οὐδὲν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ** *nothing else except*; **ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει** *one says one thing, another another*.

ἄλλως adv. *otherwise*; *in another way*; *vainly*; **ἄλλος** 229.

ἅμα adv. *at the same time, together*; *D together with*; **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ** *at daybreak*; **ἅμα ἡλίφ ἀνέχοντι** *at sunrise*; for **(σ)άμα**. Latin *semper, seme-l*; *SAME*.

ἅμαξα -ης ἡ *wagon*; **ἅμα, ἄγ-** *from ἄγω, ἄξων axle*; the wagon had two connected axles and so four wheels. *axis. AXLE*.

ἅμαξιτός -όν *traversed by wagons*; **ἅμαξα, ἱτός, ἰένα** *go* 353, 446 a.

ἄμαχεί adv. *without a fight or struggle*; *a-neg.* **μάχομαι**.

ἀμείνων -ον *better, braver*; comp. of **ἀγαθός** 182.

ἀμελέω G. *am* careless of, neglect; ἀμελής careless 416 c; cp. μέλλω, ἐπι-μέλομαι.

ἀμήχανος -ον *without means; impracticable; a-neg. μηχανή* 447 a.

ἀμπελος -ου ἡ *vine*.

ἀμφί prep. *on both sides, about, amphi-theater; amphi-bious βίος*.

G *about, concerning; rare in prose*.

A *round, about; οἱ ἀμφὶ Σωκράτην Sokrates and his friends; ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι to be busied about the provisions; ἀμφὶ δροπῆστών about supper-time*.

ἀμφότερος -ᾱ -ον pl. *both; both parties*.

***ἄν**, a particle used

I In simple sentences and principal clauses, and in subordinate clauses of the same type.

a With past tenses of the indicative 461, 467.

b With the optative 479.

II In subordinate clauses, with relative words and εἰ (εἰ + ἄν = ἐάν) introducing the subjunctive 616 a, 650.

ἄν conj. for εἰ + ἄν, ἐάν w. subjv. *if*.

ἀνά prep. A *up, up along, along, indefinite; ἀνά χρόνον in course of time; ἀνά κράτος at full speed, a dash without reserve of power*.

ἀναβαίνω *go up, ascend; march inland; ἐπὶ ἵππον mount; ἀνά 178. βαίνω. V.*

ἀνάβασις -ews ἡ *going up, march up; especially the Anabasis, Xenophon's account of the expedition of Cyrus against Artaxerxes, the march from the coast to Babylon; ἀναβαίνω* 406.

ἀναγιγνώσκω *perceive again; read; ἀνά 178, γιγνώσκω. V.*

ἀναγκάζω *force, oblige; ἀνάγκη* 419.

ἀνάγκη -ης ἡ *force, necessity; ἀνάγκη ἐστίν D or A, and inf. clause, I must*.

ἀναιρέω *take up; of an oracle answer, direct; ἀνά 178, αἰρέω. V.*

ἀνακοινός D *consult; mid. consult, confer with; ἀνά 178, κοινός* 416 a.

ἀναμιμνήσκω, A of person and A of thing, *remind; pass. remember; ἀνά 178, μιμνήσκω* 185; cp. μανθάνω. Latin *re-mīnīscor*. V.

ἀναρπάζω *snatch up, carry off as plunder; ἀνά 178, ἀρπάζω. V.*

ἀναστάς, ἀναστήναι, root-aor. pte. and inf. of *ἀν-ίστημι*.

ἀναστήσαι, ἀναστήσας, σα-aor. inf. and pte. of *ἀν-ίστημι*.

ἀνδράποδον -ου τό *enslaved captive, slave*.

ἀνέστην, root-aor. of *ἀν-ίστημι*.

ἄνευ adv. G *without* 518 c.

ἀνέχω *hold up; mid. control myself, endure* 268 d; ἀνά 178, ἔχω. V.

ἀνὴρ ἀνδρός ὁ *man, equivalent to Latin vir; soldier; person; ἄνδρες φίλοι my friends; ἄνδρες στρατιῶται fellow soldiers. android, Andrew. Phil-ander φίλος*.

ἄνθρωπος -ου ὁ *man, equivalent to Latin homō; soldier; fellow; οἱ ἄνθρωποι mankind. anthro-pology λόγος, phil anthropic φίλος*.

ἀντιάω *grieve, trouble; ἀντιά grief* 416 b.

ἀνίστημι *make stand up, arouse; intr. forms and mid. stand up, arise; ἀνά 178, ἵστημι* 363. *anastatic*. V.

- ἀντί** prep. G *over against*; *instead of*; πόλεμος ἀντὶ εἰρήνης *war instead of peace*; ἀνθ' ὧν ἔλαβον *in return for what I received*. Latin *ante*; anti-dote δίδωμι, ant-agonist ἀγών.
- ἀντιλέγω**, ὅτι οὐ or inf. w. μή 572, *speak against, say in opposition, oppose*; ἀντί /78, λέγω. V.
- ἀντιπαρασκευάζομαι** *prepare myself in turn or in opposition*; ἀντί /78, παρα-σκευάζομαι.
- ἀντιπέρās** adv. G. *over against, on the opposite side of*; κατ' ἀντι-πέρās *opposite*; ἀντί, πέρās; cp. πέρα *beyond*.
- ἀντιποιέω** *do in return*; mid. G of thing, D. of person, *dispute with for, lay rival claim to*; ἀντί /78, ποιέω.
- ἀντιστασιώτης -ου ὁ** *one of the rival party, opponent*; ἀντί, ἵστημι, στάσις 430 b, 440 a.
- ἀντιτάττω** *array against*; mid. *oppose myself in battle against*; ἀντί /78, τάττω. V.
- ἀντρον -ου ὁ** *cave*. Latin *antrum*.
- ἀνω** adv. *above, up, upwards*; ἀνά.
- ἄξιος -ᾱ -ον** G *worthy, deserving, worth*; πολλοῦ ἄξιος *worth much, valuable* 348 a; ἄξιᾱ *worth* 424, from ἄγω with the meaning *weigh* 406.
- ἄξιόω** *deem worthy, proper*; G *deem worthy of*; w. inf. clause, *claim, demand*; ἄξιος 416 a. axiom.
- ἀπαγγέλλω**, ὅτι clause, *bring or take back word*; *report, announce*; ἀπό /78, ἀγγέλλω. V.
- ἀπάγω** *lead off or back, march back*; *carry away*; ἀπό /78, ἄγω. V.
- ἀπαιτέω**, A of person and A of thing, *ask back, demand what is due*; ἀπό /78, αἰτέω.
- ἀπαράσκευος -ον** *unprepared*; a-neg. παρα-σκευή 441.
- ἅπᾱς ἅπᾱσα ἅπαν** *all together, all*; a- cop. πᾶς 444 a.
- ἀπέθανον**, aor. of ἀπο-θνήσκω.
- ἀπεῖχον**, impf. of ἀπ-έχω.
- ἀπελαύνω** *drive away; ride away, march*; ἀπό /78, ἐλαύνω. V.
- ἀπελθεῖν**, aor. inf. of ἀπ-έρχομαι.
- ἀπέρχομαι** *come or go away; retreat, return*; ἀπό /78, ἔρχομαι. V.
- ἀπέχω** G *am away from, am distant*; mid. *abstain from*. V.
- ἀπιέναι** *go off or away, depart, retreat, return*; ἀπό /78, ιέναι.
- ἀπιστιᾶ -ᾱς ἡ** *distrust; treachery*; ἄπιστος 429 b.
- ἄπιστος -ον** *not to be trusted, untrustworthy, faithless*; a- neg. πιστός 441.
- ἀπιτέον** *must depart*; verbal of ἀπιέναι 354.
- ἀπό** prep. G *off, away from, from*. Latin *ab*; apo-στέλλω.
- ἀποδείκνυμι** *point out*; two A *ap-point*; ἀπό /78, δείκνυμι. apo-deictio. V.
- ἀποδιδράσκω** *run away, desert*; ἀπό /78, διδράσκω; cp. ἔ-δραμον, δρόμος. V.
- ἀποδίδωμι** *give back, restore*; *return what is due, pay*; mid. *sell*; ἀπό /78, δίδωμι. V.
- ἀποδώσω**, fut. of ἀπο-δίδωμι.
- ἀποθνήσκω** *die off, die; am killed*, used as pass. of ἀπο-κτείνω; ἀπό /78, θνήσκω. V.
- ἀποθύω** *pay a vow by sacrifice, sacrifice*; ἀπό /78, θύω. V.

ἀποκρίνομαι, ὅτι clause, *give a decision*; *answer, reply*; ἀπό 178, κρίνω. V.

ἀποκτείνω *kill off, put to death*, used as act. of ἀπο-θνήσκω; ἀπό 178, κτείνω. V.

ἀπολαμβάνω *take from, take back; regain*; pass. *am cut off from*; ἀπό 178, λαμβάνω. V.

ἀπολείπω *leave by going away, leave behind, abandon*; ἀπό 178, λείπω. V.

ἀπόλλυμι *destroy utterly, lose*; mid. *perish, am lost*; ἀπό 178, ὑλλύμι. Latin *ab-oleō*. V.

ἀποπέμπω *send off or back; send what is due, remit*; mid. *dismiss*; ἀπό 178, πέμπω. V.

ἀποπλέω *sail away or back*; ἀπό 178, πλέω. V.

ἀπορέω *am without means; am in doubt, perplexed*; mid. G *am in want of*; ἄπορος 416 c.

ἀπορίᾱ -ās ἡ *want; difficulty, perplexity*; ἄπορος 429 b.

ἄπορος -ον *without means or resources, impassable*; α- neg. πόρος 447 a.

ἀποστέλλω *send back*; ἀπό 178, στέλλω. V.

ἀποστήναι *to revolt, root-aor. inf. of ἀφ-ίστημι*.

ἀποσφύζω *lead or get back in safety*; ἀπό 178, σφύζω. V.

ἀποφεύγω *flee by going away or too far to be caught, escape*; ἀπό 178, φεύγω. V.

ἀποχωρέω *withdraw, retreat*; ἀπό 178, χωρέω, χώρος. χώρα 416 c.

ἀπραῦκτος -ον *doing nothing, unprofitable, unsuccessful*; α- neg. πρᾶγ-, πρᾶττω 353 b, 411.

* **ἄρα**, inferential particle, *therefore, accordingly* 673 a.

ἄρα, interrog. particle, 668, 488 a, c. **ἀργύριον -ου τό** *silver; money*; ἄργυρος *white metal* 431 a, ἀργός *shining*. Latin *argentum*.

ἀρετή -ῆς ἡ *fitness; bravery, valor*; ἀρ- *fit*; cp. ἄριστος.

ἀριθμός -οῦ ὁ *number, enumeration; extent*; ἀρ- *fit* 406, 400 b; cp. ἀρετή. arithmetic, log-arithm λόγος.

ἀριστερός -ᾱ -όν *left*.

ἄριστον -ου τό *breakfast*.

ἄριστος -ῆ -ον *fittest, best*, as sup. of ἀγαθός 182; cp. ἀρ- in ἀρετή. aristo-crazy κρατεῖω.

ἄρμα -ατος τό *chariot*; ἀρ- *fit* 407.

ἀρμάμαξα -ῆς ἡ *closed carriage*; ἄρμα, ἔμαξα 443 a.

ἄρμοστής -οῦ ὁ *organizer; har-most, a Spartan governor of a province*; ἀρμόττω *fit*; cp. ἀρ- in ἄριστος, ἄρμα, ἀριθμός, ἀρετή. Latin *ars, artus, arma; harmony*.

ἀρπάζω *seize, capture, plunder; carry off*; ἀρπ- *seize* 419. Latin *rapiō, rapidus*; ἄρπυ. V.

ἀρχαῖος -ᾱ -ον *old, ancient*; τὸ ἀρχαῖον adv. *formerly*; ἀρχή 424. archaio. archaio-logy λόγος, archives.

ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ *beginning; command; rule, government, province*; ἀρχω 404.

ἀρχω G or inf. clause, *begin, am first; command, lead*; ὁ ἀρχων *leader, commander*. arch-angel. mon-arch μόνος, an-archy α- neg. V.

ἀσθενέω *am weak, am ill*; ἀσθενής *without strength* 416 c, α- neg. σθένος *strength* 447 a; cp. -es in verbals 413 b.

ἄσμενος -η -ον *with pleasure, gladly*; ἄδ- cp. ἡδέως.

ἀσπίς -ίδος ἡ *shield oval or round, large enough to cover the greater part of the body, carried on the left arm.*

ἀσφαλής -ές *not to be tript, sure, safe, secure*; α- neg. σφάλω *trip* 413 b, 441. Latin *fallō, falsus*.

ἀσφαλῶς *adv. safely, without danger*; ἀ-σφαλής 229.

ἀτιμάζω *dishonor, disgrace*; ἀ-τίμος *without honor, in disgrace* 419, α- neg. τιμή 447 a.

* αὖ *adv. again, in turn, more-over.*

αὖθις *adv. again, once more*; αὖ.

αὔριον *adv. tomorrow.*

αὐτίκα *adv. immediately.*

αὐτόματος -η -ον *of my own accord, spontaneously*; ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου *suā sponte, of their own accord, without orders*; cp. μα- in *μανθάνω, μέμνημαι*; αὐτός, μα- 446 a. *automatic.*

αὐτός -ή -ό(ν) *self, very*; outside the nom. *him, her, it, them*; ὁ αὐτός *the same*; αὐτός may sometimes be translated *of my own accord, by myself*. Consult 101 a, b, c.

αὐτοῦ *adv. right here, there.*

αὐτοῦ, αὐτῶν *for ἐαυτοῦ, ἐαυτῶν.*

ἀφ' *for ἀπ' from ἀπό.*

ἀφαιρέω *take away*; mid. A of thing, A or G of person, *deprive, rob*; mid. *rescue*; ἀπό 178, αἰρέω. V.

ἀφανίζω *make invisible, hide, destroy*; ἀ-φανής 418; α- neg. φαν-, φαίνω 413 b, cp. φανερός.

ἀφελον, aor. of ἀφ-αἰρέω.

ἀφειστήκεσαν *had revolted, were engaged in revolt*; pluperf. of ἀφ-ίστημι.

ἀφίημι *send away, let go, let escape*; ἀπό 178, ἔημι. V.

ἀφικνέομαι *arrive*; A and prep. *come to, arrive at, reach*; ἀπό 178, ἰκνέομαι, cp. ἱκανός. V.

ἀφίστημι, G of person, *set off from, cause to revolt*; intr. forms and mid. *revolt, withdraw from*; ἀπό 178, ἴστημι 363 and a. *apo-stasy*. V.

ἄχθομαι *am troubled, am displeased*. V.

ἄχρι, conj. *adv. until* 631; see ἔστε and μέχρι.

B

βάθος -ους τό *depth, height*; cp. βαθύς *deep, high*. bathos.

βαίνω *go, walk*; βα- cp. βάσις *going*. Latin *vadum, veniō*; basis, base. V.

βάλλω *throw*; A of person, D of missile, *throw at, hit, pelt*; λίθοις ἔβαλον αὐτόν *they threw stones at him*. em-blem, pro-blem, para-ble. V.

βαρβαρικός -ή -όν *not Greek, foreign, barbarian*; βάρβαρος 425.

βάρβαρος -ον *not Greek, foreign*; as subst. *foreigner, barbarian, barbarous*.

βαρέως *adv. heavily*; βαρέως φέρειν *graviter ferre, take it hard, am troubled*; βαρύς *heavy*. Latin *gravis*. bary-tone.

βασιλειᾶ -ās ἡ *kingdom*; κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλειᾶν *ascended the throne*; βασιλεὺς 429 b.

βασιλείος -ον *the king's, royal*; τὰ βασίλεια *palace, castle*; βασιλεύς 424.

βασιλεύς -ews ὁ *king*; παρὰ βασιλεῖ *at court*. Basil, basilisk.

βασιλεύω *am king*; βασιλεύς 417 a.

βασιλικός -ή -όν *kingly, royal*; βασιλεύς 425. basilica.

βέλτιστος -η -ον *best, bravest*; sup. of ἀγαθός 182.

βελτίων -ον *better, braver*; comp. of ἀγαθός 182.

βίᾱ -ās ἡ *force, violence*; βίᾱ adv. *by force, by storm*.

βιάζομαι *force, compel*; βίᾱ 419.

βίος -ου ὁ *life*. Latin *vīvus*; QUICK, bio-graphy γράφω.

βλᾶσκεύω *am idle, shirk*.

βοηθέω *run to a cry*; D *help, assist*; βοηθός 416 c, βοή *cry*, θέω.

βουλεύω *plan*; mid. *plan, deliberate*; βουλή *will, plan* 417 a.

βούλομαι pass. dep. *will, wish*, generally a desire of the heart; cp. ἐθέλω; *prefer*, οὐ βούλομαι *I prefer not to*. Latin *vōlō*.

βραχύς -εῖα -ύ *short*. Latin *brevis*.

βροντή -ης ἡ *thunder*.

Γ

* γάρ adv. *why! indeed*; conj. *for*; καὶ γάρ *for also, and in fact*; ἀλλὰ γάρ *but then, but really*. Consult 672 a, b, c, d.

* γε, intensive particle, 671 b.

γέλως -ωτος ὁ *laughter*.

γένος -ους τό *family, race*; γίγνομαι, γεν- 407. Latin *genus*; genesis, hetero-geneous ἑτερος, genea-logy γενεά, λόγος.

γέφυρα -ās ἡ *bridge*.

γῆ γῆς ἡ *earth; land*. geo-graphy γράφω, geo-metry μέτρον, George ξε-γον.

γίγνομαι *become, am*; *am born*; *happen, occur*; γεν-. Latin *gignō*, *gēns*, (*gignāscor*); KIN, KIND, hydro-gen ὕδωρ; see γένος. V.

γινώσκω, ptc., inf., or ὅτι clause 588, *perceive* (with the mind), *recognize, know, feel*; w. simple inf. *know how*. Latin *nōscō*; dia-gnosis διά, *gnome*, a-gnostic a-neg. V.

γνώμη -ης ἡ *opinion, judgment, purpose*; ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης *without Cyrus's consent*; γιγνώσκω, γνω:ω- 406.

γόνυ γόνατος τό *knee*. Latin *genū*; KNEE.

γράφω *write*. Latin *scribō*; graphio, bio-graphy βίος, tele-gram τῆλε *afar*, grammar. V.

γυμνάζω *exercise*; γυμνός *naked* 419. gymnasium γυμνάσιον 432, gymnast.

γυμνής -ήτος ὁ *light-armed foot-soldier*; γυμνός.

γυνή γυναικός ἡ *woman, wife*. misogynist μῖσος *hate*.

γωνία -ās ἡ *corner, angle*.

Δ

δακρῶ *weep*; δάκρυ *tear* 417 b. Latin *lacrima*.

δαπανάω *spend money, incur expense*; δαπάνη *expense* 416 b.

δάρεικός -ου ὁ *daric*, a Persian gold coin worth about \$5.40, said to be derived from Δαρείος 425.

δασμός -ου ὁ *division*; *tax like φόρος* tribute; δα- 406, 400 b.

δασύς -εῖα -ύ *thick, dense*. Latin *dēnsus*.

- ***δέ** *but, and*; **μὲν . . . δέ** *but, and* marking a contrast 669 a, 102; **καὶ . . . δέ** *and also*.
- δεδιώς** -υῖα -ός perf. ptc. *fearing* 370 (5).
- δέδοικα**, perf. as pres., aor. *ἔδεισα, fear, dread*. V.
- δεῖ** impers. G, or A and inf. clause, *there is need; I must; μάχης δεῖ there is need of a fight, you must fight; ἡμᾶς δεῖ ταῦτα ποιῆσαι we must do this*.
- δείκνυμι** *point at, show*; **δικ-, δεικ-**. Latin *dīcō*; *deictic, para-digm παρά*. V.
- δελη** -ης ἡ *afternoon, evening*.
- δεινός** -ή -όν *frightful; skilful, clever*; **τὸ δεινόν** *danger*; cp. **δει-, δέδοικα** 412. Latin *dīrus*.
- δείπνον** -ου τό *dinner*.
- δέκα** *ten*. Latin *decem*; TEN, decade *δεκάς*.
- δεκαπέντε** *fifteen* 190. Latin *quīn-decim*.
- δέκατος** -η -ον *tenth* 188; **δέκα**. Latin *decimus*.
- δένδρον** -ου τό *tree*. *rhodo-dendron* **ρόδον** *rose*.
- δεξιός** -ά -όν *right, right-hand side*; by the omission of **χείρ** *hand*: **ἐν δεξιᾷ** *on the right*, **δεξιὰς δοῦναι** *give pledges*; cp. **δεκ-, δεξ-, δέχομαι**. Latin *dexter*.
- δέομαι** pass. dep. G, or A of thing and G of person, *want, desire*; w. inf. clause and G. of person, *request, beg*; **δέω**. V.
- δεόν** ptc. neut. of **δέω**, **δεῖ** impers.; **εἰς τὸ δεόν** *into what is required, that is in the right way*.
- δέρμα** -ατος τό *hide, skin*; **δέρω** 407. *epi-dermis ἐπί, taxi-dermy τάττω*.
- δέρω** *flay, skin*. V.
- δεσπότης** -ου ὁ *master, lord* 72 d. *despot*.
- δεῦρο** adv. *hither, here*.
- δέυτερος** -ᾱ -ον *second* 188; **δύο**.
- δέχομαι** *receive, accept*. V.
- δέω**, see **δεῖ, δέομαι**.
- ***δή**, intensive particle, 671 c (1) (2).
- δηλός** -η -ον *plain, evident*; **δηλός εἰμι** with ptc. *am plainly* 585 a; **δηλον ὅτι** *evidently*.
- δηλώω** *make plain, show*; **δηλός** 416 a.
- διά** prep. *through, dia-meter, μέτρον measure*.
- G *through, during*; **διὰ βίου** *through life*; equivalent to Latin *per*.
- A *through, on account of*; **διὰ πολλά** *for many reasons*; equivalent to Latin *propter*.
- διαβαίνω** *stride*; A *cross*; **διά 178, βαίνω**. V.
- διαβάλλω** *throw across; slander, falsely accuse*; **διά 178, βάλλω**. *dia-bolio, devil* **διάβολος**. V.
- διαβάς, διαβήναι**, root-aor. ptc. and inf. of **δια-βαίνω**.
- διαβατέος** -ᾱ -ον *must be crossed*; verbal of **δια-βαίνω** 354.
- διαβατός** -ή -όν *fordable, passable*; verbal of **δια-βαίνω** 353 b.
- διάγω** *carry across; put off*; with pred. ptc. *continue*; **ἐλπιδας λέγων δι-ἦγε** *he kept expressing hopes* 585 a, but cp. also 583, ex. 3; **διά 178, ἄγω**. V.
- διαδίδωμι** *give throughout, distribute*; **διά 178, δίδωμι**. V.
- διᾱκόσιοι** -αι -α *two hundred*; **δύο, ἑκατόν**. Latin *ducentī*.

διαλέγομαι pass. dep. D of person, A of thing, *talk with, converse*; **διά** 178, **λέγω**. **dia-logue, dia-lect**. V.

διαπέμπω *send in different directions*; **διά** 178, **πέμπω**. V.

διαπράττω *work out, accomplish*; mid. effect, *accomplish my object, secure, obtain my request*; *make an agreement*; **διά** 178, **πράττω**. V.

διαρπάζω *snatch apart*; *devastate, plunder, sack*; **διά** 178, **ἀρπάζω**. V.

διατίθημι *set in order, dispose, treat*; **διά** 178, **τίθημι**. V.

δίδωμι *give, allow, grant*; **δο**:ω-. Latin *dō, dare*; *dose, anti-dote* ἀντί, *an-ec-dote* α- neg. **ἐκ**. V.

διέρχομαι, A or **διά** G, *go through, pass through*; **διά** 178, **έρχομαι**. V.

δίκαιος -ᾱ -ον *right, lawful, just, proper*; **δίκη** 424.

δίκη -ης ἡ *custom, right, justice*; *τὴν δίκην ἔχει* *he has his deserts*; *δίκην ἐπι-τιθέναι* *inflict punishment*; *δίκην διδόναι* *pay the penalty*; **δελκῦμι** 404.

διό adv. for **δι** ὅ *therefore*.

διότι adv. for **δι** ὅ **τι** *because, since*.

δὶς adv. *twice*; **δύο** 232.

δισχίλιοι -αι -α *two thousand*; **δύο**, **χίλιοι**.

διωκτέον *must pursue*; verbal of **διώκω** 354.

διώκω *pursue, chase*; *εἰς τὸ διώκειν* *in pursuit*. V.

διώρυξ -υχος ἡ *ditch, canal*; **διά** 178, **ὀρύπτω** **dig** 401.

δοκέω *think*; intr. pers. w. inf. *seem, appear*; intr. impers. w.

inf. *seem best, is determined, is resolved*; **εὐμὴν δοκοῦμεν ἔχειν**; *do we seem to you to have?* *do you think we have?* **ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ** *he decided*; **ἔδοξε ταῦτα** *this was voted*; **τὰ δόξαντα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν** *the decision, opinion, of the Greeks*; cp. **δόξα**. Latin *decet* and also *doceō*; **dogma** **δόγμα** 407. V.

δόξα -ης ἡ *opinion*; *reputation*; *παρὰ τὴν δόξαν* *contrary to my expectation*; **δοκέω**. **doxo-logy** **λόγος**, **ορθο-dox** **ὀρθός** *straight*, **para-dox** **παρά** 178.

δορπηστός -οῦ ὁ *supper-time*.

δόρυ **δόρατος** **τό** *small tree trunk*; *spear shaft*; commonly *spear*, long with double-edged point **λόγχη** and butt spike **στύραξ**; cp. **δρῦς** *oak tree*.

δουλεύω *am a slave*; **δούλος** 417 a, 423.

δούλος -ου ὁ *slave*.

δουλόω *enslave*; **δούλος** 416 a, 423.

δοῦναι, root-aor. inf. of **δίδωμι**.

δρόμος -ου ὁ *running*; *running track, race-course*; cp. **ἔδραμον** aor. of **τρέχω** 403, **ἀπο-διδράσκω**. **drome-dary, hippo-drome** ἵππος.

δύναμαι *am able, can*. **dynamic, dynamite**. V.

δύναμις -ews ἡ *ability, power*; *force, troops*; **δύναμαι**.

δυναστός -ου ἡ *nobleman, ruler*; **δύναμαι** 400 b, 405.

δυνατός -ῆ -όν *able, powerful*; *possible*; **ἢ δυνατὸν μάλιστα** *as best I can*; verbal of **δύναμαι** 353.

δύο *two*; cp. **διά** in sense *between*, **δὶς** *twice*. Latin *duo, dubius, dis*; **two, di-aeresis** **αἰρέω**, **di-**

phthong *5*, dia-gonal γωνία *corner*, di-graph γράφω.

δῶ, root-aor. subjv. of δίδωμι.

δώδεκα *twelve*; δύο + δέκα. Latin *duodecim*.

δῶρον -ου τό *present, gift*; δίδωμι 412 a. Latin *dōnum*.

δώσω, fut. of δίδωμι.

Δ

ἐᾷ, pres. ind. of εἶω.

ἐάλω, aor. ind. of ἀλίσκομαι.

ἐάν, ἄν or ἤν, conj. w. subjv. *if*; εἰ + ἄν.

ἐαυτοῦ -ῆς -οῦ refl. pron. *of himself, herself, itself*; οἱ ἐαυτοῦ *his own men*; ἐ + αὐτός. 203.

εἰάω, A and inf. clause, *allow, permit*. V.

ἐγ- for ἐν-.

ἐγγύς adv. G *near*.

ἐγκέλευστος -ον *instigated*; ἐν, κελεύω 353 b.

ἐγώ pers. pron. I. Latin *ego*.

ἐγῶγε *I for my part*; ἐγώ + γε.

ἐδαισα, aor. of δέδοικα.

ἐδραμον, aor. of τρέχω.

ἐδωκα, aor. of δίδωμι.

ἐξῆ, ἐξων, imperf. of ζάω.

ἐθέλω *am willing*, in prose generally a decision of the mind; cp. βούλομαι: οὐκ ἐλθέλω *refuse*. V.

εἰ conj. *if; whether*; εἰ . . . ἤ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε *whether . . . or*; εἰ δὲ μή *otherwise*; εἰ μὴ *except*; εἰ γάρ in wishes 477; καὶ εἰ *even if*; οὐδὲ εἰ *not even if*.

εἰᾶ, εἰᾶσε, imperf. and aor. of εἶω.

εἰδέναι, εἰδήτε, inf. and subjv. of οἶδα.

εἶδον, aor. of δράω, w. ptc. clause, *see, observe, perceive*; *Fiδ-*, cp.

οἶδα. Latin *videō*, *vīsus*; *WISE*, *idea, idol, history, spher-oid σφαῖρα ball*. V.

εἶθε, in wishes, 477.

εἰκός -ότος ptc. neut. *natural, reasonable*; ὡς εἰκός *as is natural, naturally*; ἔοικα *am like* 370 (6).

εἴκοσι *twenty*; δύο, δέκα, cp. τριάκοντα *thirty*. Latin *vīgintī*; TWEN-TY.

εἶλον, aor. of αἰρέω.

εἶμι *am, exist*; ἔστι *it is possible*;

ἐσ- cp. εὖ *well*. Latin *es-se*. V.

εἶμι, *go, am going*; ἔ-, ἔ-εναί. Latin *ire*. V.

εἶναι, inf. of εἶμι.

εἴπατε, aor. impv. pl. from ind. εἶπα for εἶπον *tell*. εἴπατε is more common than εἴπετε.

εἶπον, aor. of φημι and λέγω, *δτι* clause, *say, speak, tell, relate*; *Ἔεπ-*. Latin *vocō*, *vōx*; *epic.* V.

εἶρηκα, perf. of φημι and λέγω, *have said, mentioned*; cp. ἐρῶ. V.

εἶρήνη -ης ἡ *agreement, peace*; cp. ἐρῶ.

εἰς prep. A *in, into; against*; w. numerals *to the number of, about*; εἰς τὴν τροφήν *for the support of*; εἰς τὴν στρατιάν *for the army*; cp. ἐν, ἐντός, ἐνθα, εἴσω. Latin *in, inde, intrā*; *IN, esoteric*.

εἰς μία ἔν *one*.

εἰσάγω *lead into*; εἰς 178, ἄγω. V.

εἰσβάλλω *throw into*; A w. εἰς *invade*; of a river *empty*; εἰς 178, βάλλω. V.

εἰσβολή *invasion; entrance, pass*; εἰσβάλλω 404, cp. 440 end.

εἰσελαύνω *drive into; march into*; εἰς 178, ἐλαύνω. V.

εἰσέρχομαι *come or go in, enter*; εἰς 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

εἴσεται, fut. of οἶδα.

εἰσι(ν), third pl. of εἰμι.

εἴσω adv. *inside*; G *inside of, within*; cp. ἐν, εἰς. Latin *intus*.

εἴτα adv. *then, thereupon, afterwards*; εἴτα πλανώμενους *they then wandered about and* . . . An. I. ii. 25.

εἴτε . . . εἴτε conj. *if . . . or; whether . . . or*.

εἶχε, imperf. of ἔχω.

εἶων, imperf. of ἔδω.

ἐκ, before a consonant for ἐξ.

ἐκαστος -η -ον *each, every*; pl. *the several*. 554.

ἐκάστοτε adv. *every time*; ἑκαστος, cp. the forms τό-τε *then*, ἄλλο-τε *at other times*.

ἐκατόν *one hundred*. Latin *centum*; HUNDRED, hecatom-b βοῦς ox.

ἐκβαίνω *step out; go forth*; ἐξ 178, βαίνω. V.

ἐκβάλλω *throw out; expel, banish*; ἐξ 178, βάλλω. V.

ἐκδέρω *flay*; ἐξ 178, δέρω. V.

ἐκεῖ adv. *there, in that place*.

ἐκείνος -η -ον dem. pron. *that, ille*; cp. ἐκεῖ. 553.

ἐκκαλύπτω *uncover*; ἐξ 178, καλύπτω *cover*. V.

ἐκκλησίᾳ -ās ἡ *assembly, meeting*; ἐξ 178, καλέω 406, cp. 440 end. ecclesiastic.

ἐκκόπτω *cut out of its place, of trees; cut down*; ἐξ 178, κόπτω. V.

ἐκλείπω *leave by going out, abandon*; ἐξ 178, λείπω. eo-lipse. V.

ἐκπίπτω *fall out; am driven out, am exiled, as a passive of ἐκ-*

βάλλω; οἱ ἐκπεπτωκότες *the exiles*; ἐξ 178, πίπτω, πετ-. V.

ἐκπλέω *sail out or away*; ἐξ 178, πλέω. V.

ἐκφεύγω *flee out of, escape*; ἐξ 178, φεύγω. V.

ἐκὼν -οὔσα -όν *willing*; translated as adv. *willingly, voluntarily*. 589 a.

ἐλαύνω *drive; ride, march*; ἐλα- elastio. V.

ἐλεῖν, ἐλέσθαι, aor. inf. of αἰρέω.

ἐλεύθερος -α -ον *free, independent*.

ἐλήφθην, aor. pass. of λαμβάνω.

ἐλθεῖν, inf. of ἦλθον aor. of ἔρχομαι.

ἐλπὶς -ιδος ἡ *hope*; Φελπ- wish. Latin *voluptās*.

ἐμ- for ἐν.

ἐμαυτοῦ -ῆς -οῦ refl. pron. *of myself*; με, ἐμέ + αὐτός. 203.

ἐμβαίνω *go into, embark*; ἐν 178, βαίνω. V.

ἐμβάλλω *throw in; of a river empty*; A w. εἰς *invade, attack*; ἐν 178, βάλλω. em-blem. V.

ἐμός -ῆ -όν poss. pron. *my, mine*; cp. με, ἐμέ. Latin *meus*.

ἐμπροσθεν adv. G *before, in front of*; οἱ ἐμπροσθεν *the van*; ἐν, πρόσθεν.

ἐν prep. D *in, on, at, by*; ἐν ὕπλοις *under arms*; ἐν τούτῳ *in this time, meanwhile*; ἐν ᾧ, ἐν αἷς *relative, in this time, while, meanwhile*; cp. εἰς and examples there, also ἐνθάδε, ἔνθεν, ἐνταῦθα, ἐντεῦθεν. Latin *in, intus, inter, interior, intrō*; IN, en-ergy ἔργον, en-cyclical κύκλος, em-phasis φαίνω, em-pirio πειράσμαι.

ἐναντιόσμαι pass. dep. 268 b end, D *oppose, withstand*; ἐναντίος *opposite, ἐν, ἀντί* 438 a, 416 a.

- ἐνατος -η -ον *ninth*; ἐννέα. Latin *novem, nōnus*; Nones.
- ἐνδηλος -ον *evident thereby or therein*; ἐν, δηλος.
- ἐνεῖναι *be in or on*; ἐν 178, εἶμι.
- ἐνεκα *adv., generally postpositive, G on account of; equivalent to Latin causā.*
- ἐνθα *adv. where; whither, whereupon*; cp. ἐν.
- ἐνθάδε *adv. here, hither*; cp. ἐν, ἐνθα + -δε; cp. ὅ-δε.
- ἐνθεν *adv. whence, from which*; cp. also 238; ἐν + -θεν; cp. ἐντεῦθεν.
- ἐνθένδε *adv. thence, from here*; ἐνθεν + -δε; cp. ὅ-δε.
- ἐνιαυτός -οῦ ὁ *any long period of time, year, any period of twelve months*; cp. ἔτος: ἔτος ἦλθε περιπλομένων ἐνιαυτῶν *as times rolled on the year came, volventibus annis.*
- ἐννέα *nine*. Latin *novem*.
- ἐνοικέω *live in*; οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες *the inhabitants*; ἐν 178, οἰκέω.
- ἐνοράω *see therein*; ἐν 178, ὁράω. V.
- ἐνταῦθα *adv. there; to that place; thereupon*; cp. ἐν.
- ἐντεῦθεν *adv. from there; thereafter*; cp. ἐν, ἐνθεν.
- ἐντός *adv. G within; ἐντὸς αὐτῶν within their ranks; ἐντὸς δέκα ἡμερῶν within ten days*; cp. ἐν.
- ἐντυγχάνω *D chance upon, meet, find*; ἐν 178, τυγχάνω. V.
- ἐξ, before a consonant ἐκ, prep. G. *out of, from*; the Greek regards the point of departure frequently where we say *in, on, at*; ἐκ τούτων *after this or in consequence of this*; cp. ἔξω. Latin *ex; ex-odus* δός.
- ἐξ *six*. Latin *sex*; hexa-gon γωνία, hexa-meter μέτρον.
- ἐξαγγέλλω, ὅτι *clause, bring word out, report, make known*; ἐξ 178, ἀγγέλλω. V.
- ἐξάγω *bring or lead out, march out*; ἐξ 178, ἄγω. V.
- ἐξαιρέω *take out, remove; mid. select, choose*; ἐξ 178, αἶρώ.
- ἐξαιτέω *demand; mid. A beg off, intercede for*; ἐξ 178, αἰτέω.
- ἐξακόσιοι -αι -α *six hundred*; ἑξ, ἑκατόν. Latin *sēscenti*.
- ἐξαπατάω *completely deceive, cheat*; ἐξ 178, ἀπατάω, ἀπάτη *deceit* 416 b.
- ἐξεῖναι *impers. ἔξεστι, ἐξῆν, inf. clause A or D, it is allowed, permitted, I may*; ἐξ 178, εἶμι.
- ἐξελαύνω *drive out, expel; march forth, proceed*; ἐξ 178, ἐλαύνω. V.
- ἐξέρχομαι *go or come out; march out*; ἐξ 178, ἔρχομαι. V.
- ἐξέτασις -ως ἡ *examination; review of an army*; ἐξ 178, ἐτάζω *examine* 406, 440 end.
- ἐξήκοντα *sixty*; ἑξ, εἰκοσι. Latin *sexāgintā*.
- ἐξιέναι *go out, march out*; ἐξ 178, εἶμι. V.
- ἐξομεν, fut. of ἔχω.
- ἐξευρίσκω *find out; seek out, discover*; ἐξ 178, εὐρίσκω. V.
- ἔξω *adv. outside; G outside of, without, beyond*; cp. ἐξ. *exotia, exoteric.*
- ἐπ' for ἐπί.
- ἐπαθον, aor. of πᾶσχω.
- ἐπαινέω *praise, approve, commend*; ἐπί 178, αἰνέω *praise*. V.
- ἐπάν, ἐπήν *conj. adv. w. subjv. when, whenever*; ἐπεὶ + ἄν. 629.

ἐπεὶ conj. adv. *when, after; since;*
ἐπεὶ τάχιστα *as soon as.* 629.

ἐπειδάν conj. adv. w. subjv. *when,*
after, as soon as, whenever;
ἐπειδὴ + ἄν. 629.

ἐπειδή conj. adv. *when, after;*
since; ἐπεὶ + δὴ. 629.

ἐπείναι be on or over; ἐπὶ 178, εἰμι.

ἐπειτα adv. *thereupon, then;*
further, besides; εἰς τὸν ἐπειτα
χρόνον in time to come; ἐπὶ + εἶτα.

ἐπέρχομαι A come upon; ἐπὶ 178,
ἔρχομαι. V.

ἐπερωτάω ask in addition; inquire,
demand; ἐπὶ 178, ἔρωτάω. V.

ἔπεσον, aor. of πίπτω.

ἐπήν, imperf. of ἐπείναι.

ἐπήν for ἐπάν.

ἐπηρόμην, aor. of ἐπερωτάω.

ἐπὶ prep. on. epi-thet τίθημι, epi-gram
γράφω, epi-stile στέλλω.

G on; ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου on the throne.

D on, at, near; ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ at
the river.

A to, on, against; ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθῆνας
to or against Athens.

ἐπιβουλεύω D plan, plot, or conspire
against; ἐπὶ 178, βουλεύω.

ἐπιβουλή -ης ἡ plot, scheme, design;
ἐπὶ, βουλή, plan 440 a and end;
cp. 404 ἐπιβουλεύω.

ἐπιδείκνυμι point to, show; D of
person show to, display; ἐπὶ 178,
δείκνυμι. V.

ἐπίνειαι come on; D advance, attack;
ἡ ἐπιούσα ἡμέρᾳ the next day; ἐπὶ
178, εἶμι. V.

ἐπιθυμέω G or inf. clause, set my
heart on, desire; ἐπὶ, θυμός heart.
438 a.

ἐπικίνδυνος -ον dangerous; ἐπὶ, κίν-
δυνος danger 436, 439, 448.

ἐπικρύπτω conceal well; mid. con-
ceal my plans, act secretly; ὡς
μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος as
secretly as possible; ἐπὶ 178,
κρύπτω. V.

ἐπιμαρτύρομαι appeal to the gods
to witness; ἐπὶ 178, μαρτύρομαι,
μάρτυς a witness 422. martyr. V.

ἐπιμέλομαι and ἐπιμελέομαι pass.
dep. G or ὅπως clause, take care
of, take care that; cp. μέλει it
is my care; ἐπιμελής careful
438 a. V.

ἐπιμελῶς adv. carefully; ἐπιμελής
careful.

ἐπινοέω set my mind on; have in
mind, purpose, intend; ἐπὶ 178,
νοέω observe, νοῦς mind; cp.
γνώμη, ὄνομα.

ἐπιπείθομαι pass. dep. D am per-
suaded thereto; comply with,
obey; ἐπὶ 178, πείθω. V.

ἐπιπίπτω D fall on, attack; ἐπὶ
178, πίπτω. V.

ἐπίπονος -ον laborious, hard; ἐπὶ,
πόνος labor 439, 448.

ἐπίρρυτος -ον flowed upon, well
watered; ἐπὶ, ῥέω 353 b.

ἐπίσταμαι pass. dep. w. inf. clause,
know how; w. ptc. clause or ὅτι
clause, understand, know; ἐπὶ,
στα-. V.

ἐπιστέλλω D send word to; direct,
command; ἐπὶ 178, στέλλω. V.

ἐπιστολή -ης ἡ letter; ἐπιστέλλω
404. Latin epistula. epistle.

ἐπιτάττω arrange in addition; D
give instructions to, direct; ἐπὶ
178, τάττω. V.

ἐπιτήδειος -ᾱ -ον suited to, fit,
proper, necessary; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
supplies, provisions; οἷτινες ἐπι-

τῆδαιοι *such as are friends*, like Latin *necessārii*; cp. adv. ἐπι-τῆδές *to serve the purpose, enough*.
ἐπιτίθημι *put on*; D δίκην ἐπιτιθέναι *inflict punishment on*; mid. D *fall upon, attack*; ἐπί 178, τίθημι. V.

ἐπιτρέπω D of person, *hand over to, entrust to*; *allow, permit*; mid. *give myself up*; ἐπί 178, τρέπω. V.

ἐπιχειρέω *put my hands to, attempt, try*; ἐπί, χεῖρ 438 a.

ἐπιχωρέω *advance*; ἐπί 178, χωρέω *give place*, χώρος *place* 416 c.

ἐπομαι D *follow, attend, accompany*; *pursue*; σεπ-, ἐπ-, cp. ὅπλον. Latin *sequor, secundus*. V.

ἐπριάμην, aor. of ὠνέομαι *buy*.

ἐπτὰ *seven*. Lat. *septem*; hepta-gon γωνία, hept-archy ἑβδομα, hebdomadal ἑβδομάς *week*.

ἔργον -ου τό *work, action, execution, result*. en-ergy ἐν, organ ὄργανον, Ge-orge γῆ, s-urgeon.

ἐρημος -η -ον, -ος -ον *lonely, deserted, empty*; σταθμοὶ ἐρημοὶ *marches through a desert country*; ὁμῶν ἐρημος *without you*. eremite, hermit.

ἐρίζω D *strive with, contend*; ἐρίς 418.

ἐρις -ιδος ἡ *strife, quarrel*.

ἐρμηνεύς -έως ὁ *interpreter*; Ἑρμῆς *Hermes, the messenger of Zeus* 430 a. hermeneutic.

ἐρυνμός -ῆ -όν *defended, fortified, strongly built*.

ἐρχομαι, used in ind. only, *come, go*; see ἦλθον. V.

ἐρῶ, fut. of φημι *say*; see εἶρηκα; *Fer-* as in εἰρήνην, ῥήτωρ. Latin

verbum; *verbōsus*; Irene, WORD, rhetoric ῥητορική. V.

ἐρωτάω, A of person and A of thing or a clause, *ask a question, inquire*. V.

ἐρωτώμενος, pres. pass. ptc. of ἐρωτάω, *being asked*.

ἔστε adv. *even to*, equivalent to Latin *usque*; conj. adv. *so long as, until*, equivalent to Latin *dum, quoad*. 631.

ἔστην, root-aor. of ἵστημι.

ἐστώς -ῶσα -ός 173, perf. ptc., *standing*; root-perf. of ἵστημι 370 (1).

ἐσχατος -η -ον *extreme*; πόλις ἐσχάτη πρὸς D *a frontier town on the border of*; ἐξ.

ἕτερος -ᾱ -ον *the other, one of two*. hetero-dox δόξα, hetero-geneous γένος.

ἔτι adv. *yet, still, longer*; οὐκέτι, *no longer*; πρὸς δ' ἔτι *and besides*.

ἔτοιμος -η -ον, -ος -ον *ready, prepared*; ἐσ- in ἐστι; cp. 413 f.

ἔτος -ους τό *year* chronologically; ἦν ἐτῶν τριάκοντα *he was thirty years old*. Latin *vetus*.

εὖ adv. *well*; εὖ πράττω *am successful*; εὖ ποιῶ *A treat well*; εὖ πάσχω *am treated well*; εὖ οἶδα *am fully assured*; ἐσ- in ἐστι.

εὐδαίμων -ον *happy, prosperous, flourishing*; εὖ, δαίμων *divinity* 447.

εὐελπίς -ι *of good hope, hopeful*; εὖ, ἐλπὶς 447.

εὐήθεια -ᾱς ἡ *simplicity, foolishness*; εὐήθης 429 b.

εὐήθης -ες *good hearted; silly, foolish*; εὖ, ἥθος *manners, disposition* 447.

εὐθύς adv. *immediately, at once.*

εὐνοϊκῶς adv. *with good will*; εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν D like εὐνους εἶναι *be well disposed*; εὖ, νοῦς *mind*, cp. γνώμη, ὄνομα.

εὐρεῖν, aor. inf. of εὐρίσκω.

εὐρίσκω *find, discover*; mid. *get, procure*. Eureka. V.

εὐρος -ους τό *breadth, width*; εὐρύς *wide*.

εὐχομαι *pray, wish for*; *offer vows*. V.

εὐώνυμος -ον of *good name or omen*; euphemistically for *left*, to avoid using ἀριστερός; as the Greek looked north when seeking omens, unlucky signs came from the left; τὸ εὐώνυμον *the left wing*; εὖ, ὄνομα.

ἐφ' for ἐπί.

ἔφασαν, ἔφη, imperf. of φημι; οὐκ ἔφη *he said that . . . not, denied, refused*, like Latin *negāvit*.

ἐφέπομαι *follow after, pursue*; ἐπί 178, ἔπομαι. V.

ἐφοράω *have eyes on, keep in sight*; ἐπί 178, ὁράω. V.

ἐφορος -ου ὁ *overseer*; a Spartan officer called *ephor*; ἐπί, ὁρ- as in ὁράω 446 b.

ἐφ' ᾧ w. inf. on *condition that* 567.

ἐφυγον, aor. of φεύγω.

ἐχθρός -ά -όν *hostile*; compared 181; as subst. *personal enemy*, equivalent to Latin *inimicus*; ἔχθω *hate* 412.

ἔχω *have, hold, keep*; *get, receive*; *carry, wear*; can; ἔχων *with*; οὕτως ἔχει *it is so*; ἄλλως ἔχει *it is otherwise*; καλῶς ἔχει *it is well*; χαλεπῶς ἔχω *am angry*; εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω *am friendly*; mid.

G *am next to*; σεχ- as in σχολή, ὑπ-ισχνέομαι. *hectic, hector*. V.

ἑώρα, ἑώρων, imperf. of ὁράω.

ἕως conj. adv. *as long as, while, until*; cp. Latin *dum, donec, quoad*. 631, 138.

Z

ζάω *live* 320; cp. ζωός *alive*. zodiao, zoö-logy λόγος.

ζεύγνυμι *yoke, join*; γέφυρα ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις *a bridge made by joining together boats, a pontoon bridge*; ζυγόν *yoke*, ζεύγος *team*; Latin *jugum, jungō*. V.

ζήν, inf. of ζάω.

ζητέω A *seek for, ask for a person*.

H

ἥ conj. *or*; ἥ . . . ἥ *either . . . or*; πότερον (πότερα) . . . ἥ *whether . . . or*; εἰ . . . ἥ *whether . . . or*. 668.

ἥ conj. *than*.

ἦ, intensive particle, *truly*; ἦ μήν *on word and honor*. 671 a.

ἦ, interrog. particle, 668; cp. Latin *-ne*.

ἧ conj. adv. *where*; *by the way in which*; *how, as*; ἧ ἐδύνάτο τάχιστα *as rapidly (or soon) as possible*; ἧ δυνατόν *αὐτῷ* *to the best of my ability*.

ἡγαγον, aor. of ἄγω 350, 10.

ἡγάσθη, aor. of ἄγαμαι.

ἡγγεῖλα, aor. of ἀγγέλλω.

ἡγεμῶν -όνος ὁ *leader, guide*; *commander*; ἡγέομαι 413 c end. *hegemony*.

ἡγέομαι D *guide, conduct*; G or D *lead, have command of*; two A

or A and inf. clause, *think, believe*.

ἦδει, ἦδεσαν, ἦσαν, imperf. of οἶδα.

ἡδέως adv. *gladly*; ἡδύς, ἄδ-, cp. ἄσμενος.

ἤδη adv. *already, at once*.

ἡδομαι *am glad, take pleasure in*; ἄδ-. V.

ἡδύς -εῖα -ύ *sweet, pleasant*; ἡδομαι 413 a, ἄδ-. Latin *suāvis, suādeō*.

ἦκα *am come, have come, am present*; *return*.

ἦλασε, aor. of ἐλαύνω.

ἦλθον, aor. of ἔρχομαι, *come, go*; ὁδὸν ἐλθεῖν *make a journey*; εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν *come into his power, come to close quarters with*; εἰς λόγους αὐτῷ ἐλθεῖν *have a conference with him*. V.

ἥλιος -ου ὁ *the sun*; ἅμα ἡλίφ ἀνέχοντι *at sunrise*. helio-trope τρέπω, helio-meter μέτρον *measure*, ap-hellion ἀπό, peri-hellion περί.

ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν, ἡμῖν, ἡμᾶς pers. pron. *we, us*, like Latin *nōs*.

ἡμέρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *day*; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ *at daybreak*. ep-hemeral ἐπί.

ἡμέτερος -ᾱ -ον *our*, like Latin *noster*; ἡμεῖς.

ἡμιδᾶρεικόν -οῦ τό *half a daric*; ἡμι-, δᾶρεικός.

ἡμιόλιος -ᾱ -ον *containing the whole and half, half as much more*; ἡμι-, ὅλος *whole*.

ἡμισυς -εῖα -υ *half*; as subst. (τὸ) ἡμισυ *the half*; ἡμι-. Latin *sēmi-*; hemi-sphere σφαῖρα *ball*.

ἦν for ἔάν *if*.

ἦν *was*, ἦσαν *were*, imperf. of εἶμι.

ὥνικα conj. adv. *when*.

ἦνπερ for ἔάνπερ (ἔάν + -περ) *if at least, if really*.

ἦξιν, fut. inf. of ἦκω.

ἦπερ adv. (ἦ + -περ) *in the very way in which*. 216, 343 c.

ἦρηντο, pluperf. of αἰρέω.

ἦρόμην, aor. of ἐρωτάω.

ἦσθη, aor. of ἡδομαι.

ἡττάομαι G 509 b, *am less or inferior*; *am defeated*; ἡττων, ἡττα *defeat* 416 b.

ἡττων -ον *inferior*; *worse*; ἡττον adv. *less*; compared 182, 2.

Θ

θάλαττα -ης ἡ *sea*; καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν *by land and by sea*.

θαρρέω *am keeping up my courage, am confident*; θαρσύς *bold*.

θᾶπτον adv. *more rapidly*, comp. of ταχέως; ὅσφ θᾶπτον see ὅσος.

θαυμάζω, εἰ clause or ὅτι clause, *wonder*; *am amazed*; θαῦμα *wonder* 419; θέα *sight*.

θεῖναι, θέσθαι, root-aor. inf. of τίθημι.

θέλω, another form for ἐθέλω.

-θεν *from*; cp. οἴκοθεν, ἐντεῦθεν. 228.

θεός -οῦ ὁ *god, divinity*; πρὸς θεῶν *before the gods*; σὺν θεοῖς *with the help of Heaven*. theo-logy λόγος, theism, a-theism α- neg., en-thusiasm ἐν, pan-theon πᾶς.

θεράπων -οντος ὁ *servant, attendant*. therapeutics θεραπεύω *serve*.

θέω *run, charge*. V.

θεωρῶ *view, look on*; θεωρός *spectator* 416 c, θέα *sight*, cp. θαυμάζω. theater θέατρον, theorem, theory.

θηρεύω *hunt, catch*; θήρᾱ *hunt, θήρ wild beast* 417 a. Latin *ferus*; DEER.

θηρίον -ου τό *animal*; pl. *game*; θήρ *wild beast* 431 a.

-θνήσκω, see ἀπο-θνήσκω. V.

θόρυβος -ου ὁ noise, confusion;
θρός noise of voices, θρε-; cp. also
ἀθροίζω. DRONE.

θρόνος -ου ὁ seat, chair, throne.
throne.

θυγάτηρ -τρός ἡ daughter.

θύρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ door; usually pl. αἱ θύραι;
ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις at the
gates of the king, also at court;
ἐπὶ ταῖς Κύρου θύραις at head-
quarters.

θύω sacrifice; mid. seek for omens
by the sacrifice of a victim, con-
sult the omens. Latin *fūmus*,
fūnus; *thyme*. V.

I

ιδεῖν, ιδών, inf. and ptc. of εἶδον.

ἱέναι, ἰών, inf. and ptc. of εἶμι.

ἱέναι, εἶς, aor. inf. and ptc. of ἵημι.

ἰδιος -ᾱ -ον own, personal, private;
εἰς τὸ ἴδιον for my own use. idiom.

ιδιώτης -ου ὁ private citizen, private
soldier, private; ἴδιος 430 b. idiot.

ἱδοι, opt. of εἶδον.

ἱέντο, imperf. mid. of ἵημι.

ἱερός -ᾱ -όν holy, sacred; τὰ ἱερά
sacrifice; the vitals of the vic-
tim, the omens from the vitals.
hier-archy ἄρχω, hiero-glyphic γλύφω
carve.

ἵημι send, throw; mid. rush, charge;
λίθοις ἱέναι αὐτοῦ throw stones at
him. V.

ἱκανός -ῆ -όν sufficient, enough;
able, competent; *Φικ* 412, cp.
ἀφικνέομαι, οἶκος.

ἵλη -ης ἡ crowd; troop, squadron,
of cavalry; κατὰ ἱλᾱς καὶ κατὰ
τάξεις by squadrons and battal-
ions.

ἵνα conj. adv. where; that, in order
that. 640, 642.

ἵππεύς -έως ὁ horseman; pl. cav-
alry; ἵππος 430 a.

ἵππεύω serve in the cavalry; ἵππεύς
417 a.

ἵππικός -ῆ -όν belonging to a horse
or cavalry; τὸ ἵππικόν the cav-
alry; ἵππος 425.

ἵππος -ου ὁ horse; ἐφ' ἵππων ἦσαν
they were mounted; ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ
ἵπου he would hunt on horse-
back; ἄκ- in ἄκρὸς, ὠκύς swift.
Latin *equus*; hippo-drome δρόμος,
hippo-potamus ποταμός, Phil-ip φίλος.

ἵστημι make stand, set, stop, sta-
tion; intr. forms stand; mid. set
myself, stand; set up for myself;
στα-, cp. στάσις, σταθμός. Latin
sistō, *status*, *stō*, *stāmen*; *statio*,
hydro-statics ὕδωρ. Note the dif-
ferent mid. forms in 363. V.

ἰσχυρός -ᾱ -όν strong, mighty; se-
vere, stubborn; ἰσχύω am strong
412.

ἰσχυρῶς adv. strongly, violently,
exceedingly, extremely; ἰσχυρός.

ἴσως adv. equally; perhaps; ἴσος
equal. iso-thermal θερμόν heat, iso-
sceles σκέλος leg, iso-chronous χρόνος.

ἵχνος -ους τό track, trace.

K

καθ' for κατά.

καθέζομαι sit down; halt, encamp;
κατά 178, ἐδ-, ἔζομαι sit. Latin
sedeō, *sēdēs*; cath-edral, deca-hedron
δέκα. V.

καθεύδω lie asleep, sleep; am idle;
κατά 178, εὔδω sleep. V.

καθηδυναθῶ waste in luxury; κατά
178, ἡδυναθῶ am in luxury; cp.

ἡδύς and πάσχω in ἡδυπαθής living in enjoyment. 416 c.

καθήκω come down, extend; κατά 178, ἥκω.

κάθημαι, καθήσθαι sit; am encamped; κατά 178, ἤμαι 389 and a.

καθίστημι set down, settle, station, establish, appoint; intr. forms am stationed, take my place, become established; mid. take my place, get myself into; establish for myself, appoint; κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν succeeded to the throne; κατά 178, ἵστημι. 363 and a. V.

καθοράω look down on, see clearly, observe; κατά 178, ὁράω.

καί conj. and; καὶ . . . καί, τε . . . καί both . . . and, not only . . . but also, see 187 note; καὶ γάρ and in fact.

καί adv. also, even; καὶ στρατηγὸς δέ and commander also; καὶ εἰ even if; εἰ καὶ if in fact.

καίπερ adv. although, only with participles; καί + περ.

καιρός -οῦ ὁ the right moment, opportunity; advantage, advantageous, proper; ἐν καιρῷ opportunely.

κακός -ή -όν bad; harmful; cowardly; κακόν, κακὰ ποιεῖν A harm, injure. caco-doxo δόξα, caco-graphy γράφω. Compared 182, 2.

κακῶς adv. badly; wrongly; κακῶς ποιεῖν A injure; κακῶς πάσχειν am injured; κακῶς πράττειν am unfortunate.

καλέω call, summon; two A call, name; κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη the so-called spring of Midas;

καλ-, cp. ἐκ-κλησίᾱ. Latin calō, Kalendae, con-cilium, clāmō; calendar, ecclesiastic ἐκ.

καλός -ή -όν beautiful, fair; good, noble; propitious. HALE, calligraphy καλλι + γράφω, cp. κάλλος beauty, calli-sthenics σθένος strength. Compared 181.

καλῶς adv. beautifully, fairly, nobly; καλῶς ποιεῖν A treat well, benefit; καλῶς ἔχει it is well; καλῶς πράττειν am successful; καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι present a fine appearance; καλός. 234, 181.

καῶν for καὶ ἑάν.

καπηλεῖον -ου τό tavern, restaurant; κάπηλος retail-dealer 432 c. Latin cauprō, cauprōna.

κατά prep. down.

Γ down, down from; κατὰ τῆς πέτρᾱς down the cliff.

Α down, along, according to, in the course of; κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν along the road; κατὰ τὸν νόμον according to custom; κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν σταθμόν in the course of this day's march; κατὰ κράτος at full speed, but keeping within one's powers so as to reach the point aimed at.

καταβαίνω step down, descend; go down to the coast; κατά 178, βαίνω. V.

καταβάλλω throw down, overthrow; let fall, drop down; κατά 178, βάλλω. V.

κατάβασις -εως ἡ descent; march to the sea; κατά, βάσις going, βα-, βαίνω 406, 440 end.

κατάγω lead down; bring to land; restore, take back home οἴκαδε; κατά 178, ἄγω. V.

καταδύω *make go down, sink*; mid. *sink*; **κατά** 178, **δύω** *make enter*. V.

κατακάω *burn down, burn up, destroy*; **κατά** 178, **κάω**. V.

κατακόπτω *cut down, cut to pieces, kill*; **κατά** 178, **κόπτω**. V.

καταλαμβάνω *capture, occupy; overtake; find, discover*; **κατά** 178, **λαμβάνω**. *cata-lepsy*. V.

καταλείπω *leave; leave behind, desert, abandon*; **κατά** 178, **λείπω**. V.

καταλλάττω *change*; mid. *become reconciled*; **κατά** 178, **ἀλλάττω**. *cat-allactics*. V.

καταλύω *unloose, end; make peace, end the war, πόλεμον* being understood; *unyoke, make a halt*; **κατά** 178, **λύω** *loose*. Latin *luō, solvō*; *cata-lysis, ana-lysis* ἀνά, *para-lysis* παρά, *electro-lysis* ἤλεκτρον *amber*. V.

κατανοέω *observe, perceive*; **κατά** 178, **νοέω** *observe, νοῦς mind*, cp. *γνώμη, ὄνομα*.

κατ' ἀντιπέρās, καταντιπέρās see *ἀντιπέρās*.

καταπέμπω *send down*; **κατά** 178, **πέμπω**. V.

καταπετρόω *stone to death*; **κατά** 178, **πετρόω** *stone*, **πέτρος** *stone* 416 a, *petral, petri-fy; petr-oleum* *ελαιον olive oil*, Latin *oleum oil*.

καταπίπτω *fall down, fall off*; **κατά** 178, **πίπτω**. V.

καταπλήττω *strike down, terrify*; **κατά** 178, **πλήττω** *strike*. Latin *plangō*; *apo-plexy* ἀπό. V.

καταπράττω *accomplish*; **κατά** 178, **πράττω**. V.

κατατίθημι *put down; mid. lay away, lay up, deposit*; **κατά** 178, **τίθημι**. V.

καταφεύγω *flee for refuge*; A with *εἰς, take refuge in or at*; **κατά** 178, **φεύγω**. V.

κατεθέμην, root-aor. of **κατατίθημι**.

κατείδον, aor. of **καθοράω**; **κατά** 178, **εἶδον**. V.

κατέστην, root-aor. of **καθίστημι**.

κατέχω *hold down, restrain, prevent; occupy*; **κατά** 178, **έχω**. V.

κάω, καίω *burn. caustic, cauterize, holo-caust* ὅλος *whole*. V.

κέγχρος -ου ὁ *millet, millet grass*; used for fodder; the seeds were ground into meal.

κείμει *am laid; lie*; used as pass. of **τίθημι**; *ἐπεὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο when they had been halted under arms or when arms had been grounded, used as pass of ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα. See under τίθημι. Cp. κόμη. Latin cūvis, quies; HOME, cemetery, oomio, coma. 387 and c.*

κελεύω, A of person and inf. clause, *urge, bid, direct, command, order*; *κελ- set going*. Latin *celer*. V.

κεράννυμι *mix, mingle*; *κερα-, κρᾶ-* 356 (1). *crasis, crater κρᾶτήρ mix-ing bowl, ceramic*. V.

κέρας κέρᾶτος or **κέρως τό** *horn; bugle horn; wing of an army. Latin cornū; rhino-ceros* ῥίς *ρίνος nose*.

κεφαλή -ης ἡ *head*. Latin *caput; a-cephalous, a- neg.*

κήρυξ -υκος ὁ *crier, herald*.

κινδυνεύω *encounter danger; run a risk; κίνδυνος danger* 417 a.

κνημῖς -ιδος ἡ *greave*, covering the leg from knee to instep, made of flexible metal lined with felt, and fastened behind with straps or buckles; κνήμη *leg*.

κοινός -ή -όν *common, public*. ἐπι-cene ἐπί.

κολάζω *check, punish*.

κόπτω *cut*; κοπ-. CHOP, syn-co-pate σύν, apo-cope ἀπό, comma.

κράνος -ους τό *helmet of metal or leather*.

κρατέω *am strong*; G or A *rule, conquer*; κράτος 416 c.

κράτιστος -η -ον *strongest*; sup. of ἀγαθός 182; κράτος.

κράτος -ους τό *strength*; κρα-. Latin *Cerēs, creō, crēscō, crēber*; aristocrat ἀριστος, auto-crat αὐτός, demo-crat δῆμος *people*.

κραυγή -ῆς ἡ *cry, shout*; κραγ- cry 404.

κρείττων -ον *stronger*; comp. of ἀγαθός 182; κράτος.

κρεμάννυμι *hang up*. V.

κρήνη -ης ἡ *spring, fountain*.

κριθή -ῆς ἡ in pl. *barley*.

κρίνω *separate, decide*. Latin *cernō, crimen*; crisis κρίσις 406, critio, hypo-crisy ὑπό. V.

κρηπίς -ιδος ἡ *foundation*.

κρύπτω *hide, conceal*. crypt, cryptogram γράφω, grotto. V.

-κτείνω *kill*; see ἀπο-κτείνω. V.

κύκλος -ου ὁ *circle*. Latin *circus*; cycle, bi-cycle bis δῖς, en-cyolo-pedia ἐν, παιδεία *education*, cp. παιδεύω.

κωλύω *hinder, oppose, prevent*.

κωμάρχης -ου ὁ *komarch, village chief*; κώμη, ἄρχω 446 a.

κώμη -ης ἡ *village*; κείμαι 406.

HOME.

Λ

λαβεῖν, aor. inf. of λαμβάνω.

λαθεῖν, aor. inf. of λανθάνω.

λάθρᾳ adv. *secretly*; G. *without the knowledge of*; λαθ-, λανθάνω.

λαμβάνω *take, receive, capture, get*; λαβών *with*. Latin *labor*; dilemma δῖς, ἐπι-lepsy ἐπί, pro-lepsis πρό. V.

λαμπρότης -ητος ἡ *brilliancy, splendor*; λαμπρός *bright* 429 a, λάμπω *shine* 412. Latin *lanterna, limpidus*; lamp, lantern.

λανθάνω *am concealed*; A *escape the notice of*; ἐλάνθανεν τρεφόμενον *was secretly maintained*; ἐλάθομεν αὐτοὺς ἀπελθόντες *we got away without their seeing us*. Latin *lateō*; leth-argy, Lethē.

λέγω, 8τι clause, *say, speak, tell*; w. inf. clause *bid, tell*; pass. w. inf. *is said, it is said*, the personal construction being more common in Greek, while the English prefers the impersonal; ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν *he told him to keep up his courage*; Ξέρξης λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι *the story is that Xerxes built (this palace)*; λεγ-. Latin *legō*; dialect διδά, lexicon. V.

-λέγω *gather, collect*; λεγ-. Latin *legō, legiō, lignum*; eo-logue ἐκ, eo-lectio ἐκ, cata-logue κατά, antho-logy ἄνθος *flower*. See συλ-λέγω. V.

λείπω *leave, abandon*. Latin *licet, linguō*; eo-lipse ἐκ, el-lipsis ἐν, el-lipse. V.

λίθινος -η -ον *of stone*; λίθος 426.

λίθος -ου ὁ *stone*. litho-graph, γράφω, mono-lith μόνος.

λιμήν -ένος ὁ *harbor*.

λόγος -ου ὁ *word, speech, story*; εἰς λόγους ἐλθεῖν αὐτῷ *have a conference with him*; λέγω **403**. eu-logy εὖ, apo-logy ἀπό, mono-logos μόνος, tauto-logy ταυτό, logic.

λόγχη -ης ἡ *spearhead, spear*.

λοιπός -ῆς -όν *remaining, the rest of*; τὸ λοιπόν *for the future*; λείπω **410**.

λόφος -ου ὁ *ridge, hill*.

λοχαγός -ου ὁ *company commander, captain*; λόχος, ἄγω **410, 443 a, 446 a, c**.

λόχος -ου ὁ *ambush; company, usually one hundred men*; λέγω *lay, lie* **403**; cp. λέχος *bed*.

λύμαινομαι *destroy, ruin*; λύμη *outrage, lūma filth* **420**, λυ-, λούω *wash*.

λύπew *grieve, annoy*; λύπη *grief* **416 c**.

M

μά, intensive particle, *μά Δία no, by Zeus*. **532**.

μάθε, aor. impv. of *μανθάνω*.

μακρός -ᾶ -όν *long*; μακρά πλοῖα *war ships*, Latin *nāvēs longae*; μακ-, cp. μήκος. macron, macro-meter μέτρον.

μάλα adv. *very, much*. Latin *melior*.

μάλιστα adv. *most*; ὡς μάλιστα (ἐδύνατο), ἢ δυνατόν *μάλιστα as much as possible*; μάλα.

μᾶλλον adv. *more*; μᾶλλον ἢ *rather than*; οὐδὲν μᾶλλον *not one whit the more*; μάλα.

μανθάνω, ptc. clause or ὅτι clause, *learn by inquiry*; aor. *have learnt, know*; μα-, cp. μάντις, μένω, μέμνημαι. Latin *maneō, mēns, memi-*

nī, moneō, mōnstrō; MAN, mania, necro-manoy νεκρός, mentor, mnemonics, mathematics. V.

μαντεῖον -ου τό *oracle*; μάντις **432**.

μάντις -ews ὁ *one inspired, seer, prophet, soothsayer*; cp. μα-, μανθάνω **406**.

μάχη -ης ἡ *battle, fight*; battle-field; μάχομαι **404**.

μάχομαι D *fight, give battle*. V.

με, μου, μοι pers. pron. *me*. Latin *mē*.

μέγα adv. *greatly*; neut. of μέγας.

μεγάλη *great*; see μέγας.

μέγας *μεγάλη μέγα great, large, tall*.

Latin *māgnus, magister*; o-mega, mega-phone φωνή. **182, 3**.

μέγιστος -η -ον *greatest, sup. of μέγας*; τὸ μέγιστον *chiefly*.

μεθ' for μετά.

μεῖζων -ον *greater, comp. of μέγας*.

μέλας *μέλαινα μέλαν black*. Latin *malus*; melan-choley χολή *gall*, calomel καλός.

μελίνη -ης ἡ *panic, a species of millet, used for food and fodder*; the seeds were used whole or ground. See *κέγχρον*. Latin *milium*.

μέλλω, w. inf. fut. or pres., *am about to, shall; intend, purpose; delay*; cp. μελ- in ἐπι-μέλομαι. V.

μémνημαι, perf. as pres., G *remember, call to mind*; see ἀνα-μνήσκω and /85 and note. Latin *meminī*; mnemonics. V.

* **μέν**, a particle used with δέ, sometimes with other words, to contrast the parts connected by δέ; δ μέν . . . δ δέ *the one . . . the other*. See **669 a** and /02.

* **μέντοι** conj. adv. *really; yet, still, however*; μέν + τοι. **669 b**.

μένω *wait, stay, remain*; **A wait for**; cp. **μα-, μανθάνω**. Latin *maneō*. **V.**

μέρος -ους τό *division, part, share*. Latin *mereō*.

μέσος -η -ον *middle, in the middle, midst of*; see **556**; **τὸ μέσον** *the center; the space between*; **διὰ μέσου τούτων** *between these*. Latin *medius*.

μεστός -ή -όν *G full, abounding in*. **μετά** *prep. among*. **meth-od** **μεθ', ὁδός**.

G with, in company with; **μετ' αὐτοῦ** *with him*.

A after, next to, place or time; **μετὰ δείπνον** *after dinner*.

μεταξύ *adv. in the midst*; **G between**; **μετά + ξύν** *for σύν*.

μεταπέμπομαι *A send after, summon*; **μετά 178, πέμπω**. **V.**

μέτρον -ου τό *measure*. Latin *mētor*; *metre, meter, dia-meter* **διά**, *thermo-meter* **θερμόν** *heat*, *cyclo-meter* **κύκλος**, *sym-metry* **σύν**.

μέχρι *adv. up to, as far as, even to*; equivalent to Latin *usque*; **G as far as, until**; **conj. adv. so long as, until**; equivalent to Latin *dum, quoad*. **631**.

μή *adv. not, negative willed or imagined* **486, 572**; **εἰ μή** *except*; **εἰ δὲ μή** *otherwise*. Compounds of **μή** have a like force.

μηδέ *conj. and not, nor*; *adv. not even*; **μή + δέ**.

μηδεὶς μηδεμία μηδέν *not one, no one* **189**; **μηδέ + εἰς**. **189 a.**

μηδέποτε, μηδεπώποτε *adv. See οὐδέποτε*.

μηκέτι *adv. not again, no longer*; **μή + ἔτι**.

μήκος -ους τό *length*; cp. **μακρός**.

***μήν**, intensive particle, *surely*; see **ᾗ** and **671 a.**

μήν μηνός ὁ *month*. Latin *mēnsis*; **MOON**.

μήποτε, μηπώποτε *adv. not ever, never*; **μή + ποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

μήτε *conj. adv. and not*; **μήτε . . . μήτε** *neither . . . nor*; **μή + τε**.

μήτηρ μητρός ἡ *mother*. Latin *māter*.

μηχανή -ῆς ἡ *machine, scheme, device*. **mechanic**.

μικρός -ά -όν *small*; **μικρόν** *adv. barely, hardly*. **micro-scope** **σκοπός**, **micro-meter** **μέτρον**.

μισθός -ου ὁ *wages, pay*. **MEED**.

μισθόομαι *pass. am hired, paid*; **μισθός** **416 a.**

μνησθήσομαι *will mention, fut. of μέμνημαι* **185**.

μόνος -η -ον *alone, only*. **monad**, **monastery**, **monk**, **mon-arch** **ἄρχω**, **mono-lith** **λίθος**, **mono-**.

μῦριοι -αι -α *ten thousand*; also **μῦριοι** *countless*. **myriad** **μυριάς**.

N

νάπη -ης ἡ *ravine, glen*.

ναύαρχος -ου ὁ *admiral*; **ναῦς** *ship*, **ἄρχος** *commander* **446 a, 403**. Latin *nāvis*; **naval**.

ναυτικός -ή -όν *belonging to ships*; **δύναμις** **ναυτική** *naval force*; **ναῦς** *ship* **425**. **nautical, nautilus, nausea**.

νεανίας -ου ὁ *young man*; **νεος**.

νεκρός -ου ὁ *dead body, corpse*; **οἱ νεκροί** *the dead*. Latin *nex, necō*; **necro-logy** **λόγος**, **necro-mancy** **μάντις**, **necro-polis** **πόλις**.

νέος -ᾱ -ον *young, fresh, new*. Latin *nōvus*; **neo-logy** **λόγος**, **neo-phyte** **φυτόν** *plant*, **neo-, Nea-polis** **πόλις**.

νεφέλη -ης ἡ *cloud*; νέφος *cloud*.

Latin *nūbēs, nebula*.

νῆ, intensive particle, νῆ Δία *yes, by Zeus*. 532.

νικάω *A conquer; am victorious; νίκη 416 b*.

νίκη -ης ἡ *victory*.

νοέω *observe, plan; νοῦς mind 416 c*; cp. γνώμη, εὐνοϊκῶς, ὕνομα.

νομίζω *regard as a custom νόμος; pass. is usual; also in act. A and inf. clause or two A, regard, consider, believe, think; in pass. the accusatives become nominative subject and predicate: ἃ νομίζεται τίμα which are considered marks of honor; νόμος 418. V*.

νόμος -ου ὁ *custom, practice; law; νέμω distribute 403. Latin nemus, numerus; nemesis, auto-nomy αὐτός, eco-nomy οἶκος*.

νῦν *adv. now; οἱ νῦν men of the present day; τὸ νῦν at present. Latin nunc*.

νύξ *νυκτός ἡ night. Latin nox. NIGHT.*

Ξ

ξενικός -ή -όν *foreign; τὸ ξενικόν the hired troops; ξένος 425*.

ξένος -ου ὁ *stranger; guest, host; friend; a hired soldier; mercenary, euphemistically for μισθοφόρος; cp. Ξενοφῶν, Πρό-ξενος*.

ξύλον -ου τό *wood; pl. fuel. xylonite, xylo-phone, φωνή, xylo-graph γράφω*.

Ο

ὁ ἡ τό *the; ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ the one . . . the other; ὁ δέ and he, but he; frequently for his, her, their; τὰ ἐμοῦ my affairs, my property;*

οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ *his attendants; τὴν δίκην the usual justice (punishment)*.

ὄ, neut. of ὄς.

ὄδε ἤδε τοδε *dem. pron. this like Latin hīc; as follows; ἔλεγε τάδε he spoke as follows; τόνδε τὸν τρόπον in the following manner. 553. ὁ + -δε*.

ὁδοποιέω *make a road; ὁδός, ὁδοποιός road-maker 446 b, 438 b, 416 c*.

ὁδός -οῦ ἡ *way, road. ex-odus ἐξ, meth-od μετά, peri-od περί, syn-od σύν. ὅθεν adv. whence, from where, from whom; ὄ + -θεν, cp. ἐντεῦθεν*.

οἷ *pers. pron. reflexive in use, equivalent to ἐαυτῷ to him. 197*.

οἶδα *pte. or ὅτι clause, know, understand; χάριν οἶδα am grateful; Φιδ-, see εἶδον and 386 b*.

οἴκαδε *adv. homeward, home; οἶκος + -δε 228*.

οἰκέω, w. prep. or A, *live, dwell; dwell in, inhabit; pass. am situated; οἶκος 416 c*.

οἰκία -ᾱς ἡ *house; οἶκος 429 b*.

οἰκοδομέω *build a house, build; οἰκοδόμος house-builder, δέμω build, 446 a, 438 b, 416 c*.

οἴκοθεν *adv. from home; οἶκος + -θεν 228*.

οἴκοι *adv. at home; οἱ οἴκοι those at home οἶκος + -ι 228*.

οἶκος -ου ὁ *home, house as home or abiding place; Φικ- 403 b, cp. ἀφ-ικνεομαι. Latin vīcus; -WICK, -WICH, as Ber-WICK, Nor-WICH, eco-nomy νόμος; par-ochial. parish παρά; di-ocese διά*.

οἶμαι *for οἶομαι*.

οἶνος -ου ὁ *wine. Latin vīnum. WINE*.

- οῖμαι, οἶμαι pass. dep. inf. clause, *think, believe, suppose*.
- οἶος -ᾱ -ον rel. pron. corresponding to dem. τοιοῦτος, like Latin *quālis*, denoting quality, *such as, who, what; of what kind*. 215, 84.
- οἷόσπερ οἷᾱπερ οἷόνπερ *just such as; οἷος + περ* 216.
- οἴχομαι *am gone, have gone; w. ptc.* 585 c. V.
- οἰκνέω inf. clause, *hesitate; μή clause, am afraid that; ὕκνος hesitation* 416 c.
- οἰκτώ *eight*. Latin *octō*; octa-gon γωνία.
- ὄλεθρος -ου ὁ *destruction, death, loss; ὄλλυμι, see ἀπ-όλλυμι*.
- ὀλίγος -ῃ -ον *few, small*. olig-archy ἄρχω.
- ὅλος -ῃ -ον *whole, entire, in a body*. Latin *solidus*; holo-caust κάω, cath-olic κατά.
- ὀμνύμι A *swear, swear by*. V.
- ὁμοῖος -ᾱ -ον D *like, similar; of the same kind as; cp. ἅμα, ὁμός common*. Latin *similis*; homoeo-pathy παθ- in πᾶσχω.
- ὁμοίως adv. *in like manner, πάντες ὁμοίως we all alike; ὁμοῖος*.
- ὁμολογέω *agree, admit; ὁμό-λογος agreeing* 416 c. homo-logous.
- ὁμῶς adv. *all the same; nevertheless, yet, still; with changed accent from ὁμός common*.
- ὄνομα -ατος τό *name; cp. γνο:ω- in γιγνώσκω, ὀ-γνο-μα* 407. Latin *cognōmen, nōmen*; an-onymous α-neg., met-onymy μετά, patr-onymic πατήρ, syn-onym σύν.
- ὄνος -ου ὁ *ass*. Latin *asinus*.
- ὅπερ neut. of ὅσπερ, *the very thing which, just what*.
- ὅπη conj. adv. *where, in what way, whither; δ + πη*.
- ὀπισθεν adv. *from behind, at the rear; G behind*.
- ὀπλίτης -ου ὁ *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite* 347, 2; ὅπλον 430 b.
- ὅπλον -ου τό *tool; pl. arms, armor; ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις under arms; εἰς or ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα to arms; see also under τίθημι; ἐπ-, cp. ἔπομαι. pan-opley πᾶς*.
- ὀπόθεν conj. adv. *whence, from where; δ + πόθεν, cp. ὅ-θεν, ὀ-πότε*.
- ὅποι conj. adv. *whither, to what place, where; δ + ποι*.
- ὁποῖος -ᾱ -ον gen. rel. pron. *such as, cp. οἷος; δ + ποῖος*.
- ὀπόσος -ῃ -ον gen. rel. pron. *as great as, as many as, cp. ὅσος; δ + πόσος*.
- ὀπότεν conj. adv. w. subjv. *whenever, when; ὀπότε + ἄν*.
- ὀπότε conj. adv. *whenever, when, since; δ + πότε*.
- ὀπότερος -ᾱ -ον rel. pron. *which of two, whichever; ὁ + πότερος*.
- ὅπου conj. adv. *wherever, where; δ + που*.
- ὅπως conj. adv. *in what way, how, as; w. fut. indic. how, that* 638 a; for ἵνα *that, in order that* 638 c.
- ὀράω, ptc. clause, *see, observe, perceive. pan-crama πᾶς*. V.
- ὀργίζομαι *am angry; ὀργή anger* 418.
- ὀρθῖος -ᾱ -ον *steep; ὀρθός straight* 424.
- ὀρθῶς adv. *rightly, justly; ὀρθός straight. ortho-dox δόξα, ortho-graphy γράφω*.
- ὀρμάω, ὀρμάομαι 185, *rush; set out, start; ὀρμή motion* 416 b.

ὄρος -ους τό *mountain*.

ὅς ἢ **ὅ** rel. pron. *who, which, what*;
ἐν **ᾧ** *meanwhile, while*.

ὅσον conj. adv. *as far as, so far that, so that*; neut. of **ὅσος**.

ὅσος -η -ον rel. pron. corresponding to dem. **τοσοῦτος**, like Latin *quantus*, denoting quantity or number, *as great as, as much as, as many as, all who, who, what*; **ὅσῳ** **θᾶττον** *the more rapidly*. 215, 84.

ὅσπερ ἢ **ὅπερ** rel. pron. *the very one who, just what*; **ὅς** + **-περ** 216.

ὅστις **ἧτις** **ὅ** **τι** or **ὅ,τι** gen. rel. pron. *whoever, whatever*; **ὅς** + **τις**.

ὅταν conj. adv. w. subjv. *whenever, when*; **ὅτε** + **ἄν**.

ὅτε conj. adv. *when, while*; **ὅ** + **-τε**, cp. **τό-τε**, **ἐκάστο-τε**, **ἄλλο-τε**.

ὅ **τι** or **ὅ,τι** see **ὅστις**.

ὅτι conj. *that; because*; conj. adv. w. sup. like **ὥς**: **ὅτι** **ἀπαρασκευότατον** *as unprepared as possible*; **δῆλον** **ὅτι** *evidently*. See 622 a, b, c, 623, 624 a, b, c, 625.

οὐ adv. *not*, negative of statement or fact 486; **οὐκ** **ἔφη** *said that* . . . *not, refused, denied*, like Latin *negāvit*.

οὐ conj. adv. *where*; **ὅς**.

οὐδέ conj. *and not, but not, not* . . . *either*, after a negative; adv. *not even*; **οὐδὲ** **ὥς** *not even thus*; **οὐδὲ** . . . **οὐδέ** *not even* . . . *nor yet, not only not* . . . *but not even*; see also 667.

οὐδεὶς **οὐδεμία** **οὐδέν** *not one, no one, none, nothing*; **οὐδέ** + **εἷς**. 189 a.

οὐδέν adv. *in no way, not at all*; neuter of **οὐδεὶς**.

οὐδέποτε, **μηδέποτε** adv. *not even once*, and **οὐδέπώποτε** and **οὐπώποτε** *never yet*, are the common prose forms for **οὔποτε**. **οὐδέποτε** is commonly, though not always, used of the present and future. **οὐδέπώποτε** and **οὐπώποτε** are regularly used of the past. The same distinction is observed with **μηδέποτε**, **μηδεπώποτε**, and **μηπώποτε**.

οὐκ for **οὐ**.

οὐκέτι adv. *no longer*; **οὐ** + **ἔτι**.

* **οὖν** adv. *now, so, then, at any rate*. 673 a.

οὔποτε adv. *never*; **οὐ** + **ποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

οὐπω adv. *not yet, not before*; **οὐ** + **πω**.

οὐπώποτε adv. *never yet, never before*; separated **οὐ γὰρ πώποτε**; **οὐ** + **πώποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

οὔτ' for **οὔτε** and **not**; **οὐ** + **τε**.

οὔτε . . . **οὔτε** *neither* . . . *nor*.

οὗτος **αὕτη** **τούτο** dem. pron. *this, these; he, they* like Latin *is*; καὶ **ταῦτα** *and that too, although*. 553.

οὕτως before vowels, before consonants **οὕτω**, adv. *in this way, so, thus*, in the historians usually referring back; **οὗτος**.

οὐχ for **οὐ**.

ὀφείλω *owe*; pass. *is due*; aor. **ᾔφελε** *ought*, see 470 b. V.

ὀφελος, only nom. and acc., *help, advantage*; Ἐ use in, **στρατηγού** **ὀφελος** **οὐδέν** *a general is of no use*.

ὀχυρός -ᾶ -όν *tenable, strong, fortified by nature*; **ἔχω** cp. 412.

ὀφθαλμοί, fut. of **ὀράω** see: **ὀπ-**. Latin *oculus*; **ὀπτιο**, ant-opsy **αὐτός**, syn-opsis **σύν**, *ophthalmia*.

II

παθεῖν, aor. inf. of πάσχω.

παιδεύω *train up, educate*; παῖς 417 a.

παῖς παιδός ὁ *boy, son*; ἔτι παῖς ὢν *while still a boy*. Latin *puer, puella*; ped-agogue ἄγω, encyclo-pedia see under κύκλος.

παίω *strike, hit*. Latin *paviō, paveō*; ἀνα-παεστ ἀνά.

πάλιν adv. *back; again, a second time*. palin-drome δρόμος, palim-psest ψάω rub.

παντάπασις adv. *all in all, entirely; at all*; πᾶς.

πάντῃ adv. *in every way, on all sides*; πᾶς.

παντοδαπός -ή -όν *of all kinds*; πᾶς.

πάνυ adv. *very; at all*; πᾶς.

παρά prep. *beside*. par-allel ἀλλήλων, para-digm δείκνυμι, para-

G *from beside, from*; τὰ παρὰ Φοίβου ἀγαθὰ *blessings from Phoibos*.

D *beside, with*; παρὰ τῷ φίλῳ *at my friend's house*.

A *to the side of, to, with names of persons; along by, contrary to*; παρὰ τοὺς φίλους *to (join) our friends*; παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν *beside or near the road*; παρὰ τὴν δόξαν *contrary to his expectation*.

Compare παρὰ with κατὰ in the meaning *along*. κατὰ is *along the course of*, παρὰ is *along by*; παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν *along by the river*, κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν *down the river*; κατὰ τὴν δόξαν *according to his expectation* while παρὰ is *beyond or beside it*. paradox.

παραγγέλλω D or A, and inf. clause, *pass along word, command, order*; παρὰ 178, ἀγγέλλω. V.

παραγίγνομαι D of person, *am near; am present*; A with εἰς, *arrive at*; παρὰ 178, γίγνομαι. V.

παράγω *lead along, conduct*; παρὰ 178, ἄγω. V.

παράδεισος -ου ὁ *park, preserve, paradise*.

παραδίδωμι D *give over to; surrender, transitive*; παρὰ 178, δίδωμι. V.

παρακαλέω *call to my side, summon; urge*; παρὰ 178, καλέω. V.

παραπλήσιος -ᾱ, -ον or -ος -ον D *close beside, resembling, like*; παρὰ, πλησίον.

παρασάγγης -ου ὁ *parasang, somewhat more than three miles*.

παρασκευάζω *prepare; mid. make my preparations, get ready*; παρασκευή 419.

παρασκευή -ῆς ἡ *preparation*; cp. σκευοφόρος, ἀπαράσκευος.

παρεῖναι D *be beside; be present*; A with εἰς, *arrive at*; τὰ παρόντα *the present conditions*; παρὰ 178, εἶμι. V.

παρελαύνω A *drive by, ride past*; παρὰ 178, ἐλαύνω. V.

παρέρχομαι A *pass by, go along; come forward*; παρὰ 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

παρέχω *have on hand, provide, furnish*; two A *make*; πράγματα παρέχειν D *make trouble for*; παρὰ 178, ἔχω. V.

παριέναι A *pass by; go along, come forward*; παρὰ 178, εἶμι 385.

παριών, ptc. of παριέναι.

πάροδος -ου ἡ *road by or along, passage, pass*; **παρά, ὁδός** 440 a.

παρών, ptc. of **παρεῖναι**.

πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν *all, every, whole*;

πᾶσα ὁδός *every road*; **πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός** *all the road, the whole road*; **πάντες οἱ παῖδες** *all the boys*; **πάντες παῖδες** *all boys*; sometimes **ὁ πᾶς** *the whole, all*; **πάντα** *in all respects, in everything*. **pan-orama**

ὁράω, **pan-acea** **ἀκέομαι** *cure*, **pan-**

theism **θεός**, **pan-demonium** **δαίμων**,

panto-mime **μῖμος** *imitator*.

πάσχω *A experience, undergo*; *am treated*; **εὖ πάσχω** *am well treated*;

κακῶς πάσχω *am injured*;

παθ- *pathos, anti-pathy* **ἀντί, a-pathy** **a-neg., sym-pathy** **σύν**. V.

πατήρ πατρός ὁ *father*. Latin *pater*; **patro-nymic** **ὄνομα**.

πατρίς -ίδος ἡ *native land*; **πατήρ**, cp. 434.

παύω *stop*; *mid. cease, rest*. Latin *paucus*; *pause*.

πέδιον -ου τό *plain*; **πέδον** *ground* 431 a; cp. **πεζός, στρατό-πεδον, τρά-**

πεζα, πούς.

πεζῇ *adv. on foot*; **πεζός**.

πεζός -ῆ -όν *afoot, walking*; as *subst. foot soldier*; **οἱ πεζοί** *the infantry*; **δύναμιν πεζήν** *infantry force*; cp. **πεδιόν**.

πέιθω *A win over, persuade*; *mid. and pass. D obey*; **πιθ-, cp. πιστός, πίστις, πιστεύω**. V.

πειράομαι *pass. dep. inf. clause, try, attempt*; *G make trial of*; **πειρᾶ** *trial* 416 b; cp. **πόρος** *passage, πορεῖα, ἄ-πορος, ἄ-πορεῖα, πορεύομαι, ἀντι-πέρᾱς. Latin *periculum, ex-**

superior, porta, portus; **ἄν-πιρική** **ἐν**, *pirate, em-porium ἐν*. 185.

πείσομαι, *fut. of πάσχω and also of πείθομαι*.

πειστέον *D must obey*; *A must persuade*; *verbal of πείθω*. 354.

πελταστής -ου ὁ *light-armed soldier, peltast, carrying a crescent-shaped shield* **πέλτη**; **πελτάζω** *serve as peltast* 405. See 347, 2.

πέλτη -ης ἡ *shield of crescent form*.

πέμπω *A of person or place with prep., sometimes D of person, send. pomp*. V.

πεντακόσιοι -αι -α *five hundred*;

πέντε, ἑκατόν. Latin *quīn-gentī*.

πέντε *five*. Latin *quīnque*; **penta-gon** **γωνία**, **penta-meter** **μέτρον**.

πεντήκοντα *fifty*. Latin *quīnquā-gintā*; **pentecost**.

περί *prep. on all sides, around*; *in composition also above, beyond*.

peri-od **ὁδός**, **peri-meter** **μέτρον**, **peripatetic** **πάτος** *walk*.

G about, concerning; **ἤρουντο περί αὐτοῦ** *they asked about him*;

equivalent to Latin dē; *of value above*; **περί παντός ποι-**

εῖσθαι *make it of the highest importance*.

D round, about; *not common*.

A about, all round, attending;

ἔστησαν περί αὐτόν *they stood about him*; **οἱ περί Κύρου** *the attendants of Cyrus*, **Cyrus and his men**; *equivalent to Latin circā*.

περιγίγνομαι *G am superior to, get the better of, conquer*; **περί** 178, **γίγνομαι**. V.

περιέχω *surround*; **περί** 178, **έχω**. V.

περιμένω *wait around, remain*; *A wait for*; **περί** 178, **μένω**. V.

περίοδος -ου ἡ way around, circumference; περί, ὁδός. period.

περιπλέω sail around; περί 178, πλέω. V.

πῆ interrog. adv. in what way?

πηγή -ῆς ἡ in pl. spring, source.

πιέζω press hard; pass. am hard pressed.

-πίπτω fall. Latin petō, impetus. V.

πιστεύω D put faith in, trust; πιστός 417 a, cp. πείθω.

πίστις -εως ἡ trust, good faith; πίστει ἔλαβε he received pledges of good faith, pledges that he could rely on; πείθω 406.

πιστός -ῆ -όν D trusty, faithful, trustworthy, in the confidence of; τὰ πιστά pledges; πείθω 411.

πλανάομαι wander about; πλάνη wandering 416 b. planet.

πλέθρον -ου τό plethron, plethrum, about one hundred feet.

πλείους, for πλείονες and πλείονας, pl. nom. and acc. of πλείων; see 149.

πλείστος -ῆ -ον most, sup. of πολύς.

πλείων -ον more, comp. of πολύς.

πλέον neut. adj. as adv. more; see 182, 5.

πλέω sail. Latin pluit; FLOW, FLEET, FLOOD. V.

πλήθος -ους τό multitude, numbers, amount; cp. πλήρης.

πλὴν adv. G, but used also as a conjunction, except; cp. πλήρης.

πλήρης -ες G full, full of, abounding in; complete, in full; πλα-, πλε-, cp. πλήθος, πλείων, πλείστος, πλὴν, πόλις, πολὺς. Latin plēnus, plūs, plēbs, populus; FILL, FULL, plethora, pleonasm, di-ploma δίς.

πλησίον adv. G near.

πλίνθινος -ῆ -ον of brick, brick; πλίνθος 426.

πλίνθος -ου ἡ brick. plinth.

πλοῖον -ου τό boat; cp. πλέω.

πόθεν interrog. adv. whence? where from? πό-θεν, cp. ὅ-θεν.

ποθεν adv. from somewhere; indef. to πόθεν.

ποῖ interrog. adv. whither? where to? cp. οἶ.

ποι adv. to some place; indef. to ποῖ.

ποιέω, A or two A, make, produce, construct; do, act; mid. make for myself, deem; εὖ or κακῶς, ἀγαθόν or κακόν ποιεῖν A treat well or ill; περί παντὸς ποιεῖσθαι deem it all-important. poem, poet, onomatopoeia ὄνομα.

ποιητέος -ᾱ -ον to be done; must do; verbal of ποιέω 354.

ποῖος -ᾱ -ον interrog. pron. what kind of? what? cp. οἷος.

πολεμέω D am at war with, fight; πόλεμος 416 c.

πολέμιος -ᾱ -ον of war, the enemy's, hostile; as subst. οἱ πολέμοι the enemy, equivalent to Latin hostes; πόλεμος 424.

πόλεμος -ου ὁ war. polemic.

πολιορκέω besiege; πόλις, ἔρκος fr. εἶργω shut in 438 b, 416 c.

πόλις -εως ἡ city, state; cp. πλήρης. police, policy, politics, metro-polis μήτηρ, acro-polis ἄκρος.

πολίτης -ου ὁ citizen; πόλις 430 b.

πολλάκις adv. often; πολὺς 232.

πολλοί -αι -ά many; οἱ πολλοί the many, most men; πολὺς.

πολύς πολλή πολύ much, many; large, long, strong; τὸ πολὺ the greater part; διὰ πολλά for many

- reasons; ἐκ πολλοῦ *with a long start*; ὡς or ὅτι πλείστοι *as many as possible*; cp. πλήρης. poly-gon γωνία, poly-nomial ὄνομα, pleonasm πλείων, poly- many.
- πόντος -ου ὁ *sea*. Helles-pont, Pontus.
- πορείᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *going, march*; πορεύομαι 406 a.
- πορεύομαι pass. dep. *go, proceed, advance, march*; πόρος 417 a. FARE.
- πόρος -ου ὁ *means of passing, ford; way, means*; see under περφόμαι. FORD.
- πορευτέον *A must proceed*; verbal of πορεύομαι 354.
- πόρρω adv. *G far from*; πρό.
- πόσος -η -ον interrog. pron. *how large? how much or many?* cp. ὅσος.
- ποταμός -ου ὁ *river*. hippo-potamus ἵππος, Meso-potamia μέσος.
- πότε interrog. adv. *when?* πό-τε cp. τό-τε.
- ποτε adv. *sometime, once on a time, ever*; indef. to πότε.
- πότερον interrog. adv. *whether*; πό-τερον (πότερα) . . . ἢ *whether . . . or*; πότερος.
- πότερος -ᾱ -ον interrog. pron. *which of two?*
- ποῦ interrog. adv. *where?* cp. οὔ.
- που adv. *somewhere*; indef. to ποῦ.
- πούς ποδός ὁ *foot*; cp. πεδίον. Latin pēs, impediō; tra-pezium τέτταρες, anti-podes ἀντί, tri-pod τρεῖς.
- πράγμα -ατος τό *deed, act, business; difficulty*; D πράγματα παρέ-χειν *make trouble for*; πράττω 407. pragmatic.
- πράξις -εως ἡ *doing, undertaking, enterprise, business*; πράττω 406.
- πράττω *perform, accomplish, do*; εὖ or καλῶς πράττω *am successful, am fortunate*; κακῶς πράττω *am unfortunate*; οὕτω πράττω *fare thus, meet this result*. practice, practical. V.
- πρεσβεύω *am an envoy*; πρέσβυς 417 a.
- πρέσβυς *old*; οἱ πρέσβεις -εων *ambassadors, envoys* 142, 7. presbyter, priest.
- πρεσβύτερος -ᾱ -ον *older, elder*; comparative of πρέσβυς.
- πρίασθαι, inf. of ἐπριάμην.
- πρίν conj. adv. w. inf. *before* 568; w. finite modes *until, before* 644 d, 287 d.
- πρό prep. *G before, in front of*; sometimes like ὑπέρ *in defense of, for*; πρό τῆς οἰκίας *in front of the house*; πρό ἀρίστου *before breakfast*. Latin prō; pro-gram γράφω, pro-boscis βόσκειν *feed*, pro-clitio κλίνω *lean*.
- προάγω *lead forward; advance*; πρό 178, ἔγω. V.
- προαισθάνομαι ptc. clause, *perceive beforehand*; πρό 178, αἰσθάνομαι. V.
- προβάλλω *throw before*; mid. *hold before myself*; τὰ ὄπλα προβαλέ-σθαι *advance arms for attack, shields forward and spears in rest*; cp. *charge bayonets*; πρό 178, βάλλω. pro-blem. V.
- πρόβατον -ου τό *in pl. cattle, sheep*.
- προδίδωμι *give forth, betray, abandon, surrender*; πρό 178, δίδωμι. Latin prōdō. V.
- προδοτής -ου ὁ *traitor*; προδίδωμι 405. Latin prōditor.

προείπον *speak forth, order*; **πρό** 178, **εἶπον**. V.

προελαύνω *ride before, march on*; **πρό** 178, **ελαύνω**. V.

προέρχομαι *go before, advance*; **πρό** 178, **έρχομαι**. V.

προθύμέομαι *pass. dep. 185, am eager, earnestly desire*; **πρόθυμος** 416 c. Cp. **ἐπιθυμέω**.

πρόθυμος -ον *eager, devoted*; **πρό**, **θύμος** *heart* 447 b.

προθύμως *adv. eagerly, zealously*; **πρόθυμος**.

προιέναι *go on before; advance, proceed*; **πρό** 178, **εἶμι** 385.

προιέναι, *pres. inf. of προίημι*.

προίημι *send forth; mid. D. give myself up, entrust, surrender*; **πρό** 178, **ἵημι**. V.

προίστημι *set at the head of; intr. forms G am at the head of, command*; **πρό** 178, **ἵστημι**. V.

προκατακάω *burn down before, lay waste with fire before one*; **πρό** 178, **κατακάω**. V.

προκαταλαμβάνω *seize before, pre-occupy*; **πρό** 178, **καταλαμβάνω**. V.

πρόκειμαι *am laid before, proposed, prescribed; used as pass. to προτίθημι*; **πρό** 178, **κείμαι** 387 and a.

πρός *prep. face to face, confronting, opposite. pros-ody ᾠδή song, ode.*

G *from, by, in the sight of, before*; **πρὸς θεῶν** *before the gods*; **πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου** *in accordance with his character, like him.*

A *facing, near, beside, besides*; **πρὸς τούτοις** *besides these.*

A *before, against, to, regarding*; **πρὸς ταῦτα** *in reference to this*;

πρὸς φιλιᾶν *with friendship assured.*

πρός *adv. πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ and besides too.*

προσάγω *lead to; advance*; **πρός** 178, **άγω**. V.

προσαιοτέω *ask in addition; two A ask for more*; **πρός** 178, **αἰτέω**.

προσελαύνω *drive towards; ride or march against; march on*; **πρός** 178, **ελαύνω**. V.

προσέρχομαι *come to, approach; D go over to, join*; **πρός** 178, **έρχομαι**. V.

πρόσθεν *adv. before, formerly; G in front of; τὸ πρόσθεν the van; the time before; εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν forward; πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν simply before; πρόσθεν . . . ἤ sooner . . . than; πρὸς + -θεν.*

προσινέναι *come to, approach, advance*; **πρός** 178, **εἶμι** 385.

προσλαμβάνω *take besides; take part in*; **πρός** 178, **λαμβάνω**. V.

προσδόννυμι *take an additional oath, swear also*; **πρός** 178, **δόννυμι**. V.

προσποιέομαι *profess; pretend*; **πρός** 178, **ποιέω**.

προστάττω *D of person, assign to a duty; give an order to*; **πρός** 178, **τάττω**. Cp. **ἐπιτάττω**. V.

προστίθημι *D add to; mid. join in, agree with, agree to*; **πρός** 178, **τίθημι** 375.

πρόσω *adv. forwards; λέγειν τοῦ πρόσω go forward*; **πρός**.

προτεραίος -ᾱ -ον *in τῇ προτεραίᾳ on the day before*; **πρότερος**.

πρότερον *adv. before, previously; neut. acc. of πρότερος.*

πρότερος -ᾱ -ον *former, previous, earlier; sometimes translated like*

an adverb: πρότεροι ἡμῶν ἀφίκοντο they arrived before we did. Latin prior.

πρόφασις -εως ἡ pretext, excuse; πρό, φάσις assertion, φημι 406, 440 a.

πρῶτον adv. at first, in the first place; neut. acc. of πρῶτος.

πρῶτος -η -ον first, foremost, chief; πρό. Latin primus.

πυνθάνομαι inquire, ask; ascertain, discover; w. ptc. clause, find out. Cp. 588 a, b. V.

πῦρ πυρός τό fire; pl. camp-fires 142, 8. pyre, em-pyrean ἐν. pyro-technic τέχνη art.

πῦραμις -ιδος ἡ pyramid. pyramid.

πῦρός -ου ὁ in pl. wheat.

*πῶ adv. yet, hitherto; after negatives like Latin -dum, see οὐπῶ, μήπῶ.

πῶποτε adv. ever, ever yet; after negatives like Latin umquam; πῶ + ποτε.

πῶς interrog. adv. in what way? how? cp. ὥς.

πῶς adv. somehow; indef. to πῶς; ὧδέ πῶς in some such way as this.

P

ράδιος -ᾱ -ον easy.

ρέω flow. stream cp. Στρυμῶν the Strymon; rheumatism, cata-rrh κατά, rhythm 400 b. V.

ρήτωρ -ορος ὁ public speaker, orator; cp. ῥῶ; 405. rhetoric.

Σ

σάλπιγξ -γγος ἡ trumpet, a long straight bronze tube swelling at the end like the Roman tuba.

σαλπίζω blow the trumpet; ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγε at the trumpet signal; σάλπιγξ 418 a. V.

σατράπης -ου ὁ satrap, a Persian governor of a province.

σαυτοῦ for σεαυτοῦ.

σαφής -ές clear, plain, certain, properly of taste; σαπ-. Latin sapiō, sapiens; SAP, SOAP, insipid.

σαφῶς adv. clearly, evidently; σαφής.

σεαυτοῦ -ῆς -οῦ refl. pron. of yourself; σε + αὐτός, cp. σύ.

σημαίνω show by sign; D give a signal; indicate, inform, declare, direct; σῆμα sign 420. V.

σίτος -ου ὁ grain, food; pl. σῖτα provisions, supplies 144. para-site παρά.

σιωπᾶω am silent; σιωπή silence 416 b.

σκέπτομαι, σκοπέω is the usual present, look about, search, spy; de-liberate, consider. Latin speciō, speciēs; SPY, skeptic. V.

-σκενάζω make ready; σκενή attire 419; see παρα-σκενάζω.

σκευοφόρος -ον baggage carrying; τὰ σκευοφόρα the baggage train; τὸ σκεῦος in pl. baggage, -φόρος, φέρω 410, 443 b, 446 a, c; cp. παρα-σκενάζω.

σκέψομαι, fut. of σκοπέω.

σκηνή -ῆς ἡ tent. Latin scēna; scene.

σκοπέω, only pres. and imperf. see σκέπτομαι, look at, watch; see, observe; consider, ponder; σκοπός 416 c. V.

σκοπός -οῦ ὁ lookout, spy, scout; σκέπτομαι 403. scope, micro-scope μικρός, ἐπι-scopal ἐπί, bi-shop ἐπί.

σός σή σόν poss. pron. *thy, thine, your*; cp. σύ. Latin *tuus*.

σοφία -ās ή skill, ability, wisdom; σοφός 429 b.

σοφός -ή -όν skilled, clever, wise;

σαπ-, cp. σαφής. philo-sophy φίλος.

σπεύδω urge; am in a hurry, hasten. V.

σπονδή -ης ή libation, drink-offering; pl. truce, agreement, treaty; σπένδω pour a libation 404.

στάδιον -ου τό, for pl. see 144, extended space, stadium, race-course; stade, about six hundred feet. Latin *spatium*.

σταθμός -ου ό standing-place, stand; halting place, station; day's march; στα-θ-μός, στα- 400 b, 406; cp. ἵστημι, στάσις. Latin *stabulum*; STAND.

στάς, root-aor. ptc. of ἵστημι.

στάσις -εως ή party, faction; insurrection, discord; στα- 406; cp. ἵστημι, σταθμός. Latin *statuō*; apo-stasy από, eo-stasy εκ.

στέλλω arrange; equip, dress; send. V.

στενός -ή -όν narrow; τὰ στενά narrow pass, defile. steno-graphy γράφω.

στερέω, pass. στέρομαι, G rob of, deprive of; am deprived of, have lost. V. .

στήναι, root-aor. inf. of ἵστημι.

στλεγγίς -ίδος ή scraper, strigil, used by athletes to remove dust and oil from the skin after exercising.

στολή -ης ή dress, robe; στέλλω 404. stole.

στόλος -ου ό equipment, expedition; army, force; στέλλω 403.

στρατιά -ās ή expedition, campaign; στρατεύω 406 a; cp. στρατός.

στράτευμα -ατος τό army; division; στρατεύω 407; cp. στρατός.

στρατεύομαι make war; conduct or serve in a campaign, take the field, march; ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως thus he was taking part in the expedition; στρατός 417 a.

στρατηγέω am general, take command, command; στρατηγός 416 c; cp. στρατός.

στρατηγία -ās ή office of general, command; ὡς στρατηγήσονται ἐμέ ταύτην τήν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω let no one of you mention me with the idea that I am going to assume this command; στρατηγός 429 b; cp. στρατός.

στρατηγός -ου ό army leader, general; στρατός, ἄγω 410, 443 a, 446 a, c. strat-agem, strat-egy, strategio.

στρατιά -ās ή army; στρατός 429 b.

στρατιώτης -ου ό soldier; pl. troops; ἄνδρες στρατιῶται fellow soldiers; στρατιά 430 b.

στρατοπεδεύομαι encamp; στρατόπεδον 417 a.

στρατόπεδον -ου τό camp-ground, camp; στρατός, πέδον ground 446 a.

στρατός -ου ό encamped army, army, force; στρα- spread out, strew; cp. 411. Latin *strātus*, sternō, struō; STREW, STRAW.

στρεπτός -ή -όν twisted; as subst. ό στρεπτός necklace, collar; στρέφω turn 353. strophe στροφή turning 404; see 25 and cp. 403; apo-strophe από, cata-strophe κατά.

σύ σοῦ pers. pron. *thou, you*; τε-
σε-. Latin *tū*; ΤΗΟΥ.

συγγίγνομαι D *am with, am ac-
quainted with, meet*; *have in-
tercourse with*; σύν 178, γίγνο-
μαι. V.

συγκαλέω *call or summon together,
assemble, convene*; σύν 178, καλέω.
V.

συλλαμβάνω *take with, sieze, arrest*;
take together; σύν 178, λαμβάνω.
syllable. V.

συλλέγω *gather together, collect*;
levy; pass. *assemble*; σύν 178,
λέγω. V.

συλλογή -ης ἡ *gathering, levy*; συλ-
λέγω 404, cp. 440.

συμβάλλω *throw together, collect*;
mid. contribute; σύν 178, βάλλω.
symbol. V.

συμβουλευώ D *advise, counsel*; *mid.
consult together, confer with, ask
advice of*; σύν 178, βουλεύω.

σύμμαχος -ον *in alliance with*; as
subst. ὁ σύμμαχος *ally*; σύν 178,
μάχομαι, συμμάχομαι *am an ally*;
-μάχος 410, 446 b, c. Note the
accent; cp. 439 a. For another
explanation see 440 b and end.

συμμειγνῦμι D *mix with, unite with,
join*; σύν 178, μείγνυμι *mix*. Latin
miscēō; MIX. V.

σύνπᾶς -πᾶσα -παν *all together,
entire*; ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες *the
whole force amounted to*; σύν +
πᾶς 440 a.

συνπέμπω D *send with*; σύν 178,
πέμπω. V.

συνπλέω D *sail with*; σύν 178,
πλέω. V.

σύμπλεως -ων G *very full, abound-
ing in*; σύν, πλέως 95, 440 a.

συμπολεμέω D *aid in war*; σύν 178,
πολεμέω.

συμπορεύομαι D *accompany*; σύν
178, πορεύομαι 185.

συμπράττω D of person, A of thing,
do with, assist, coöperate with;
σύν 178, πράττω.

συμπροθύμέομαι D *unite earnestly
with in urging*; σύν 178, προθυ-
μέομαι.

συμφέρω *bring together*; impers. D
is of advantage to; σύν 178, φέρω.
V.

σύν prep. D *with, in company with,
with the aid of*; *including*; σύν
τοῖς θεοῖς *with the aid of the
gods*; used often by Xen. for
μετά: Μένων καὶ οἱ σύν αὐτῷ *Me-
non and his force*; cp. ἕμα.
Latin *cum*; sym-metry μέτρον, sym-
pathy πάθος *feeling*.

συνάγω *bring together, call together,
convoke*; σύν 178, ἄγω. V.

συναλλάττω *change by bringing to-
gether, reconcile*; *mid. and pass.
πρός A make terms with, am
reconciled to*; cp. καταλλάττω;
σύν 178, ἀλλάττω. V.

συναναβαίνω D *go up with*; *march
inland with*; σύν 178, ἀναβαίνω.
V.

συναπιέναι D *go back with*; σύν
178, ἀπιέναι. 385.

συνεισέρχομαι D *go in with*; *go in
together*; πρόσ A of person, εἰς A
of place; σύν 178, εἰσέρχομαι. V.

συνεκκόπτω D *aid in cutting down*;
σύν 178, ἐκκόπτω. V.

συνεξέρχομαι D *go out with*; σύν
178, ἐξέρχομαι. V.

συνέπομαι D *follow with, accom-
pany*; σύν 178, ἔπομαι. V.

συνέρχομαι D *go with; come together, assemble*; σύν 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

συνεφέπομαι D *follow on with*; σύν 178, ἐφέπομαι, ἐπί + ἔπομαι. V.

σύνθημα -ατος ὁ *thing agreed on, watchword, countersign*; σύν, τίθημι 440 b, 407.

συνίστημι D *bring together with, introduce*; intr. forms and mid. *stand together, combine*; σύν 178, ἵστημι. system. V.

σύνοιδα *share in knowledge*; D and ptc. am *conscious of* 587; σύν 178, οἶδα. 386.

συνομολογέω D of person, *agree to . . . with, assent to*; σύν 178, ὁμολογέω.

συντάττω *arrange together; form in line of battle*; σύν 178, τάττω. syntax. V.

συντίθημι *put together*; mid. D *make an agreement with*; σύν 178, τίθημι. synthesis. V.

συσκευάζομαι *make preparations, pack up*; σύν 178, σκευάζω.

συστρατεύομαι D *take the field with; join an expedition*; σύν 178, στρατεύομαι.

συστρατιώτης -ου ὁ *fellow-soldier*; σύν, στρατιώτης 440 a.

σφίσι for ἑαυτοῖς 197.

σχεῖν, aor. inf. of ἔχω.

σχολαῖος -ᾱ -ον *leisurely, slow*; σχολή *leisure* 424.

σχολαῖως adv. *slowly*; σχολαῖος.

σώζω *save, rescue; retain; conduct safely*; mid. and pass. *save myself, escape; go or return in safety*; σῶς 418. αἰετο-σῶτε κρέας *flesh*. V.

σῶμα -ατος τό *body; life*.

σῶς σῶν *safe and sound, alive* 96.

Latin *sānus, sōspes*.

σώφρων -ον of *sound mind, sensible, discreet*; σῶς, φρήν *mind* 447.

σωτηρίᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *safety, preservation, deliverance*; σῶς, σφύζω, σωτήρ *preserver* 405, 429 b.

T

τ' for τε.

τάξις -εως ἡ *arrangement; order, rank, line of battle; company, division, battalion of infantry*; τάττω 406.

τάττω *arrange, draw up in line of battle, assign, station, order, appoint. tactics, taxi-dermy* δέρμα, syntax σύν, technical τέχνη *art*.

ταυτό for τὸ αὐτό *the same thing*.

τάφρος -ου ἡ *ditch, trench*.

ταχέως adv. *swiftly, soon*.

τάχιστα adv. sup. of ταχέως; ὡς τάχιστα, ἢ ἐδόνατο τάχιστα *as rapidly as possible*; ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα *as soon as*.

ταχύ adv. *soon, rapidly*; neut. of ταχύς.

ταχύς -εῖα -ύ *swift, speedy*; διὰ ταχέων *rapidly*; τὴν ταχίστην ὁδὸν *by the shortest route, as soon as possible*. Compared 181.

* τε conj. *and*; τε . . . καὶ both . . . *and*, see καὶ; cp. Latin *-que*.

τειχος -ους τό *wall, fortress*. DIKE, DITCH.

τελευταῖος -ᾱ -ον *last*; τελευτή 424.

τελευτάω *finish; die*; τελευτή 416 b.

τελευτή -ῆς ἡ *end*; τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου *death*; τέλος, τελέω *finish*.

τέλος -ου τό *completion, end, result*; acc. as adv. *finally, at last*. talisman.

τέταρτος -η -ον *fourth*. Latin *quartus*.

τετρακισχίλιοι -αι -α *four thousand*; *τέτταρες, χίλιοι* 232.

τέτταρες -α *four*. Latin *quattuor*; *tetra-gon* *γωνία*, *tetr-arch* *ἄρχω*.

τέχνη -ης ἡ *art, skill*. *technical*. *poly-technic* *πολύς*.

τήμερον *adv. today*; *τ-, ἡμέρᾱ*.

τίθῃμι *put, place, get ready*; *mid. arrange*; *pass. κείμεαι* 387 c; *ἀγῶνα τιθέναι* *arrange games*. Observe carefully the following:

τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα: 1 *Ground arms, rest under arms, shield and spears lying on the ground*; *θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο* *they grounded arms and rested*.

2 *Order arms, halt or stand under arms ready for action, shield and spear with one end resting on the ground*; *ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα συνῆλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' Ἀριαίων* *halting under arms in line the generals went together to Ariaίος*.

3 *Get under arms, draw up in order of battle, take up a position under arms*; *εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα* *they arranged themselves under arms in line of battle*. *θε-*. *thesis*, *hypo-thesis* *ὑπό*, *theme*; *cp. σύν-θημα*.

τίμᾶω *value*; *honor*; *τιμή* 416 b.

τιμή -ης ἡ *value, worth*; *honor*; *τίω* *honor* 406.

τίμιος -ᾱ -ον *valued*; *honored, esteemed*; *τιμή* 424.

τιμωρέω *D of person avenged, A of person punished, G of the crime*; *help, avenge*; *mid. take vengeance on, punish*; *pass. am punished*;

τιμωρός *avenging* 416 c; *τι-,* *φέρω* *in ὄρω, τιμα-ρός*.

τίς τί *interrog. pron. who? which? what?* *τί* *as adv. why?* *διὰ τί* *why?* *τί ἡμῖν χρήσεται*; *what use does he intend to make of us?* *ἤρετο τίς ἔλθοι* *he asked who went*.

τις τι *some, any; someone, anything*; *indef. to τίς*.

* **τοι**, *intensive particle, really, of course* 671 e.

* **τοῖνυν** *conj. then, well then* 673 b; *τοι- + νυν*.

τοιόσδε τοιαῦδε τοιόνδε *dem. pron. 211, such as follows*; *ἔλεξε τοιαῦδε* *he spoke somewhat as follows*; *τοῖος* *such + -δε*; *cp. οἶος*.

τοιούτος τοιαύτη τοιούτο(ν) *dem. pron. 212, such as already experienced, of this sort, like Latin tālis*; *cp. οὔτος*.

τόξευμα -ατος τό *arrow*; *τοξεύω* *shoot with a bow* 407.

τόξον -ου τό *bow*. *toxico-logy* *λόγος*.

τοξότης -ου ὁ *bowman, archer*; *τόξον* 430 b.

τόπος -ου ὁ *place, spot*. *topic, topography* *γράφω*.

τοσόσδε τοσήδε τοσόνδε *dem. pron. 211, so much, so many*; *τόσος* *so great + -δε*.

τοσοῦτος τοσαύτη τοσοῦτο(ν) *dem. pron. 212, so great, so large, so many like Latin tantus, tot*; *τοσοῦτον* *as adv. so far*; *ὅσφ . . . τοσοῦτφ* *the . . . the*, *cp. ὅσος*; *cp. οὔτος*.

τότε *adv. then*; *οἱ τότε* *the men of that time*; *τό + -τε*.

τράπεζα -ης ἡ *table with four legs*; *τέτταρες, πεδ-, cp. πούς, πεδῖον*. *trapezium*.

τρεῖς τρία *three*. Latin *trēs*; tri-pod πούς, triad.

τρέπω *turn*. Latin *trepidus*. V.
τρέφω *nurture; support, maintain*; τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν see λανθάνω. V.

τρέχω *run*; cp. δρόμος. V.

τριάκοντα *thirty*; τρεῖς, εἴκοσι. Latin *trīgintā*.

τριάκόσιοι -αι -α *three hundred*; Latin *trecentī*.

τρίηρης -ους ἡ *trireme*, a war vessel with three banks of oars on each side and furnished with a beak for ramming; decl. 154, 151; τρεῖς, ἄρ- fit 446 a.

τρὶς adv. *three times*; τρεῖς 232.

τρισμύριοι -αι -α *thirty thousand*; τρεῖς, μύριοι 232.

τρίτος -η -ον *third*; τρεῖς. Latin *tertius*.

τρόπαιον -ου τό *trophy*, a memorial of victory to mark the place where the enemy turned; τροπή *turning; defeat*; τροπαῖος 424. trophy.

τρόπος -ου ὁ *turn, manner, character*; τρέπω 403. trope, tropic.

τροφή -ης ἡ *support, maintenance*; τρέφω 404.

τυγχάνω G *hit; reach, gain, obtain, find*; w. ptc. *happen*; παρὼν ἐτύγχανε *he happened to be on hand*.

τύραννος -ου ὁ *absolute ruler, ruler, tyrant*.

Υ

ὔδωρ ὕδατος τό *water*. Latin *unda*; WET, hydr-aulic αὐλός *pipe*, hydro-gen γεν-, hydrant, hydr-.

ὑμεῖς ὑμῶν ὑμῖν ὑμᾶς pers. pron. *you*, like Latin *vōs*.

ὑμέτερος -ᾱ -ον *your, yours, like* Latin *vester*.

ὑπαρχος -ου ὁ *underofficer, lieutenant*; ὑπό, ἄρχω 446 b, d, or 440 a; see 440 b end.

ὑπάρχω w. pred. ptc., *begin, am the first; am ready, exist*; D *am devoted to, support*; ὑπό 178, ἄρχω. V.

ὑπεῖναι *be under, as a foundation*; ὑπό 178, εἶμι. V.

ὑπέρ prep. *over*. Latin *super* 54; hyper-borean βορέας *north wind*, hyper-critical κρίνω, hyper-.

G *over, beyond, for the sake of*; ὑπὲρ τῆς κεφαλῆς *above the head*; ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος *in defence of Greece*.

A *over, above, motion or extension; more than*; ὑπὲρ τὴν δύναμιν *beyond his ability*.

ὑπερβάλλω A *throw over; cross*; ὑπέρ 178, βάλλω. V.

ὑπερβολή -ης ἡ *overshooting; passing over; a mountain pass*; ὑπερβάλλω 404 or 440 a; see 440 b end. hyperbole.

ὑπηρετέω D *serve, help*; ὑπηρέτης *under-rower, servant* 416 c.

ὑπισχνέομαι D of person, *hold myself under, undertake, promise*; ὑπό 178, ἴσχω, ἔχω. V.

ὑπό prep. *under*. hypo-crite κρίνω, hypo-thesis τίθημι.

G *from under, at the hands of; by, the regular form for agent*; αἵρεθεις ὑπὸ τῶν πολίτῶν *chosen by the citizens*.

D *under, at the foot of*; ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει *at the foot of the acropolis*.

A *to a position under or at the*

foot of; under, motion or extension; ὑπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα they came up under the trees.

ὑποζύγιον -ου τό *under the yoke, beast of burden; pl. pack-animals, baggage train; ὑπό, ζυγόν yoke 448, 424.*

ὑπολαμβάνω *take under my protection; respond; interrupt; ὑπό 178, λαμβάνω. V.*

ὑπολείπω *leave behind; ὑπό 178, λείπω. V.*

ὑπομένω *stay behind; wait a little; A wait for; ὑπό 178, μένω. V.*

ὑποπτεύω *suspect, apprehend; w. inf. clause suspect, surmise that; w. μή clause fear, suspect that; ὑποπτος suspicious 417 a, 438 a, 268 b.*

ὑποστράτηγος -ου ὁ *lieutenant general; ὑπό, στρατηγός 440 a, 446 b.*

ὑποψία -ās ἡ *suspicion, distrust; ὑφοράω, ὑπόψομαι suspect 406.*

ὑστεραίος -ᾱ -ον *later, following; τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ on the next day; ὑστερος 424.*

ὑστερος -ᾱ -ον *latter, later; G later than, too late for; acc. as adv. ὑστερον later. 183.*

ὑφίημι *put under, concede, admit; mid. D yield, surrender; allow; ὑπό 178, ἔημι. V.*

ὑψηλός -ῆ -όν *high, lofty; ὕψος; ep. 412.*

ὑψος -ους τό *height; ὑπέρ. Latin summus.*

Φ

φαίνω *make appear, show; mid. and pass. appear, seem, am seen, am shown 337; w. ptc. frequently translated evidently, manifestly;*

φα- in φημι; ep. 420. phase, fantastio, phantom, epi-phany ἐπί, fancy, em-phasis ἐν, dia-phanous διὰ, phenomenon. V.

φάλαγξ -γγος ἡ *battle-line. phalanx. φανερός -ᾱ -όν* *in plain sight, visible, evident; w. ptc. φανερός ἦν οἰόμενος he evidently thought, he let it be seen that he thought 585 a; ἐν τῷ φανερῷ openly, publicly; φαν- in φαίνω 412.*

φέρω *bear, bring, carry; produce; of wages receive; βαρέως or χαλεπῶς φέρω am troubled, take it hard, ep. molestē ferō. Latin ferō, fertilis, fortuna; meta-phor μετὰ, phos-phorus φῶς light.*

φεύγω *flee, run away; am an exile; οἱ φεύγοντες the exiles. Latin fugiō. V.*

φημι *inf. clause, say, affirm, declare, speak; οὐ φημι say that . . . not, deny, refuse, ep. negō; ep. φαίνω. Latin fārī, fābula, fāma; euphemism εἰδ, pro-phet πρό. V.*

φθάνω *come before, anticipate; A of person and ptc. frequently translated by before, sooner than 585 a; φθήσονται ἡμᾶς καταλαβόντες τὰ ἄκρα they will seize the heights before we can. V.*

φιλέω *love; φίλος 416 c.*

φιλία -ās ἡ *affection, friendship; πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι allow us to go back in peace; φίλος 429 b.*

φίλιος -ᾱ -ον *D friendly; at peace; διὰ φιλιᾶς τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει render friendly to us the country through which he shall lead us; φίλος 424.*

φίλος -ῆ -ον *D friendly, dear; kindly disposed; as subst. friend.*

philtre, phil-anthropy *ἄνθρωπος*, philo-sopher *σοφός*, biblio-philie *βιβλίον* book.
φλυᾶριᾱ -ās *ή* in pl. a lot of non-sense; *φλύᾶρος* nonsense 429 b.
φοβέω frighten; mid. as pass. dep. w. *μή* clause, fear, dread, am afraid that; *φόβος* 416 c. 185.
φόβος -ου *ὁ* fear, terror, fright; panic; *φεβ-* tumble 403. hydro-phobia *ὑδωρ*.
φοῖβος -η -ον pure, bright, radiant.
φοινίκιστής -ου *ὁ* wearer of the purple; or purple-dyer, in charge of the royal wardrobe; cp. *φοινικῶς*.
φοινίκιστής βασιλείος a wearer of the royal purple.
φοινίκους -η -οῦν dark red, purple; *φοίνιξ* 426.
φοῖνιξ -ῖκος *ὁ* palm tree, date palm.
φρουράρχος -ου *ὁ* commander of a garrison; *φρουρός* watch, αρχός, αρχω 403, 443 a, 446 a.
φυγᾶς -άδος *ὁ* exile, fugitive; *φεύγω*, *φυγ-*.
φυλακή -ης *ή* watch, guard; garrison; *φυλάττω*, *φυλακ-* 404.
φύλαξ -ακος *ὁ* watcher, guard; pl. body-guard; *φυλάττω*, *φυλακ-* 401.
φυλάττω keep watch; A guard, watch, defend; mid. A am on my guard against; w. *μή* clause guard against. V.
φωνή -ης *ή* voice; language; *φα-*, *φημι*, cp. *φαν-*, *φαίνω*. phonetics, phon-o-graph *γράφω*, tele-phone *τηλε* afar, eu-phony *εὐ*.

X

χαλεπός -ή -όν hard to bear, grievous, painful; difficult, hard; severe, bitter, hostile.

χαλεπῶς adv. hardly, with difficulty; *χαλεπῶς φέρω* take it hard; *χαλεπῶς ἔχω* am angry.

χαλκοῦς -ή -οῦν of bronze, bronze; *χαλκός* copper 426.

χάρις -ιτος *ή* graciousness, favor, gratitude, thanks; D of person and G of cause, *χάριν ἔχω* or *οἶδα* am grateful. Latin *grātus*, *grātia*. eu-charist *εὐ*.

χείρ *χειρός* *ή* hand; *εἰς χείρας αὐτῷ* into his power; hand to hand with. chiro-graphy *γράφω*, chiro-maney *μάντις*, s-urgeon *εἶργον*.

χθές adv. yesterday. Latin *heri*.

χίλιοι -αι -α thousand.

χιτών -ῶνος *ὁ* undergarment, chiton, corresponding somewhat to the modern shirt.

χράομαι D use, employ, enjoy, have; *τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι*; what use does he wish to make of us? *ἡγεμόνι ἐχρῶντο τούτῳ* they used this man as guide

χρή, inf. or A and inf., is necessary, I ought 390.

χρήζω inf. need, lack, wish, desire.

χρήμα -ατος *τό* thing of use; pl. property, money; *χράομαι* 407.

χρόνος -ου *ὁ* time; season, period. chronic, ohronicle, chrono-logy *λόγος*, chrono-meter *μέτρον*, ana-chronism *ἀνά*.

χρῦσιόν -ου *τό* piece of gold, gold coin, money; *χρῦσός* 431 a.

χρῦσοῦς -ή -οῦν golden, gold, gilded, gold mounted; *χρῦσός* 426.

χρῦσός -οῦ *ὁ* gold. chrysalis, chrysolite *λίθος*, chrys-anthemum *ἀνθεμον* flower.

χρῦσοχάλινος -ον with gold-mounted bridle; *χρῦσός*, *χαλινός* bridle 447.

χάρᾱ -ās ἡ *place, post, position; station, land, region, country; cp. χώρος place, piece of ground and 403 b, 404 b.*

χαρίον -ου τό *space; place; fortress, stronghold; χάρᾱ 431 a.*

Ψ

ψέλιον -ου τό *bracelet.*

ψεύδομαι *am deceitful; A deceive, cheat. pseud-onym ὄνομα, pseudo-. V. ψιλός -ή -όν naked, bare, barren.*

Ω

ὦ *O, frequent with the vocative.*

ὥδε *adv. in the following manner; thus, so; ὅδε 236.*

ᾤετο, ᾤμην, *imperf. of οἶομαι.*

ὥν *being, ptc. of εἶμι; τῷ δ' ὄντι but really, but in fact.*

ὠνόμαι *buy, purchase; ὠνος price 416 c.*

ὠνιος -ᾱ -ον *for sale; as subst. τὰ ὠνια wares, goods; ὠνος price 424.*

ωρᾱ -ās ἡ *time; season; hour, proper time. Latin hōra; hour, hor-o-score σκοπός.*

ὥς *conj. adv. a As, how; when, since; ὥς τάχιστα as soon as possible 633 A f.*

b Equivalent to ὅτι *that; ὥς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ (saying) that he was plotting against him.*

c Equivalent to ἵνα, but not common in prose except in Xenophon, *that, in order that.*

d With ptc. as 593 c.

e With inf. clause, equivalent to ὥστε, so as 566.

Adv. with numerals, about.

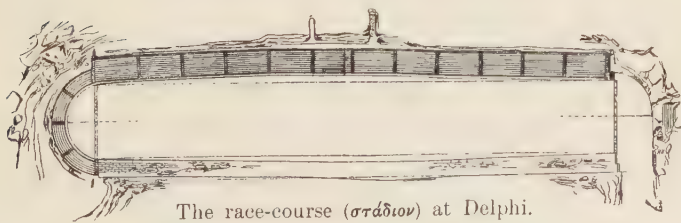
Prep. A with names of persons, to; πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέᾱ he goes to meet the king. ὅς but without accent.

ὥσπερ *conj. adv. just as, like 637; ὥς + -περ 216.*

ὥστε *conj. adv. ind. clause, inf. clause, and so, so that 639, 566; ὥς + -τε.*

ᾤφελε, *aor. of ὀφείλω; w. inf. in wishes: ᾤφελε παρῆναι, μὴ ἐλθεῖν would that he were present, had not gone.*

ὠφελέω *A assist, aid, benefit; ὀφελος 416 c.*



The race-course (στάδιον) at Delphi.

ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY

THIS vocabulary contains only such words as occur in the English exercises, and is purposely made brief and concise. Whenever it is necessary to use this vocabulary the pupil should consult the Greek-English Vocabulary, for the use and fuller meanings of the Greek words. Verbs in -άω, -έω, and -όω are given in the uncontracted form. Remember the forms to use in writing are -ᾶ in the active, -ᾶμαι, -οὔμαι, and -οὔμαι in the middle. But see 321 and a.

A

abandon ἀπο-, ἐκ-, καταλείπω.	appear φαίνομαι.
able δυνατός, ἰκανός; <i>am</i> able δύναμαι.	appoint ἀποδείκνυμι two A.
above ἄνω adv.; ὑπέρ prep. G.	approach προσιέναι, προσήλθον.
about περί, ἀμφί, εἰς, ὥς.	archer ὁ τοξότης.
advance προ-, προσιέναι, προσήλθον.	arms τὰ ὅπλα; <i>to</i> arms εἰς, ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα.
advice, <i>ask</i> συμβουλεύομαι D.	army ὁ στρατός, ἡ στρατιᾶ, τὸ στράτευμα.
advise συμβουλεύω D.	arrange τάττω.
afraid, <i>am</i> φόβον ἔχω, δέδοικα, φοβέομαι.	arrangement ἡ τάξις.
again αἰθίς, πάλιν.	arrest συλλαμβάνω.
against εἰς, ἐπὶ, κατά, πρὸς, all A.	arrive ἀφικνέομαι, παρῆναι; arrive at, w. εἰς A.
agreement, <i>make an</i> συντίθημι mid. D.	as ὥς; as long as ἕως.
all πᾶς, ἅπᾶς; all <i>who</i> ὅσοι.	ascend ἀναβαίνω.
alone μόνος.	ask a question ἰρωτάω; ask for αἰτέω two A; ask advice of συμβουλεύομαι D. See also δέομαι.
along κατά, παρά, both A.	assist ὠφελέω A, βοηθῶ D.
already ἤδη.	at ἐν, ἐπὶ, παρά, πρὸς, all D; at home οἱκοι; at first πρῶτον μὲν; at the same time ἅμα.
also καί.	attack ἐπιτίθημι mid. D, ἐπιτίπτω D.
always ἀεί.	attempt πειράομαι.
ambassadors οἱ πρέσβεις.	authorities, <i>the</i> οἱ ἄρχοντες.
ancient ἀρχαῖος.	away from ἀπό G.
and καί, * τε, * δέ.	
another ἄλλος.	
answer ἀποκρίνομαι, ὅτι clause.	

B

- back πάλιν.
 barbarian ὁ βάρβαρος, βαρβαρικός.
 battle ἡ μάχη.
 be εἶναι; be *present* παρῆναι; be *in* ἐνεῖναι; be *upon* ἐπείναι.
 because ὅτι, ἐπεὶ.
 become γίγνομαι.
 before πρὶν, πρὶ, πρότερος, φθάνω w. ptc.
 believe οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι, πείθομαι.
 belong *to* εἶναι G.
 beside παρά A.
 best ἄριστος; *seems best* δοκεῖ; *I think best* δοκεῖ μοι.
 betray προδίδωμι.
 bid κελεύω.
 blame, *to, to blame for* αἷτιος G.
 boat τὸ πλοῖον.
 both ἀμφοτέρους; both . . . and *τε . . . καί, καὶ . . . καί.
 boy ὁ παῖς.
 brave ἀγαθός.
 bridge ἡ γέφυρα.
 bring ἄγω, φέρω; bring *together* συνάγω; bring *out* ἐξάγω; bring *back* ἀπάγω; bring *back word* ἀπαγγέλλω.
 brother ὁ ἀδελφός.
 but ἀλλά, *δέ.
 by ὑπό G *agent*, παρά D.
 bystander ὁ παρεστηκώς.

C

- camp τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 can δύναμαι.
 captain ὁ λοχῆγός.
 capture αἰρέω, καταλαμβάνω; *am captured* ἀλίσκομαι.
 carefully ἐπιμελώς.

- carry ἄγω, φέρω.
 catch καταλαμβάνω.
 cavalry οἱ ἵππεις, τὸ ἵππικόν; *of cavalry* ἵππικός.
 cease παύομαι.
 choose αἰρέομαι.
 citizen ὁ πολίτης.
 city ἡ πόλις.
 clever σοφός.
 come ἤκω, ἔρχομαι; come *up* προσ-
 εῖναι; come *to know* γινώσκω.
 command παραγγέλλω D, κελεύω A, ἄρχω G.
 company ὁ λόχος.
 conduct ἡγέομαι D.
 conquer νικάω A, κρατέω G.
 consider νομίζω two A; βουλεύομαι, εἰ clause.
 contest ὁ ἀγών.
 country ἡ χώρᾱ; *native country* ἡ πατρίς.
 cross διαβαίνω.

D

- danger ὁ κίνδυνος; *am in danger* κινδυνεύω.
 day ἡ ἡμέρᾱ; *by day* ἡμέρᾱς; *at daybreak* ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾱ.
 dead, *the* οἱ νεκροί, οἱ ἀποθανόντες.
 dear φίλος.
 deceive εξαπατάω.
 deep βαθύς; *in depth* τὸ βάθος.
 deliberate βουλεύομαι, εἰ clause; ὅπως and fut. ind.
 depose *from* παύω G.
 desire βούλομαι, ἐπιθυμέω.
 destroy ἀπόλλυμι.
 die ἀποθνήσκω, τελευτάω.
 difficult χαλεπός.
 direct κελεύω A and inf.
 do ποιεῶ.
 down κατά.

draw up *τάττω*.
drive out *ἐξελαύνω*.

E

each *ἕκαστος*.
easy *ῥάδιος*.
either . . . or *ἢ . . . ἢ*; after a
negative *οὔτε . . . οὔτε*.
else *ἄλλος*.
enemy, *the οἱ πολέμιοι*; the enemy's
πολέμιος.
enough *ἱκανός*.
escape the notice of *λανθάνω* A.
establish *καθίστημι*.
even *καί*; *not* even *οὐδέ*.
evening *ἡ δειλη*.
evident *δῆλος*; evident *that* *δῆλον*
ὅτι.
evidently *δήλως*, *δῆλον ὅτι*.
exchange pledges *δεξιὰς δοῦναι καὶ*
λαβεῖν.
execution, *for ἀποκτείναι*, *ἵνα ἀπο-*
κτείνειαν αὐτόν, ἐπὶ θάνατον.
exile *ὁ φεύγων*, *ὁ φυγὰς*.
expect *οἴομαι* w. fut. inf.

F

fair *καλός*.
faithful *πιστός*.
father *ὁ πατήρ*.
fear *δέδοικα, φοβέομαι*; fear *to*, w.
inf.; fear *that*, w. *μή* clause.
fear *ὁ φόβος*.
few *ὀλίγοι*.
fiercely *ισχυρῶς*.
fight *μάχομαι*.
find *εὕρισκω, καταλαμβάνω*.
first *πρῶτος* adj.; *πρῶτον* adv.
flee *φεύγω*.
fleet *ταχύς*.
follow *ἔπομαι* D.
foot *ὁ ποῦς*; *at the foot of* *ὑπὸ* D.

for * *γάρ* conj.
force *ἡ δύναμις*.
formerly *πρόσθεν, πρότερον*.
fort *τὸ χωρίον, τὸ ισχυρὸν χωρίον*.
friend *ὁ φίλος*.
friendly *φίλος, φίλιος*.
frighten *φοβέω*.
from *ἀπό, ἐξ, παρά*, all G.
front, *in* *πρό* G, *πρόσθεν, εἰς τὸ*
πρόσθεν.

G

gather *ἀθροίζω, συλλέγω*.
general *ὁ στρατηγός*.
get *λαμβάνω, ἔχω*; get *up* *ἀναστή-*
ναι; get *myself into* *καταστήναι*
εἰς A; get *away* *ἀπιέναι*.
gift *τὸ δῶρον*.
give *δίδωμι*; give *up*, trans. *πα-*
ρίδωμι; give *a signal* *σημαίνω*.
go *ἵναι, ἐλθεῖν*; go *out* *ἐξελθεῖν*; go
in *εἰσελθεῖν*; go *away* *ἀπελθεῖν*;
let go *ἀφίημι*.
good *ἀγαθός*.
govern *ἄρχω* G.
government *ἡ ἀρχή*.
grain *ὁ σῖτος*.
grateful, *am* *χάριν οἶδα, χάριν ἔχω*.
great *μέγας, πολὺς*.
ground arms *τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα*.
guard *φυλάττω*; guard *against*
φυλάττομαι A.
guard *ὁ φύλαξ, ἡ φυλακή*.
guide *ὁ ἡγεμών*.

H

hand over *παραδίδωμι*.
happen *τυγχάνω* w. ptc.
harbor *ὁ λιμὴν*.
have *ἔχω*.
he, in oblique cases *αὐτός*; emphat-
ic *οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος*; and he *ὁ δέ*.

hear ἀκούω 511 a, 588 a, b, 622.
 head ἡ κεφαλή.
 herald ὁ κήρυξ.
 here αὐτοῦ, ἐνταῦθα.
 high ὑψηλός; *in height* τὸ ὕψος.
 heights τὰ ἄκρα.
 hill ὁ λόφος.
 his ὁ ἡ τό, αὐτοῦ; refl. ἐαυτοῦ.
 home, at οἱκοί.
 hope ἡ ἐλπίς.
 hoplite ὁ ὀπλίτης.
 horse ὁ ἵππος.
 hostile πολέμιος.
 house ὁ οἶκος, ἡ οἰκία.
 how? πῶς; how *much*? πόσος;
 how *many*? πόσοι; for *how* as
 relative see ὡς, ὅπως, ὁπόσος.

I

I ἐγώ; I *at least* ἐγώγε.
 if εἰ, ἐάν.
 immediately αὐτίκα, εὐθύς.
 impassable ἀπορος -ον.
 implement τὸ ὄπλον.
 in ἐν D; *in order to* ἵνα; *in regard to* πρὸς A; *in return for* ἀντί G;
in the power of ἐπὶ D.
 incur danger κινδυνεύω.
 into εἰς A.
 instead of ἀντί G.
 intend μέλλω.
 it, in oblique cases, αὐτό.

J

judge κρίνω.
 just δίκαιος.

K

keep ἔχω; keep *watch* φυλάττω;
 keep *a horse* ἵπποιαντρέφω.
 kill ἀποκτείνω.
 king ὁ βασιλεύς.

know οἶδα; know *how* ἐπίσταμαι w.
 inf.; *come to know* γινώσκω.

L

late, too ὕστερος G or ἡ.
 lay aside κατατίθηναι.
 lead ἄρχω G, ἄγω A, ἡγέομαι G
 or D.
 leader ὁ ἄρχων.
 leave λείπω; see also epds. ἀπο-,
 ἐκ-, κατα-.
 let go ἀφίημι.
 life ὁ βίος, τὸ σῶμα *body*.
 long μακρός; *in length* τὸ μήκος.
 longer, no οὐκέτι, μηκέτι.

M

make preparations παρασκευάζομαι.
 man ὁ ἄνθρωπος, ὁ ἀνὴρ.
 many πολλοί.
 march πορεύομαι.
 may, in a wish use optative.
 messenger ὁ ἄγγελος.
 month ὁ μῆν.
 more πλείων adj.; μάλλον adv.
 mother ἡ μήτηρ.
 mountain τὸ ὄρος.
 mounted ἐφ' ἵππου; of more than
 one ἐφ' ἵππων.
 must δεῖ w. inf., ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ w.
 inf., verbal in -τέος.

N

name τὸ ὄνομα.
 native country ἡ πατρίς.
 near ἐγγύς, πλησίον; near *to*, G.
 need δέομαι G.
 never οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε, οὐδεπώ-
 ποτε, μηδεπώποτε, οὐπώποτε, μη-
 πώποτε, οὐποτε, μήποτε. See on
 οὐδέποτε.
 next day τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.

night, *by* νυκτός.
 noble καλός.
 noise ὁ θόρυβος.
 no longer οὐκέτι, μηκέτι.
 not οὐ, μή.
 not even οὐδέ.
 now νῦν.
 number ὁ ἀριθμός.
 numbers, *in large* πολλοί.

O

obey πείθομαι D.
 often πολλάκις.
 on ἐπί G or D.
 once * ποτε.
 or ἢ.
 oracle τὸ μαντεῖον.
 orator ὁ ῥήτωρ.
 order παραγγέλλω, κελεύω; *in order that* ὥνα.
 other ἄλλος; other *of two* ἕτερος.
 ought χρή w. inf., ὠφελον w. inf.
 our ἡμέτερος, ἡμῶν.
 out of ἐξ G.
 outside ἔξω; outside *of* ἐξ G.
 overcome κρατέω G.
 overtake καταλαμβάνω.
 own, gen. of refl. pron. ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ, etc.

P

panic ὁ φόβος.
 parasang ὁ παρασάγγης.
 pass παρίεναι A, παρελθεῖν A.
 pay ἀποδίδωμι; pay *sacrifice* ἀποθύω.
 peltast ὁ πελταστής.
 perceive αἰσθάνομαι 511 a, 588 a, b, 622.
 persuade πείθω A.
 place ὁ τόπος, τὸ χωρίον; a place *to get* θέν.

plain τὸ πεδῖον; adj. δηλός, φανερός.
 plan βουλευομαι, βουλεύω; ἡ βουλή, ἡ ἐπιβουλή.
 plot against ἐπιβουλεύω D.
 point out ἀποδείκνυμι.
 possible δυνατός.
 prefer βούλομαι.
 present, *be* παρῆναι.
 prevent κωλύω.
 proceed πορεύομαι.
 promise ὑπισχνέομαι.
 prove myself γίγνομαι.
 provisions τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
 punish τιμωρέομαι A, δίκην ἐπιτίθημι D.

R

ranks αἱ τάξεις.
 rapidly ταχέως; rapidly *as possible* ὡς τάχιστα.
 reach ἀφικνέομαι eis A or ἐπί A.
 refuge, *flee for, seek* refuge in or on καταφεύγω eis A.
 remain μένω.
 remember μέμνημαι 511 b, 588 c.
 See also /85 foot-note 2.
 remit ἀποπέμπω.
 reply ἀποκρίνομαι, *oti* clause.
 report ἀπαγγέλλω, *oti* clause.
 restrain κωλύω, κατέχω 509 a, 572.
 return ἀπιέναι, ἀπελθεῖν, ἤκω.
 revolt ἀποστήναι and mid. of ἀφίστημι, 363 a.
 revolutionist ὁ ἀποστάς.
 right δίκαιος; right *hand* ἡ δεξιὰ; *on the right* ἐν δεξιᾷ.
 risk κινδυνεύω περί G.
 river ὁ ποταμός.
 road ἡ ὁδός.
 ruler ὁ ἄρχων.
 run θέω, τρέχω; run *away* φεύγω, ἀποδιδράσκω.
 rush ἀφίημι mid.

S

sacrifice θύω; *pay a sacrifice* ἀποθύω.

safe ἀσφαλής, σῶς.

safety ἡ σωτηρία.

same, *the* ὁ αὐτός; *at the same time* ἅμα.

satrap ὁ σατράπης.

save σώζω.

say λέγω, φημι, εἶπον.

scout ὁ σκοπός.

see ὁράω, εἶδον; *were seen* ἐφάνησαν.

seek refuge in καταφεύγω εἰς Α.

seems best δοκεῖ.

seize αἰρέω, καταλαμβάνω, ἀναρπάζω.

self αὐτός in appos. or in composition, as ἐμαυτόν, or pers. pron. used as reflexive.

send πέμπω, στέλλω; *send after* μεταπέμπομαι Α; *send away or back* ἀποπέμπω.

set ἵστημι.

she, see *he* and use fem.

shield ἡ ἀσπίς.

shouting ἡ κραυγή.

signal, *give the* σημαίνω.

since ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ὅτι.

slave ὁ δοῦλος, τὸ ἀνδράποδον.

small μικρός.

so οὕτω(ς), ὥδε; *so much, so many* τοσοῦτος, τοσόσδε.

soldier ὁ στρατιώτης.

some . . . others οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ.

soon ταχέως, ταχύ; *as soon as* ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα; *as soon as possible* ὡς τάχιστα.

sort, *of what?* ποῖος; indef. rel. ὅποιος.

speak λέγω, εἶπον.

speech ὁ λόγος.

spoils τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων.

stade τὸ στάδιον.

stand, intr. στήναι, ἕστηκα, ἵστημι mid. 363.

stronghold τὸ χωρίον, χωρίον ἰσχυρόν.

succeed εὖ πράττω.

summon καλέω, μεταπέμπομαι.

suppose οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι, all w. inf.

surrender, trans. παραδίδωμι.

swear δυνῶμι.

T

take λαμβάνω, αἰρέω.

tell λέγω, εἶπον, κελεύω.

tent ἡ σκηνή.

than ἢ.

that, dem. pron. ἐκεῖνος, οὗτος; rel. pron. ὅς; conj. ὅτι; conj. adv. ἵνα; w. verbs of fearing μή; all

that ὅσοι.

the ὁ ἡ τό.

their ὁ ἡ τό, αὐτῶν; *their own* ἐαυτῶν.

themselves, intensive αὐτοί in appos.; reflexive ἐαυτῶν, etc.

then τότε, εἴτα, ἔπειτα, ἐνταῦθα.

there αὐτοῦ, ἐνταῦθα.

think οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι, all w. inf.

this οὗτος, ὅδε.

through διά G.

thus οὕτω(ς), ὥδε.

to εἰς, ἐπὶ, παρά, πρὸς, all Α; *of purpose* ἵνα, fut. ptc., inf.

today τήμερον; *men of today* οἱ νῦν.

together with ἅμα D; *together* σύν in composition.

tomorrow αὔριον.

town ἡ κώμη.

train παιδεύω.

traitor ὁ προδότης.
 travel πορεύομαι.
 tribute ὁ φόρος, ὁ δασμός.
 truce αἱ σπονδαί.
 trumpet ἡ σάλπιγξ.
 trust πιστεύω D.
 try πειράομαι.

U

until ἕως, ἔστε, ἄχρι, μέχρι, πρὶν,
 631, 644, 138 a, 287 d.
 unprepared ἀπαράσκευος.
 up ἀνά prep. A; ἄνω adv.
 upon ἐπὶ G or D.
 use χράομαι D; *what use will he*
make of us? τί χρήσεται ἡμῖν;
 use τὸ ὄφελος.

V

valuable πολλοῦ ἀξίος.
 very μάλα, πάνυ.
 victor ὁ νικῶν.
 village ἡ κώμη.
 vow εὐχομαι.

W

wagon ἡ ἄμαξα.
 wait μένω; wait *for* περιμένω, μένω,
 ὑπομένω, all A.
 wall τὸ τεῖχος.
 war ὁ πόλεμος.
 watch, *keep* φυλάττω.
 water τὸ ὕδωρ.
 we ἡμεῖς.

well εὖ, καλῶς.
 what? τί; rel. ὅ, ὃ τι.
 when? πότε; rel. ὅτε, ὁπότε, ἐπεί,
 ἐπειδὴ, ἐπειδάν.
 whenever, see *when*. 112, 287 and c.
 where? ποῦ; ποῖ; πόθεν; rel. οὐ,
 ὅπου, οἷ, ὅποι, ὅθεν, ὁπόθεν.
 wherever, see *where*. 112, 287
 and c.
 whether εἰ; whether . . . or εἰ . . .
 ἢ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε, πότερον . . . ἢ.
 which, see *who*; *from which* ὅθεν.
 who? τίς; rel. ὅς, ὅστις.
 why? τί; διὰ τί;
 wicked κακός.
 wide εὐρύς; *in width* τὸ εὖρος.
 willingly ἐκῶν adj.; *am willing*
 ἐθέλω.
 wish βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.
 with μετὰ G; ἔχων, λαβών; with
the aid of σὺν D.
 without ἄνευ G, οὐκ ἔχων A, ἔρη-
 mos G.
 woman ἡ γυνή.
 would that εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, and opt.;
 ὥφελον and inf.

Y

yet ἔτι adv.; *not yet* οὐπω; δμως
 conj.
 yield ὑφίημι mid.
 you σύ, ὑμεῖς.
 young man ὁ νεᾶνῆς.



Bronze lamp shaped like a boat.

ENGLISH INDEX

THIS index is to supplement the Table of Contents. References are to sections.

- Accent 3; nouns and adjectives 20, 34, 70, 229; verbs 47, 58, 122, 136, 172 *a*; subjv. 144, 172 *a*, 193; inf. 58 *b, c*, 122, 136, 195 *b*; ptc. 122, 136, 237 *c*; opt. 275 *e*; in contract verbs 310 *b*; of indef. relatives 220 *a*.
- Adnominal genitive, position of 24, 4.
- Adverbs 84, 103, 213, 311 *b*, 332 *a, b*, 343 *a, b, c*, 354; correlative adverbs 219, 220.
- Attributive position 95, 101 *a*, 228.
- Combined endings of subjv. 108 *a*, 109, 161, 172 *a*.
- Compound verbs 129, 130, 179.
- Consonant changes 37, 133 *a*, 145 *a*, 366 *a*.
- Contractions in verbs 29, 164 *a*, 172 *a*, 193, 310 *a*, 318.
- Correlatives 219, 220, 285.
- Deliberative subjunctive /// *a*.
- Demonstratives, position and use 97-100.
- Deponents, passive 185.
- Enclitics, exercise on 12.
- Genitive absolute 255.
- Hortative subjunctive /// *a*.
- Hypothetical ind. 279 *b*; opt. 278 *b*.
- Imperative sentences 360 *a-d*.
- Infinitive, time 61 and *a*; subject omitted 62; uses 63; w. ὥστε 124 *b*; formation and endings 195 *a, b*; accent 58 *b, c*, 122, 136, 195 *b*; w. πρίν 198 *a*, 287 *d*, end; table of uses 204; as a noun 75, 11; w. ἄν 295 *a, c*.
- Interrogatives 84, 219.
- Mode-suffix, subjv. 108 *a*; opt. 275 *c*, 310 *c*.
- Negative, w. inf. 61, 63. See under μή.
- Optative, formation, suffix, endings, accent 275 *a-f*;

- in contract forms 3/0 *c* ; optative sentences, hypothetical and in wishes, 278 *a, b* ; w. *iva* 297 and foot-note ; in *οτι* clauses 292 *b*, 293 ; in quoted causal *οτι* clauses 291, 8, 308 foot-note ; w. *αν* in quotations 295 ; position of *αν* with 296 ; w. *ει* 302 *c* ; table of uses 308.
- Participles, formation 237 *b*, 238, 241 ; accent 237 *c*, 122, 136 ; declension 239 *a* ; meaning 240, 242, 248, 249 ; in genitive absolute 255 ; table of uses 262 ; w. *ως* 349 *a*, p. 217, note 80 ; w. *αν* 295 *b, c*.
- Possessives 83 *a*, 226, 227 ; position of 228.
- Predicate position 96, 99, 101 *b*, 228.
- Prepositions in composition 129, 178.
- Proclitics, exercise on 12.
- Prohibitions 360 *a-d*.
- Prohibitive subjunctive */// a*, 360 *b, d*.
- Pronouns 84, 103, 284 *a*, 285 ; position of demonstratives 97-100 and *αυτος* 101 ; possessive reflexives 227 ; reflexive 268-273.
- Pronunciation 4 ; of diphthongs 7, foot-note.
- Question clauses 65, 89, 1, 220, 292 *a, c*.
- Quotations, form of 61, 62, 64, 65, 89, 1, 220, 252, 292 *a, b, c*, 293 ; of subjv. w. *αν* 294 ; of opt. w. *αν* 295 ; of causal *οτι* clauses 291, 8, 308, foot-note ; implied 302 *c*.
- Reflexives, possessive 227 ; pronouns 268-273.
- Relatives 76, 78, 84, 112, 284 *a, d* ; not omitted 117, 12.
- Relative clauses, subjv. */// b*, 112 ; opt. 287 *b, c*. See under correlatives.
- Second sing. ind. mid. forms 144 *a*, 164 *a*.
- Subjunctive, endings, mode-suffix, and formation 108 *a*, 109, 144, 161, 172 *a* ; complete rules for formation of 193 ; subjv. sentences, deliberative, hortative, prohibitive */// a* ; used w. relatives and *αν* 112 ; w. *εως* 138 *a* ; w. *iva* 138 *b* ; w. *εαν* 147 ; table of uses 203 ; w. *αν* in quotations 294 ; as an impv. 360.
- Synopses 361.
- Time, of imperf. 45 ; of inf. 61 and *a*, 63 ; of ptc. 252.
- Transliteration 10.
- Wishes 278 *a*, 279 *a*.

GREEK INDEX

MATTERS included here will naturally be looked for in the index of the *Grammar*. These few references are inserted to enable one to find where these words are introduced in the *Lessons*, and where the first sentences occur that illustrate their use. They cover also some other points. References are to sections.

- ἄγω, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἄν w. subjv. /// *c*, //2; subjv.
 w. ἄν in quotations 294;
 opt. w. ἄν in quotations
 295; position of w. opt.
 296.
 αὐτός, position and use 10/.
 βάλλω, construction with 76,
 7.
 βούλομαι, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 δύναμαι 164, 166, 276 *a*.
 εἰ clauses 138 *d*; subjv. w.
 εἰάν (εἰ + ἄν) 147; ind. and
 opt. 302 *a*, *b*, *c*; in quoted
 questions 292 *c*.
 εἰ . . . ἢ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε 292 *c*.
 εἰλόμην, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 εἶμι, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 εἴμι, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἐκείνος, position and use 97-
 100.
 ἐπίσταμαι 276 *a*, 372 *a*.
 ἐποίησα, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἐπράχθην, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἐπριάμην 276 *a*.
 ἐτέλεσα, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἕως clauses 124 *a*, 138 *a*.
 ἦλθον, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ἦργμαι, synopsis 366 *g*.
 ἵνα clauses, subjv. 138 *b*; opt.
 297 and foot-note.
 κελεύω, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 μά w. accusative 319 *c*.
 μέμνημαι 185, foot-note 2.
 μὲν . . . δέ 102.
 μή 33, 7, 63, 113, 124 *b*,
 138 *d*, 221 *a*, 278 *a*, 279 *a*,
 287 *a*, *b*, *c*, 360; w. inf.
 after verbs of promising,
 etc. 202, 6.
 μή clauses, ind. and subjv.
 /// *b*; opt. 287 *a*.
 μι-form 192 and foot-note.
 ὅδε, position and use 97-100.
 οἶδα, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ὅπως w. fut. ind. 287 *c*; final
 297 and foot-note.
 ὀράω, synopsis 36/ *B*.

- ὅς and ὅστις clauses, subjv. *πρίν* clauses, inf. /98 *a*; finite
 /// *b*, //2; opt. 287 *b*.
 ὅσοι 82, 5.
 ὅστις 78.
 ὅτι clauses 64, 292 *b*; quoted
 causal ὅτι clauses 29/, 8,
 308, foot-note.
 οὗτος, position and use 97-
 100.
 παύω, synopsis 36/ *A*.
 πέπεισμαι, synopsis 366 *g*.
 πέπεμμαι, synopsis 366 *g*.
 ποιέω, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 πολλοῦ ἄξιος compared 348 *a*.
 πρίν clauses, inf. /98 *a*; finite
 modes 287 *d*; rule for use
 287 *d*.
 σχεῖν 56 *a*.
 τε . . . καί /87, foot-note 9.
 φημι, synopsis 36/ *B*.
 ω-form /92 and foot-note.
 ὥς clauses 292 *b*; final 297
 and foot-note.
 ὥς w. ptc. 349 *a*, p. 2/7, note
 80.
 ὥστε clauses, inf. /24 *b*; ind.
 /38 *c*.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D., Harvard University

Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D., Yale University

Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D., Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

DATE DUE

[illegible]

CINCINNATI BIBLE COLLEGE & SEM. LIBRARY



3 4320 00163 1920

485 M878g

Morrison, Frederick
Stillman.

Greek lessons for beginners

